U113
.12
TM 1942

TM 4-310

WAR DEPARTMENT

U.S. Dept. of Army

TECHNICAL MANUAL

COAST ARTILLERY GUNNERS' INSTRUCTION, FIXED SEACOAST ARTILLERY, EXPERT GUNNERS

January 27, 1942

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA
LIBRARY
SEP 17 1942
DOCUMENTS DIVISION

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Digitized by Google
Original from
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

TECHNICAL MANUAL

COAST ARTILLERY GUNNERS INSTRUCTION, FIXED SEACOAST ARTILLERY, EXPERT GUNNERS

CHANGES No. 1

WAR DEPARTMENT,
WASHINGTON, August 14, 1942.

TM 4–310, January 27, 1942, is changed as follows:

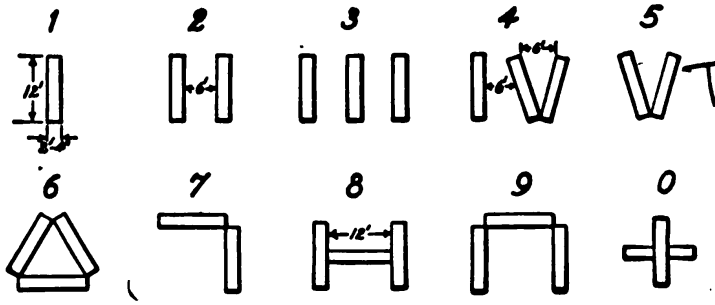


FIGURE 136.—Panel numerals.

[A. G. 062.11 (5–8–42).] (C 1, Aug. 14, 1942.)

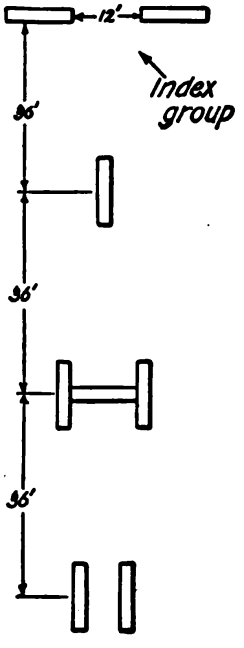


FIGURE 137.—Examples of a code group, 182.

[A. G. 062.11 (5–8–42).] (C 1, Aug. 14, 1942.)

M574513

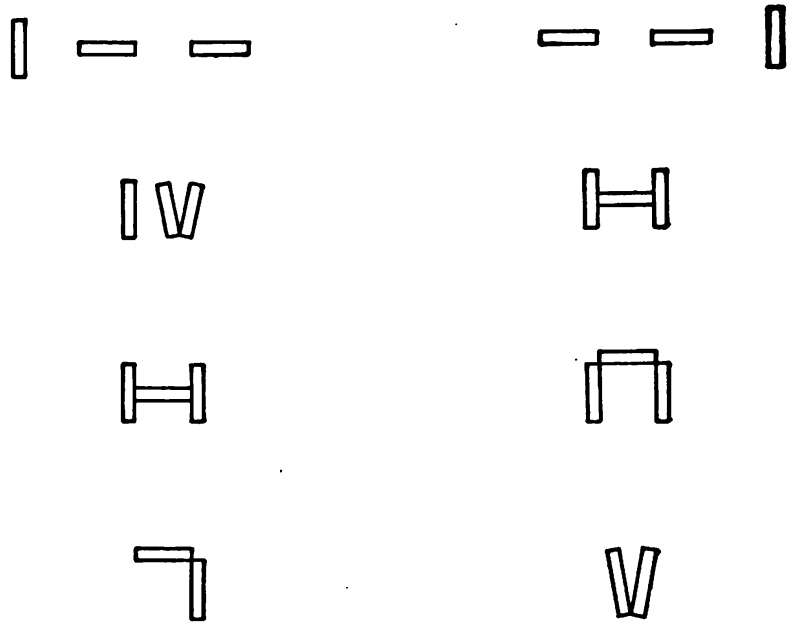
474399°—42

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Digitized by Google

Original from
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Digitized by Google
Original from
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



④ Numerals are being displayed, 487. ⑤ Coordinates are being displayed, 895.









⑥ Reconnoiter 25 miles in the direction to be indicated by next display.

FIGURE 138.—Special panel signals.

[A. G. 062.11 (5–8–42).] (C 1, Aug. 14, 1942.)

BY ORDER OF THE SECRETARY OF WAR:

G. C. MARSHALL,
Chief of Staff.

OFFICIAL:
J. A. ULIO,
Major General,
The Adjutant General.

U. S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1942

Digitized by Google
Original from
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

TECHNICAL MANUAL
No. 4–310

WAR DEPARTMENT,
WASHINGTON, January 27, 1942.

COAST ARTILLERY GUNNERS' INSTRUCTION, FIXED SEACOAST ARTILLERY, EXPERT GUNNERS

Prepared under direction of the
Chief of Coast Artillery

	Paragraphs
CHAPTER 1. General	1–2
CHAPTER 2. Ammunition	3–6
CHAPTER 3. Gun and carriage.	
SECTION I. Functioning of parts	7–10
II. Inspection and maintenance	11
CHAPTER 4. Instruction of members of gun section	12
CHAPTER 5. Gunnery.	
SECTION I. Elementary gunnery	13–17
II. Use of firing tables. charts, and scales	18
CHAPTER 6. Pointing	19–22
CHAPTER 7. Position-finding system	23–26
CHAPTER 8. Position-finding apparatus.	
SECTION I. Plotting-room apparatus	27–45
II. Observation instruments, including range finders	46–53
CHAPTER 9. Instruction of members of range section	54
CHAPTER 10. Observation.	
SECTION I. Observation of fire and application of corrections	55–56
II. Spotting boards	57–58
III. General duties of observers in observation posts	59
CHAPTER 11. Target practice.	
SECTION I. Preparation for subcaliber and service practice	60–61
II. Preparation of records and reports; analysis of drill and target practice	62
CHAPTER 12. Searchlights.	
SECTION I. Fixed searchlight apparatus (seacoast)	63–66
II. Mobile searchlight apparatus (AA and seacoast)	67–74
III. Troubles and remedies	75–79
IV. Sound-locator apparatus	80–84
V. Tactical employment of AA searchlight section	85–86

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

426685°—42——1

		Paragraph
CHAPTER 13.	Instruction of searchlight squad	87
CHAPTER 14.	Targets, local shipping, and water areas.	
SECTION I.	Indication and identification of naval targets	88–89
II.	Local shipping and water areas	90
III.	Indication, identification, and characteristic features of classes of aircraft	91–94
CHAPTER 15.	Motor transportation.	
SECTION I.	March rules and discipline	95–97
II.	Rules of the road, convoy discipline, and road inspections	98–102
III.	Principles of internal combustion engines	103–113
IV.	Inspection and maintenance	114–122
V.	Shop practices and supervision and instruction of mechanics	123–125
VI.	Loads and their proper distribution	126
VII.	Training of drivers	127
VIII.	Records and reports	128
CHAPTER. 16.	Communication.	
SECTION I.	Systems of communication	129–132
II.	Installation and operation of message centers; encoding and decoding	133–134
III.	Installation of field telephone system	135–137
IV.	Visual signaling—panels	138
V.	Location of faults; tests for grounds and short circuits	139
VI.	Instruction of linemen and telephone and switchboard operators	140
CHAPTER 17.	General subjects.	
SECTION I.	Definitions and elementary principles for seacoast artillery	141
II.	Definitions and elementary principles for AA artillery	142–144
III.	Elementary principles of electricity, magnetism, and induction	145–146
IV.	Organization of a position	147–150
V.	Map reading	151–154
VI.	Dissemination of AA artillery alarms	155–156
		Page
INDEX		335

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL

Paragraph
Purpose and scope 1
Assignment of topics 2

1. Purpose and scope.—*a. Purpose.*—This manual is designed primarily for use by organization commanders in the instruction of enlisted men of fixed seacoast artillery units. It may be used by officers conducting examinations of enlisted men for qualification as gunners, as contemplated by FM 4–150. The questions and answers in this manual are intended merely as a guide and should be supplemented by the extensive use of other questions and answers and by practical demonstrations.

b. Scope.—The topics included in this manual are those prescribed in FM 4–150 for qualification of enlisted men as expert gunners in the units indicated in *a* above.

2. Assignment of topics.—The following is the general assignment of topics. Each organization should omit those portions of the assigned chapters, sections, and paragraphs that do not pertain to the particular equipment in use by the organization.

Subject	Gun commander and gun pointer	Plotter
Definitions and elementary principles for seacoast artillery.	Ch. 17, sec. I	Ch. 17, sec. I.
Gun and carriage	Ch. 3	
Ammunition	Ch. 2	
Ability to instruct in the duties of each member of gun section.	Ch. 4	
Preparations for subcaliber and service practice.	Ch. 11, sec. I	
Pointing	Ch. 6	
Organization of a position	Ch. 17, sec. IV	
Position-finding system		Ch. 7.
Position-finding apparatus, plotting room		Ch. 8, sec. I.
Ability to instruct in the duties of each member of range section.		Ch. 9.
Elementary gunnery		Ch. 5, sec. I.
Methods of observation of fire and how to apply corrections.		Ch. 10, sec. I.
Preparation of records and reports, analysis of drill and target practice.		Ch. 11, sec. II.
Use of firing tables, charts, and scales		Ch. 5, sec. II (headquarters batteries only).

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Subject	Observer	Chief of section, searchlight battery, harbor defense (except AA searchlight platoon); and searchlight platoon headquarters battery harbor defense separate battalion	Chief of section, AA searchlight platoon, harbor defense regiment
Definitions and elementary principles for seacoast artillery.	Ch. 17, sec. I	Ch. 17, sec. I	
Organization of a position.	Ch. 17, sec. IV	Ch. 17, sec. IV	
Position-finding system	Ch. 7		
Position-finding apparatus, observation instruments, including range finders in use in the battery.	Ch. 8, sec. II		
Detailed knowledge of the spotting system in use in the battery.	Ch. 10, sec. II (see note).		
Observation of fire	Ch. 10, sec. I		
General duties of observers in observation posts.	Ch. 10, sec. III		
Map reading	Ch. 17, sec. V (headquarters batteries only).		Ch. 17, sec. V.
Detailed knowledge of the indication and identification of targets (naval and air).	Ch. 14	Ch. 14, secs. I and II.	
Searchlight apparatus		Ch. 12, secs. I and II; ch. 13.	Ch. 12, secs. I and II.
Troubles and remedies, searchlight.		Ch. 12, sec. III	Ch. 12, sec. III.
Definitions and elementary principles for AA artillery.			Ch. 17, sec. II.
Sound-locator apparatus.			Ch. 12, sec. IV.
Tactical employment of the AA searchlight section.			Ch. 12, sec. V.
March rules and discipline.			Ch. 15, sec. I.

NOTE.—For observers in headquarters batteries this topic will cover the systems in use by the combat units.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Subject	Transportation sergeant and truckmaster, supply platoon, headquarters battery, coast artillery regiment or separate battalion; transportation sergeant, AA searchlight platoon, searchlight battery harbor defense regiment	Communication sergeant, searchlight battery, harbor defense, and AA searchlight platoon, harbor defense regiment
Principles of internal combustion engines	Ch. 15, sec. III	
Inspection and maintenance of motor transportation.	Ch. 15, sec. IV	
Elementary principles of electricity, magnetism, and induction.	Ch. 17, sec. III	Ch. 17, sec. III.
Shop practices, supervision and instruction of mechanics.	Ch. 15, sec. V	
Loads and their proper distribution	Ch. 15, sec. VI	
Training of drivers	Ch. 15, sec. VII	
Detailed knowledge of rules of the road, convoy regulations and discipline, speed laws and regulations, parking, and road inspections.	Ch. 15, sec. II	
Records and reports, motor transportation	Ch. 15, sec. VIII	
Systems of communications	----------	Ch. 16, sec. I.
Visual signaling—panels	----------	Ch. 16, sec. IV.
Installation of a complete field telephone system required by the unit.	----------	Ch. 16, sec. III.
Location of faults, tests for grounds, and tests for short circuits.	----------	Ch. 16, sec. V.
Installation and operation of message centers, encoding and decoding.	----------	Ch. 16, sec. II.
Practical knowledge of the available means and methods for dissemination of AA artillery intelligence, alarms, alerts, flash messages, records, and reports (AA searchlight platoon only).	----------	Ch. 17, sec. VI (AA searchlight platoon only).
Ability to instruct in the duties of linemen, and telephone and switchboard operators.	----------	Ch. 16, sec. VI.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 2

AMMUNITION

	Paragraph
Storage and care	3
Preparation of powder charges	4
Filling, fuzing, and preparing projectiles for firing	5
Painting projectiles	6

3. Storage and care.—*Q.* How are propelling charges stored? *A.* In airtight, waterproof storage cases in magazines.

Q. What are the general instructions regarding storage of powder containers? *A.*

(1) All dirt or foreign material should be removed from containers before they are stored.

(2) Powder charges in damaged containers should not be stored until the containers have been repaired or the powder repacked in serviceable containers.

(3) Charges should be separated into lots and all charges of one lot stored in the same room or under as similar conditions as possible.

(4) Containers should preferably be stored on end with skids under them to permit air circulation. If piled on their sides, care should be taken to separate them by skids rounded to fit the case. Skids should be placed between all layers.

(5) Cases should be stored so that the covers can be readily inspected or removed.

(6) Metal containers should be cleaned and repainted whenever such action is necessary to prevent rusting. They should be removed from the magazine before painting.

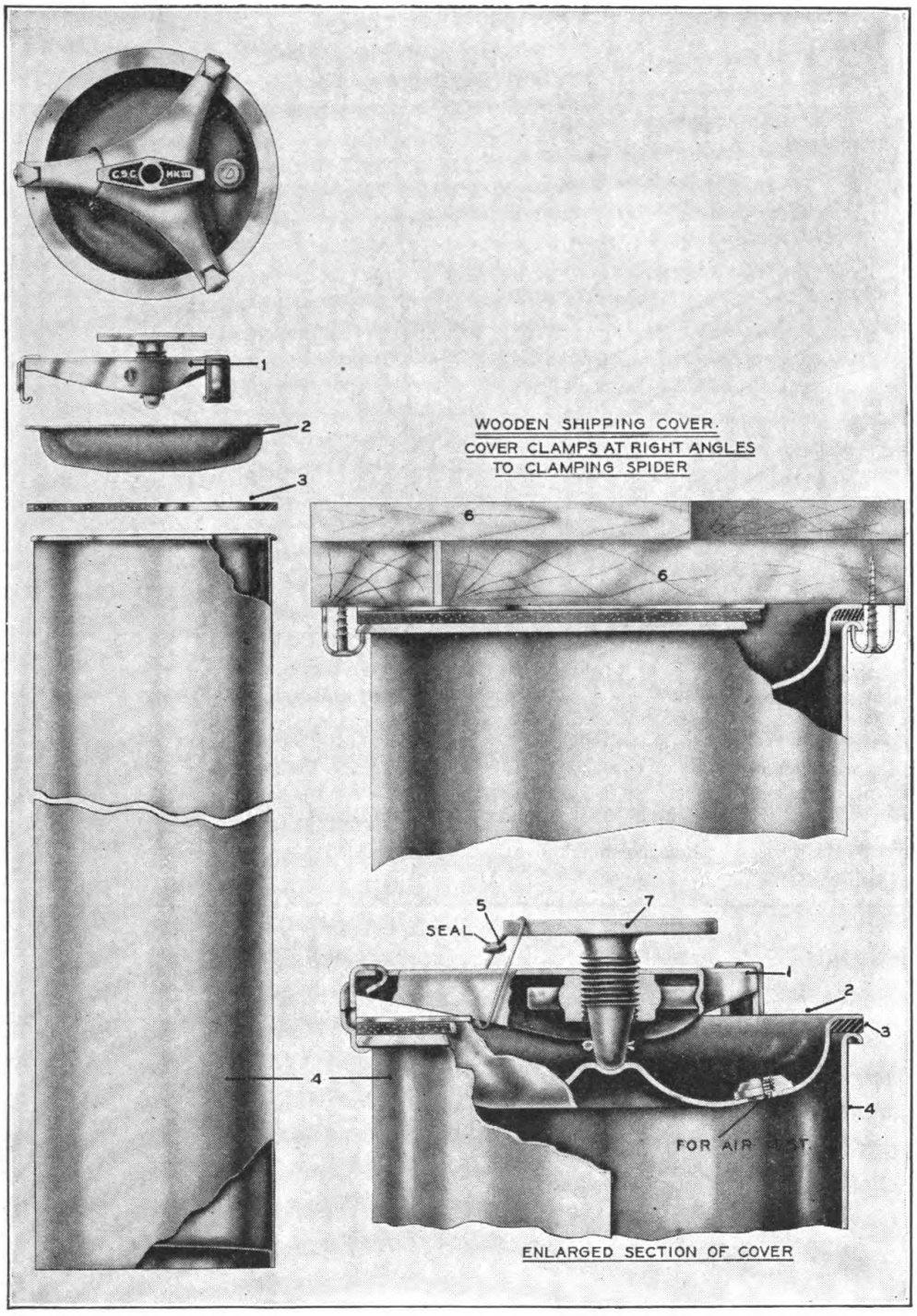
(7) Storage cases should never be opened except in preparation for firing or as directed by competent authority.

Q. What special precaution applies to the handling of powder storage cases? *A.* It is most important that powder storage cases be kept airtight until the powder is used. Special care must be used in handling them so as to avoid any strains that might cause air leaks.

Q. How are primers and fuzes stored? *A.* In airtight, waterproof containers usually packed in wooden boxes. The same precautions observed for propelling charges apply generally to the storage of primers and fuzes.

Q. How should projectiles be stored? *A.* On their sides or their bases, with skids separating the pile from the floor and between layers. They should be handled carefully to avoid damaging the rotating bands.

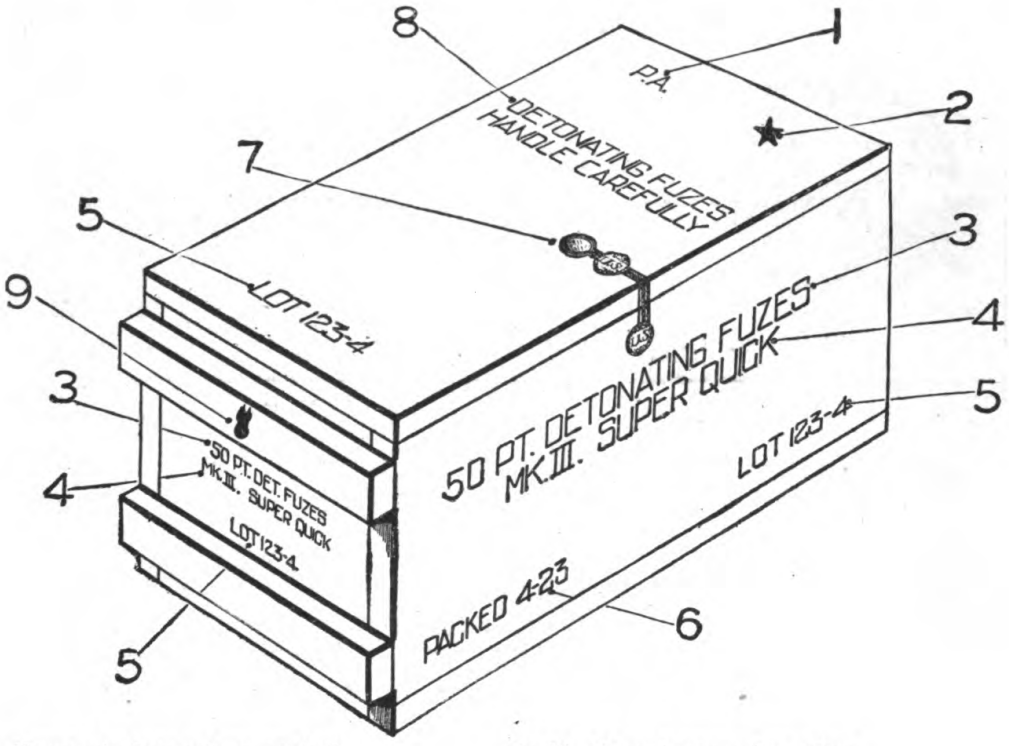
Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



1. Clamping spider.
2. Cover.
3. Rubber gasket.
4. Body.
5. Wire seal.
6. Shipping cover.
7. Clamp screw.

FIGURE 1.—Storage case for propelling charge.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



1. Name of place where packed.
2. Inspector's stamp.
3. Quality and kind of fuze.
4. Mark number and type of fuze.
5. Lot number.
6. Month and year of packing.
7. Seal.
8. To comply with I. C. C. regulations.
9. Ordnance insignia.

FIGURE 2.—Packing box for point detonating fuzes.

NOTE.—Both ends of box are marked alike.

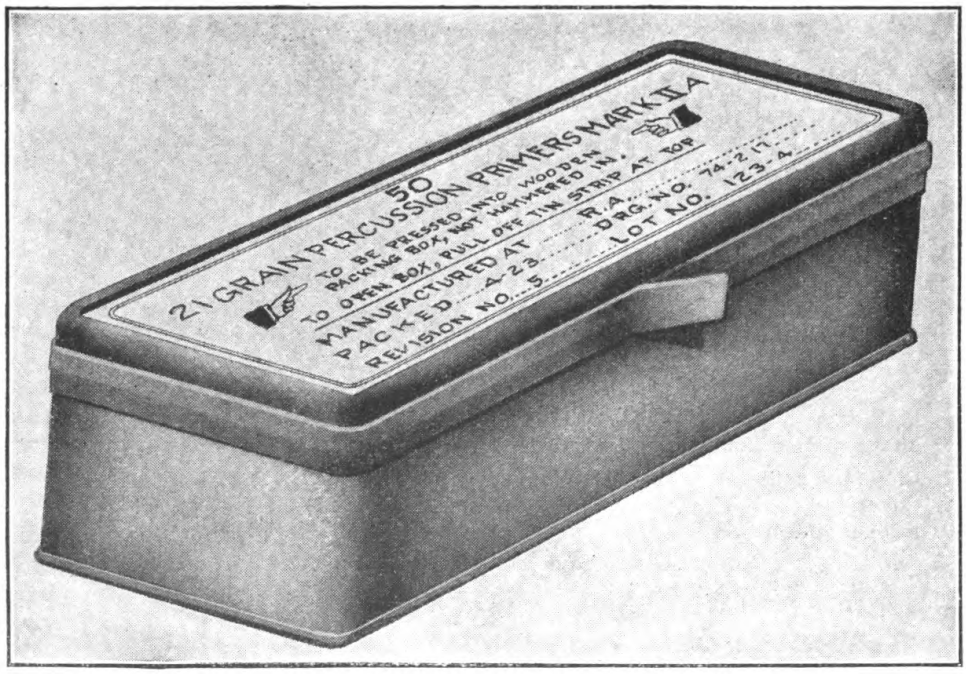


FIGURE 3.—Packing can for 21-grain percussion primers Mk. II–A.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What is the purpose of the rope grommet placed on a projectile? *A.* To protect the rotating band.

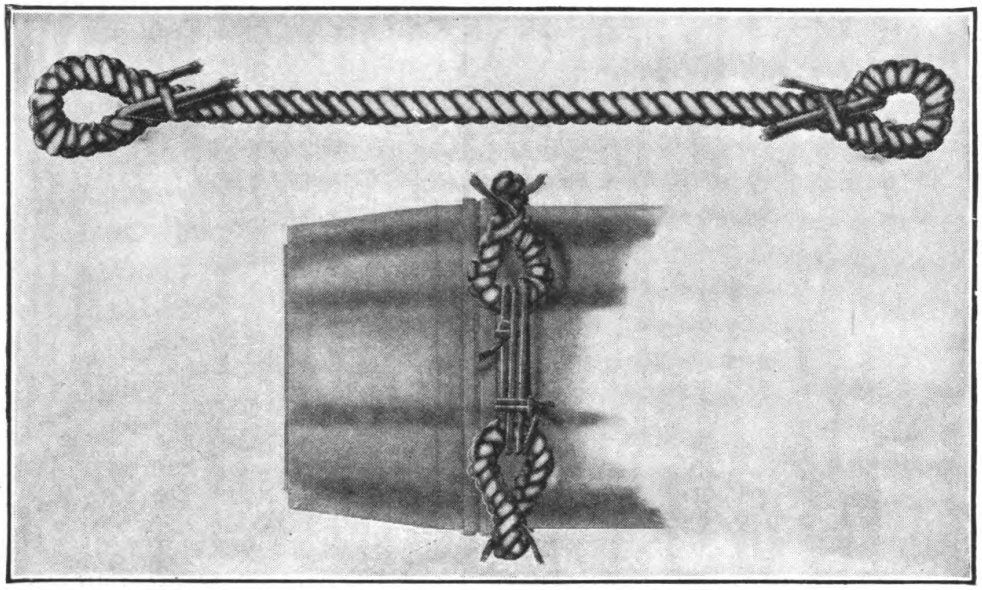


FIGURE 4.—Rope grommet.

Q. What are the general instructions applying to storage magazines? *A.*

(1) Magazines and the ground surrounding them should be kept absolutely clean.

(2) Magazines should be well ventilated, allowing free circulation of dry air around and under the explosives.

(3) The temperature should remain as near 60° F. as possible. In no case should a magazine be used in which the temperature may exceed 95° F.

(4) Matches and unauthorized lights should not be permitted near a magazine.

(5) Piles of ammunition should be neat and stable, with ample aisle space between for ready inspection.

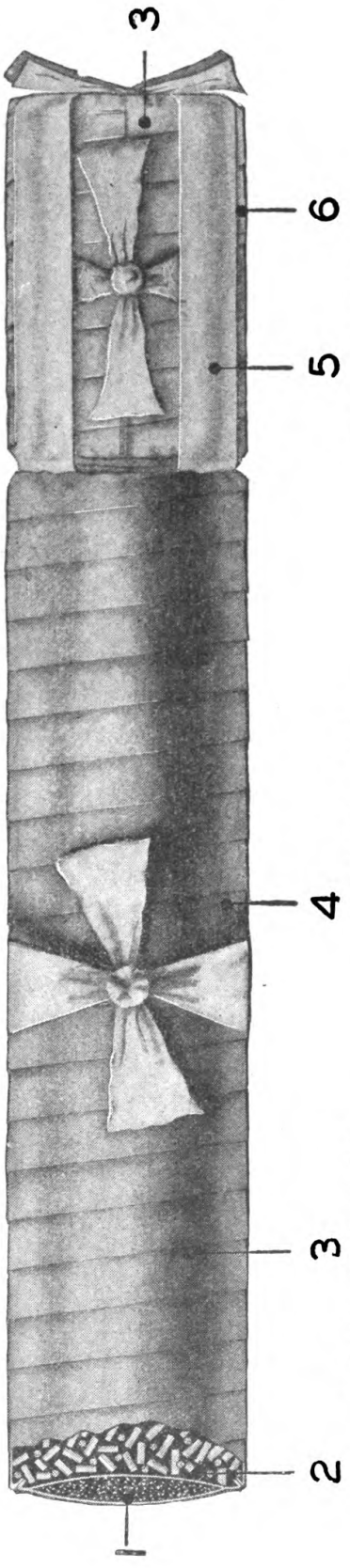
(6) Piles should not extend above the eaves of the magazine.

Q. May propelling charges, primers and fuzes, and loaded projectiles be stored together? *A.* No. Each of the three classes of components should be stored in separate magazines.

Q. How are the magazines of your battery ventilated? *A.* ———.

4. Preparation of powder charges.—*Q.* What is the most important information about a powder charge that the battery commander wants to know before a firing? *A.* The muzzle velocity it will develop when the temperature is normal or 70° F.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



1. Igniter (black powder).
2. Smokeless powder.
3. Spiral wrapping.
4. Base section.
5. Tying straps.
6. Increment section.

FIGURE 5.—155-mm gun propelling charge (base and increment type).

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. How can the weight of a charge be determined? *A.* By removing it from the storage case and weighing it.

Q. How accurately should the weight of a charge be determined? *A.* To the nearest ounce.

Q. State the rules to be followed in preparing charges for target practice. *A.*

(1) Weigh the powder in a sheltered place near the magazine.

(2) Remove the powder tag, primer protector cap, and extra increments from the charge and container.

(3) If charges are loosely wrapped, tighten the lacings or wrappings.

(4) Attach the igniter pad in place for firing.

(5) Check the size of diameter of charges with the gage furnished by the Ordnance Department.

(6) Replace the charges in containers with the igniter pad at the same end as the cover.

(7) Insert a thermometer in one container and mark the container for identification.

(8) Replace covers tightly.

(9) Do not keep powder out of the magazine any longer than necessary.

(10) Do not expose the powder or container to the direct rays of the sun.

(11) Do not use iron or steel tools in opening storage cases. They may cause sparks.

(12) Do not open the containers again until the powder is used.

Q. On what does the temperature of the powder depend? *A.* On the temperature of the air in the place of storage and the length of time the powder has been stored in that place.

Q. How may the temperature of the powder be obtained? *A.* From a thermometer placed in a powder container, or in the magazine.

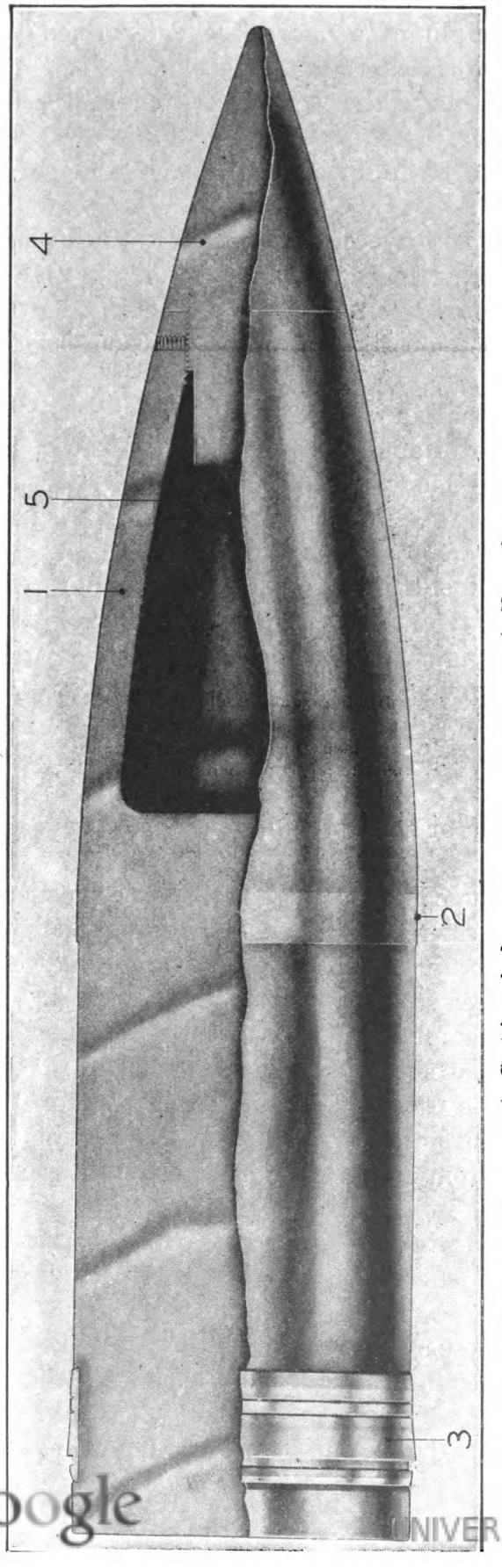
Q. How long must powder be stored in a magazine or other storage place in order to insure that the temperature reading is accurate enough to use? *A.* From 1 day to 2 weeks, depending on the size of the powder charge.

Q. Of what material are the powder bags made? *A.* Of raw silk or other material that burns completely without leaving smoldering pieces.

Q. What is the purpose of the igniter charge? *A.* To distribute the flame from the primer and start the propelling charge burning properly.

Q. What kind of powder is put in the igniter charge? *A.* Black powder.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



1. Cast-iron body.
2. Bourrelet.
3. Rotating band.
4. Nose plug.
5. Empty cavity.

FIGURE 6.—Target-practice projectile.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. Where is the igniter charge placed on the propelling charge? *A.* Usually it is in the form of a pad that is sewed to one end of the charge, or provided with tabs with which it may be tied in that place.

Q. What precautions should be taken when placing the propelling charge in the piece to insure against misfires? *A.* The propelling charge should be placed in the powder chamber in such a manner that the mushroom head of the breechblock will be in contact with the igniter charge when the breechblock is closed.

Q. What is a powder tag? *A.* A linen tag attached to the powder bag.

Q. What information does the powder tag give? *A.*

(1) Name of loading plant.
(2) Date of loading (day, month, and year).
(3) Caliber and model of gun, mortar, or howitzer.
(4) Weight of projectile.
(5) Powder lot number.
(6) Name of manufacturer of powder.
(7) Weight of charge, weight of igniter, and velocity and pressure for each particular weight of projectile or for each increment of powder.

5. Filling, fuzing, and preparing projectiles for firing.—*Q.* How may projectiles used for target practice be brought up to weight? *A.* By filling with wet sand.

Q. What filler is used in armor-piercing projectiles? *A.* Explosive D.

Q. Is it sensitive to shock? *A.* No.

Q. Why do base plugs and base fuzes have left-handed threads? *A.* So that they will tend to tighten rather than to unscrew when the projectile rotates.

Q. What kind of fuzes are used at your battery? *A.* ———.

Q. May fuzes be taken apart by battery personnel? *A.* No.

Q. How are the fuze hole threads in a projectile cleaned? *A.* By the use of a stick wrapped with cloth.

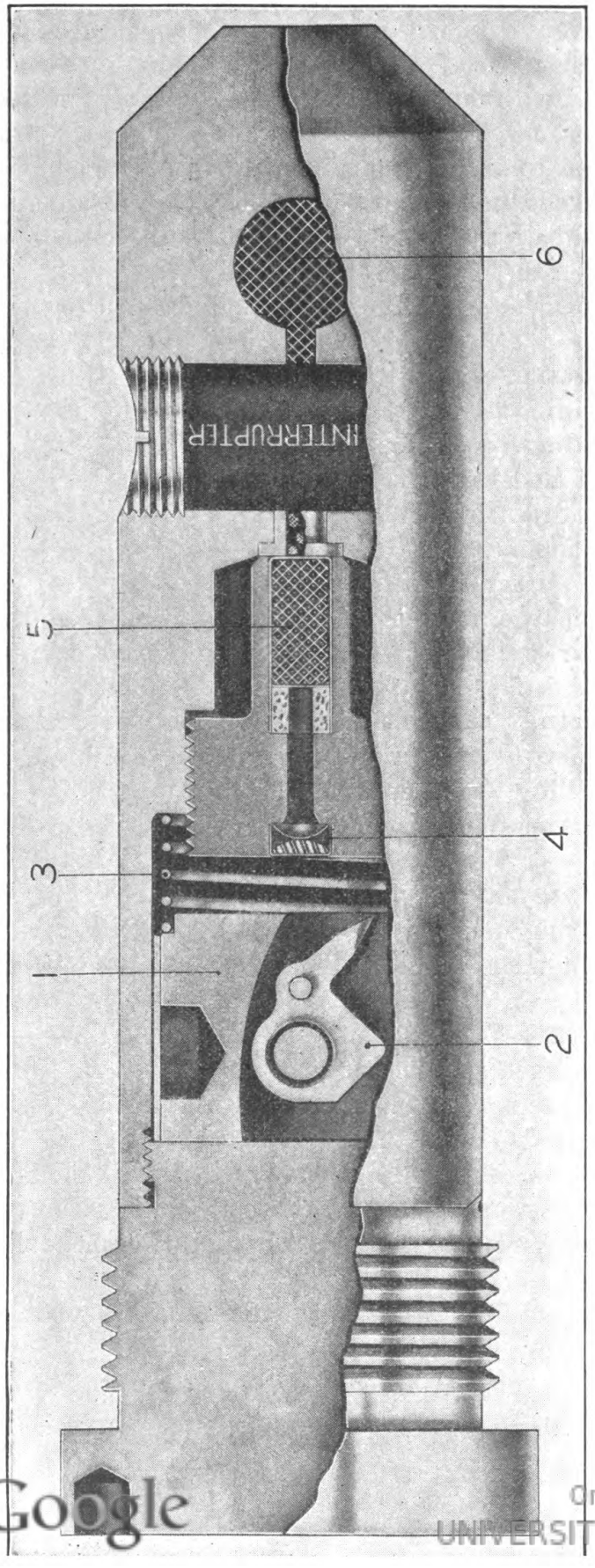
Q. When an attempt is made to insert a fuze and it binds, what is done? *A.* The fuze is removed and the cause of binding determined.

Q. How are fuzes issued to the service? *A.* In hermetically sealed (airtight) boxes.

Q. Should a box containing fuzes be opened before they are immediately needed? *A.* No.

Q. Before a base cover is attached, what must be done to all wrench and other holes in the fuze and base plug? *A.* They should be filled with lead plugs.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



1. Percussion plunger.
2. Firing pin.
3. Restraining spring.
4. Percussion primer.
5. Detonator.
6. Booster charge.

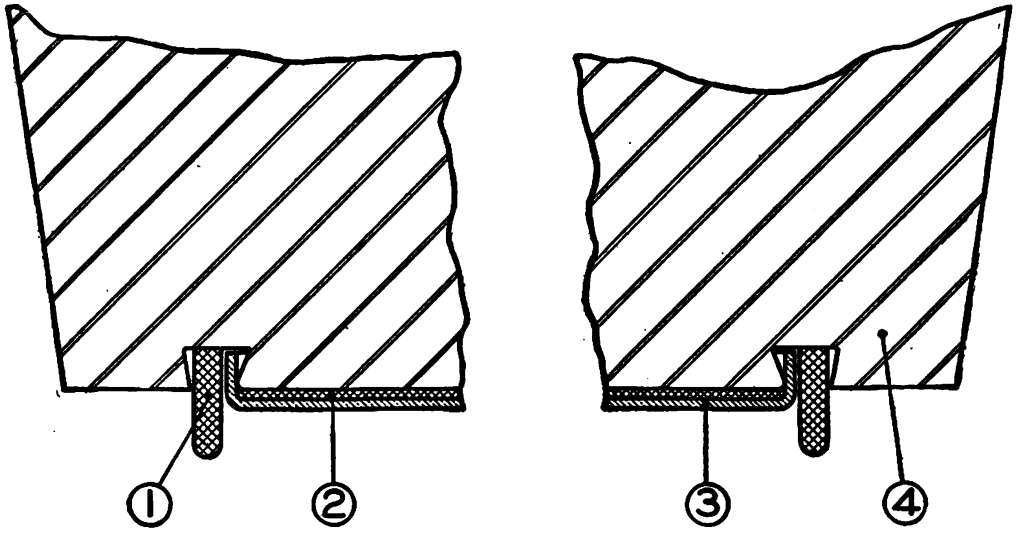
FIGURE 7.—Base detonating fuze Mk. V (medium caliber).

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

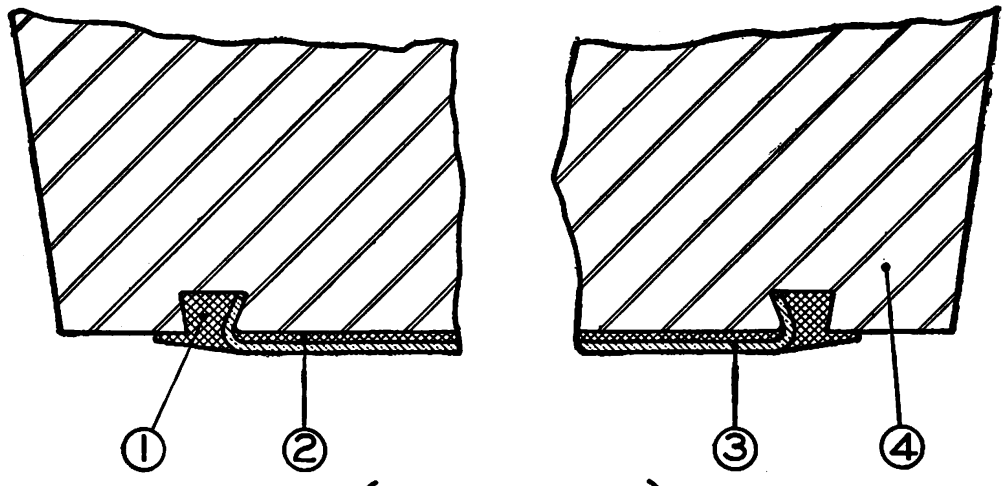
Q. How are the lead plugs inserted? *A*. Insert, then strike or flatten out with a hammer in order to seat the filling plug.

Q. What is meant by arming a fuze? *A*. A fuze is said to be armed when it is ready to fire, that is, when the safety devices have functioned and all parts are in or free to move to their proper positions at the proper time for the fuze to function.

Q. Of what does the base cover consist? *A*. Copper cover, lead disk, and lead calking wire.



(BEFORE ASSEMBLY)



(AFTER ASSEMBLY)

1. Lead calking wire.
2. Lead disk.
3. Copper cup.
4. Base of projectile.

FIGURE 8.—Base cover.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What is the purpose of the base cover? *A*. To keep the gases of the propelling charge from entering the projectile cavity through possible defects in the base.

Q. How is the base cover attached? *A*. Lay the copper cover, with the lead disk in place, over the base of the projectile, the turned-up edge of copper cover entering the undercut groove in the base of the projectile. Bend a strip of lead wire into a circle, place in groove, and flatten out.

Q. How should projectiles be prepared for target practice. *A*.

(1) Bring the projectiles up to the same weight and report the weight to the executive officer.

(2) Replace plugs and fuzes securely.

(3) Clean the projectiles, especially at the bourrelet and rotating band.

(4) Examine rotating bands for burring and for looseness.

(5) Examine the design of projectiles carefully to determine whether or not they are all of the same lot. Frequently a small change in the design of the rotating band or tail changes greatly the ballistic efficiency of a projectile.

(6) If different lots are found, separate the lots and report your findings to the executive officer.

6. Painting projectiles.—*Q*. What indicates whether or not a projectile is filled or fuzed? *A*. Appropriate basic paint indicates that it is filled. Black, longitudinal stripes from the rotating band to the base, 90° apart, indicate that it is not fuzed.

Q. What should be done to projectiles before painting them? *A*. Clean them thoroughly, removing all rust and grease.

Q. What parts are not painted? *A*. Rotating bands and bourrelet.

Q. What color are target-practice projectiles painted? How are they marked? *A*. Black. Stenciled "Target practice."

Q. What do the basic colors on the projectiles indicate? *A*. The type of explosive filler: Yellow, high explosive; red, shrapnel; gray, chemical.

Q. What additional information or marks are found on projectiles? *A*.

(1) Weight zone marks.

(2) Weight of loaded and fuzed (or unfuzed) shell in pounds.

(3) Caliber and type of cannon.

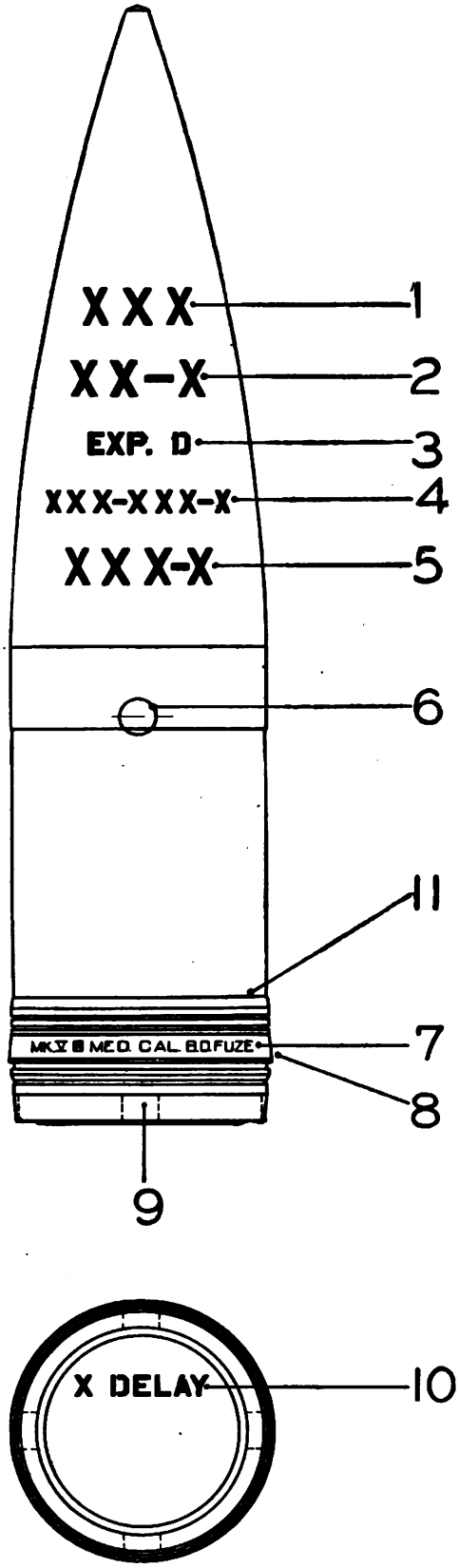
(4) Filler. Initials indicate the type of explosive.

(5) Lot number of filled shell.

(6) Mark number of shell.

(7) Caliber and type of cannon, mark number of shell, initials or symbol of machining plant, and inspection stamps (stamped on shell under paint).

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



1. Weight of loaded and fuzed projectile (in pounds).
2. Caliber and type of cannon as, 10G, 12G, 12M, 14G, 16G, and 16H.
3. Explosive filler—EXP. D. (Initials indicate kind of explosive.)
4. Lot number of filled projectile.
5. Mark number of projectile.
6. Location of center of gravity of loaded and fuzed projectile. (On armor-piercing projectiles and on target-practice projectiles the type and mark number, e. g., Armor-piercing Projectile Mk. XVI or Target-practice C. I. Projectile Mk. VII, are stenciled at the center of gravity.)
7. Mark number, type, and caliber of fuze applicable, to be followed when fuze is assembled, and projectile is not to be immediately fired, by lot number of fuze.
8. The ammunition lot number of filled and fuzed projectile to be stamped on band opposite fuze marking.
9. Four black stripes, 2 inches wide, indicate that the fuze has not been assembled, and the amount of delay of fuze stenciled on base cover.
10. When the fuze has been assembled and projectile is not to be fired immediately, the four stripes mentioned in 9 are painted out, and there is stenciled on the base cover (as shown at 10) the amount of delay action of the assembled fuze, as nondelay, short-delay, long-delay, or equivalent initials. In addition there is stamped on base of projectile outside of base cover: Caliber and type of gun, mark number and type of projectile, weight of filled projectile, initials or symbol of machining plant, and inspection stamps.
11. Caliber and type of cannon, mark number of projectile, lot number of unfilled projectile, initials or symbol of machining plant, and inspection stamp (stamped on projectile, under paint).

NOTE.—For high-explosive, common steel, point-fuzed shell for 10-inch, 12-inch, 14-inch, and 16-inch cannon omit 7, 8, 9, and 10.

FIGURE 9.—Marking of projectiles for 10-inch, 12-inch, 14-inch, and 16-inch cannon.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 3

GUN AND CARRIAGE

Paragraphs
SECTION I. Functioning of parts 7–10
II. Inspection and maintenance 11

SECTION I

FUNCTIONING OF PARTS

Paragraph
Guns and carriages, general 7
Guns on disappearing carriages 8
Mortars, M1896 and M1896MIII carriages 9
Guns on barbette carriages 10

7. Guns and carriages, general.—*Q.* Set a range (elevation) of ———. *A.* (Practical demonstration.)

Q. Set an azimuth (deflection) of ———. *A.* (Practical demonstration.)

Q. What type of recoil system is employed on your gun and carriage? *A.* ———.

Q. What type of recuperator system is employed on your gun and carriage? *A.* ———.

Q. By what channels can oil travel from one side of the recoil piston to the other? *A.*

(1) Clearance between wall of cylinder and piston.

(2) Orifices between throttling bars and slots in the piston.

(3) Grooves cut in the wall of the cylinder.

(4) Openings through a throttling valve. (The examining officer will select the proper answer for the recoil system being discussed.)

Q. How often should recoil cylinders be drained and refilled? *A.* Every 6 months.

Q. How often should recoil cylinders be cleaned? *A.* Every year.

Q. By whom should recoil cylinders be cleaned? *A.* Preferably by trained ordnance personnel, but personnel of the battery may clean the cylinders under the supervision of trained ordnance personnel.

Q. Should recoil cylinders be allowed to remain empty? *A.* No, because they become dry and rust.

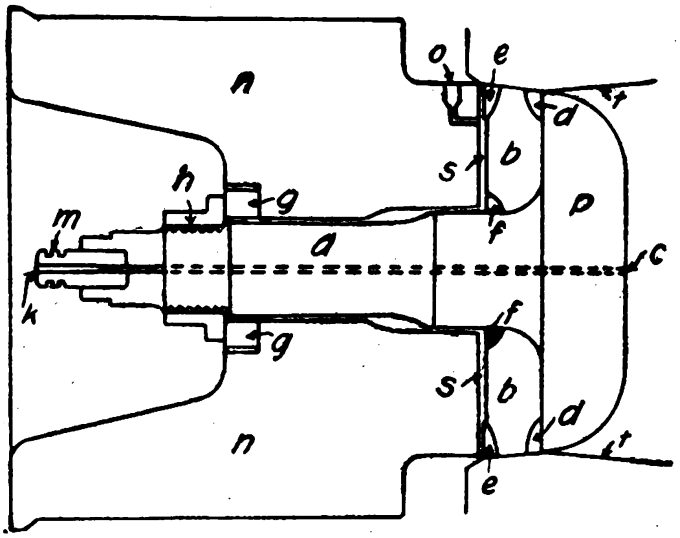
Q. How often should the sufficiency of liquid in the recoil cylinders be verified? *A.* At least once each week and just prior to firing.

Q. If water gets into the recoil cylinders will any damage result? *A.* Yes. The cylinders will rust.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. During firing, what recoil record must be kept? *A.* On disappearing carriages a record of notches of recoil must be kept. On other carriages the maximum length of recoil during the firing must be recorded.

Q. What is a stuffing box? By whom should they be repacked? *A.* A device to prevent leakage of oil around a piston rod where it emerges from a cylinder. Preferably by trained ordnance personnel.



a. Obturator spindle.
b. Gas check pad.
c. Vent hole.
d. Front split ring.
e. Rear split ring.
f. Small split ring.
g. Ball bearing.
h. Split nut.
k. Primer seat.
m. Firing mechanism seat.
n. Breechblock.
o. Oil hole.
p. Mushroom head.
s. Filling-in disk.
t. Cannon tube.

FIGURE 10.—De Bange obturator.

Q. What device is used in cannon that are fired with separate loading ammunition to seal the breech against the escape of powder gases? *A.* The De Bange obturator.

Q. How does it work? *A.* The pressure of the gases against the

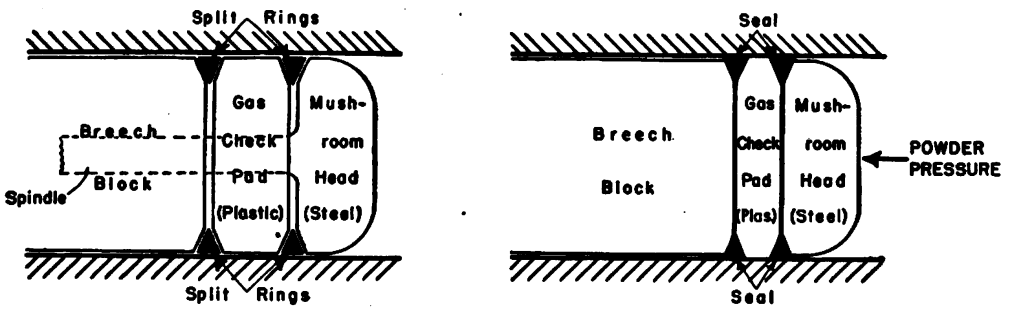


FIGURE 11.—Obturation (De Bange obturator).

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

mushroom head compresses the gas check pad and this expands the steel split rings so that they make a gastight fit against the walls of the breech recess and around the spindle.

Q. How is the escape of gases through the vent prevented? *A.* The brass primer case expands under the pressure of the gas and completely closes the vent.

Q. What lubricant is used on gas check pads? *A.* Graphite lubricating grease.

Q. Is this used on new pads? *A.* Yes.

Q. Why is the gas check pad lubricated? *A.* To prevent sticking and thereby injuring the pad.

Q. When the breechblock is rotated, do the spindle, pad, and split rings rotate? *A.* No.

Q. What is provided between the breechblock and the gas check pad to reduce friction between the rotating and nonrotating parts? *A.* The filling-in disk.

Q. What is provided between the obturator spindle nut and the breechblock to reduce friction between the rotating and nonrotating parts? *A.* A thrust bearing.

Q. What types of thrust bearings are used on the obturator spindle? *A.* The roller-bearing type, the multiple-washer type, and the spring type.

Q. Which types of thrust bearing require a special adjustment of the initial compression of the gas check pad? *A.* The roller-bearing type and the multiple-washer type.

Q. Describe the adjustment of the roller-bearing and multiple-washer type of thrust bearing. *A.* Assemble the obturator to the breechblock and screw up the obturator spindle nut as tight as possible by hand, the breechblock being in the open position. Then close the block and rotate it halfway. Then screw up the obturator spindle nut as tight as possible, using the wrench provided.

Q. On breechblocks which have the roller-bearing or multiple-washer type of thrust bearing on the obturator spindle, what should be done if the breechblock is difficult to close after firing the gun? *A.* Readjust the gas check pad.

Q. How is the breechblock assembled on your gun? *A.* (Practical demonstration).

Q. How should gas check pads be stored when they are removed from the cannon? *A.* They should be inclosed in suitable containers which will preserve them from deformation and from contact with moisture. If possible the containers should be sealed by soldering to prevent the entrance of moisture.

Q. How are new gas check pad containers opened? *A.* By means

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

of the container opener, a special tool designed for opening the container without damaging the pad.

Q. What is the purpose of an antifriction device? *A.* An antifriction device is designed and constructed so that when the gun is at rest the elevating or traversing parts are lifted off the main bearings and supported on light free-turning parts; thus the operation of pointing the gun is made easier.

Q. What is the purpose of a slip-friction device? *A.* To protect traversing and elevating gear trains from damage by allowing slip-

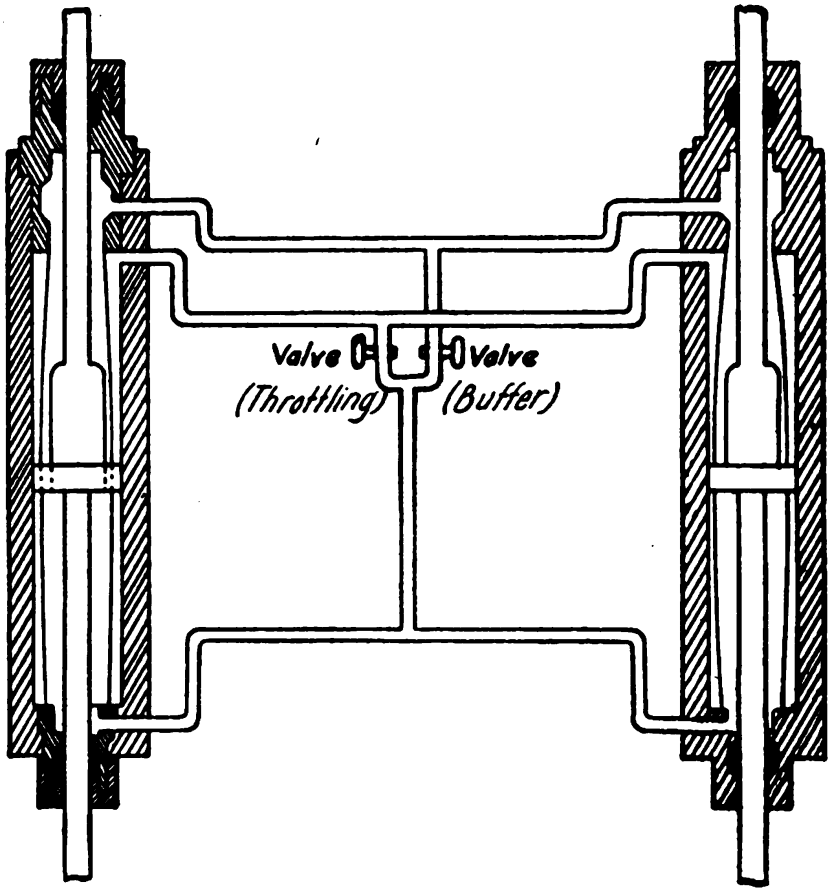


FIGURE 12.—Recoil system for disappearing carriage.

page when they are subjected to forces in excess of those for which they were designed.

NOTE.—The enlisted man will be required to point out any antifriction and slip-friction devices on the carriage and explain their proper adjustment.

8. Guns on disappearing carriages.—*Q.* What liquid is used in the recoil system on your carriage? *A.* ———.

Q. Point out the filling and drain plugs on the recoil cylinders and show how to fill the cylinders. *A.* (Practical demonstration.)

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. Where can you obtain data as to the proper setting of the throttling valve on your carriage? *A.* In the emplacement book of the battery.

Q. What is the proper setting of the throttling valve on your carriage? *A.* ———.

Q. Where can you obtain data as to the proper setting of the buffer valve on your carriage? *A.* In the emplacement book of the battery.

Q. What is the proper setting of the buffer valve on your carriage? *A.* ———.

Q. Read the present setting of these valves. *A.* Throttling valve setting ———; buffer valve setting ———.

Q. If you change the setting of the buffer valve, does this necessitate a corresponding change in the recoil valve? *A.* Yes, unless a change in the length of recoil is desired.

Q. How may the length of recoil be varied? *A.* It can be controlled by setting the throttling valve.

Q. If the gun recoils unusually hard, what device brings it to rest gently enough to prevent damage? *A.* The recoil buffer plates on the near end of the chassis, which are struck by the upper end of the gun levers.

Q. How do you measure the setting of the recoil valve? *A.* By the scale marked on the valve.

Q. What prevents an unauthorized change in the recoil valve setting? *A.* A padlock placed on the valve.

Q. Why should the sufficiency of liquid in the recoil system be checked before the gun is tripped into battery? *A.* Because serious damage may result if the amount of liquid is not sufficient to absorb the energy of the moving parts and bring them to rest gently and smoothly.

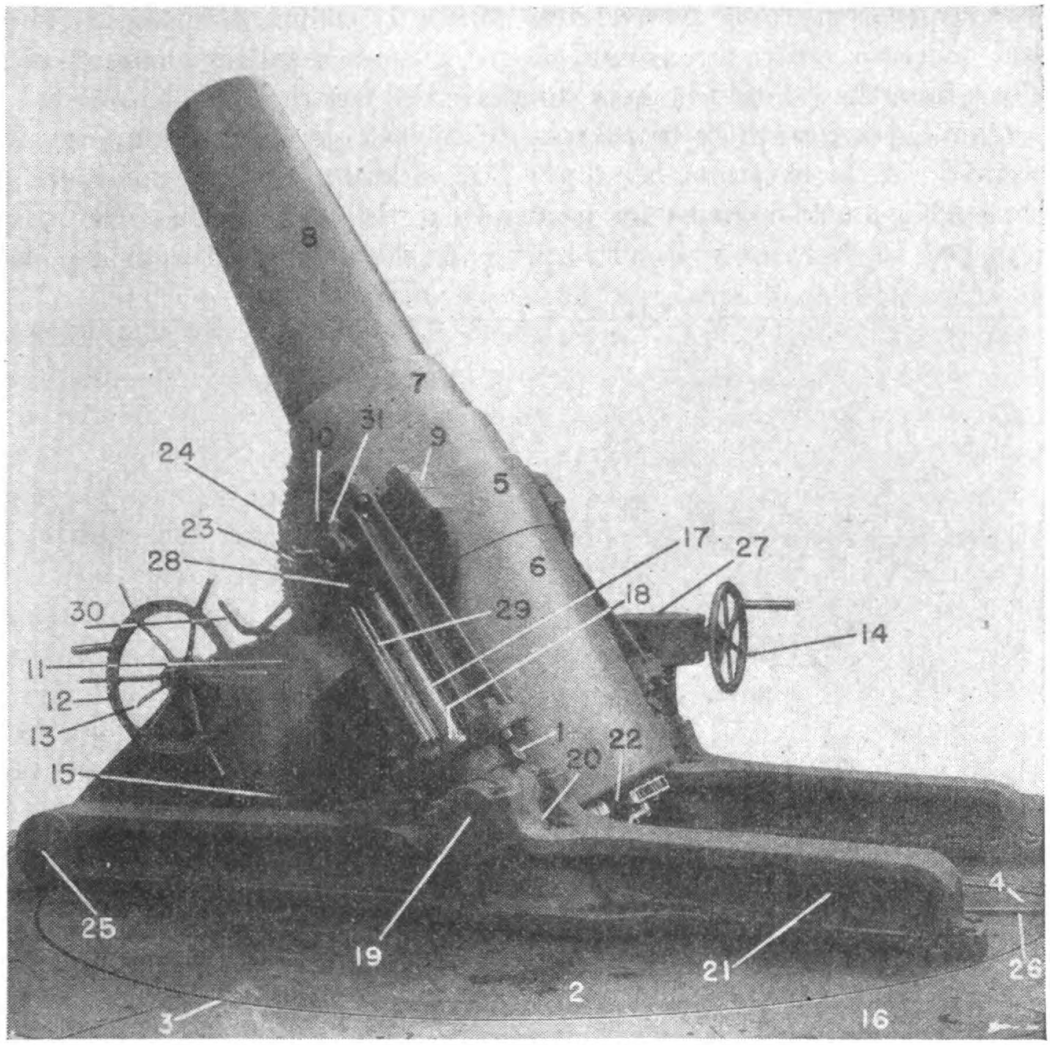
9. Mortars, M1896 and M1896MIII carriages.—*Q.* What liquid is used in the recoil system on your carriage? *A.* ———.

Q. Point out the filling and drain plugs on the recoil cylinders. Show how to fill the recoil cylinders. *A.* (Practical demonstration.)

Q. Describe the action of the carriage when the mortar is fired. *A.* The force of recoil is transmitted through the crankpins and the cross head to the pistons, forcing them downward. The resistance of oil in the cylinders slows up the recoil, and the counterrecoil springs, which have been compressed in the downward movement of the mortar, force the piece back into firing position.

Q. What is the value of exercising the springs before target practice? *A.* To insure free spring motion to return the mortar to firing position.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



1. Recoil cylinder filling hole and plug.
2. Racer.
3. Graduated azimuth scale.
4. Removable floor plate.
5. Trunnion band or hoop.
6. "A" row.
7. "D" row.
8. "C" row.
9. Trunnion cap square.
10. Buffer plates and cushions.
11. Top carriage or saddle.
12. Elevating handwheel.
13. Elevating friction clamp.
14. Traversing crank.
15. Spring columns.
16. Floor plates.
17. Piston rod.
18. Stuffing box.
19. Recoil cylinder trunnion.
20. Recoil cylinder.
21. Side rails.
22. Breech mechanism.
23. Elevation quadrant.
24. Elevating rack.
25. Saddle trunnion.
26. Shot truck track.
27. Traversing gear box.
28. Cross head.
29. Cross head guide.
30. Zero elevation locking device lever.
31. Trunnion grease cup.

FIGURE 13.—12-inch mortar, M1890MI, mounted on carriage M1896MI.

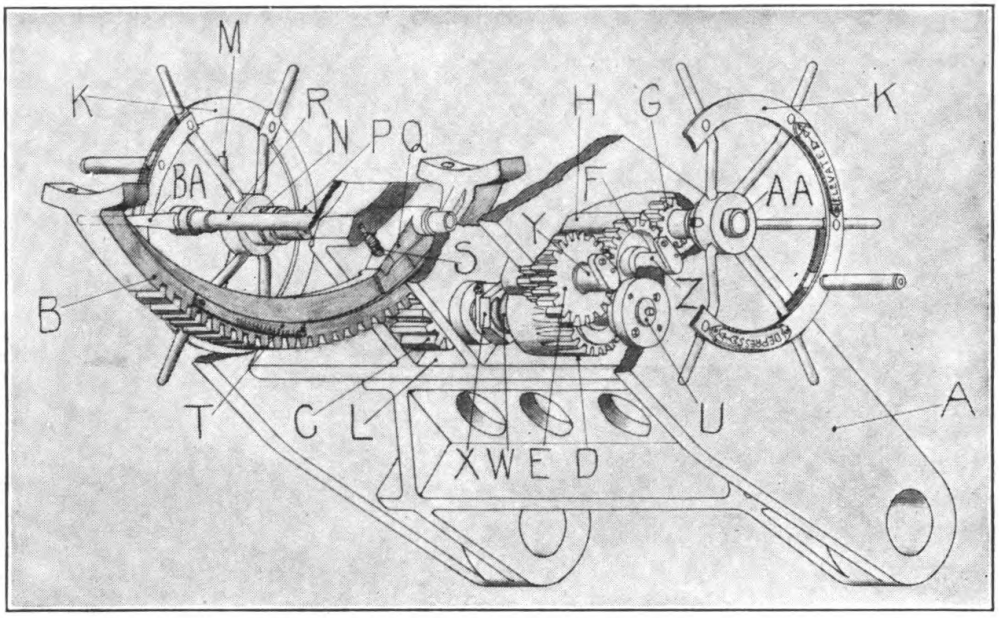
Q. What are the regulations about periodic traversing of the mortar? *A*. It should not be left standing continuously at a single azimuth as this tends to disturb the level of the base ring.

Q. Why is it especially necessary to keep piston rods free from rust?

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

A. Cleaning rust off piston rods tends to reduce their diameters and increase clearance around them with a resulting loss of oil. Therefore, they should be kept lubricated so that no rust can form.

Q. What action must be taken in case leakage around the pistons occurs? *A.* If it cannot be stopped by tightening up on the stuffing boxes, they must be repacked. In any event, the oil should be promptly replaced, so that rust will not form inside the cylinders.



A. Top carriage.
B. Elevating rack.
C. Elevating pinion.
D. Elevating gear.
E. Intermediate gears.
F. Elevating idler gear.
G. Elevating handwheel shaft pinion.
H. Elevating handwheel shaft.
K. Elevating handwheel.
L. Cored opening in top carriage.
M. Hand nut.
N. Thrust collar.
P. Bushing.
Q. Pawl.
R. Pawl shaft.
S. Pawl spring.
T. Elevating scale.
U. Elevating shaft.
W. Clutch spring.
X. Clutch spring adjusting nut.
Y. Intermediate pin.
Z. Idler pin.
AA. Collar nut.
BA. Pawl lever.

FIGURE 14.—Elevating system 12-inch mortars.

Q. What is the purpose of the knife edge bearing on the spring cup? *A.* It is to allow turning movement similar to the spring box.

Q. What are the buffer stops for? *A.* They are provided as additional precaution against shock when returning to firing position.

Q. What takes up the counterrecoil. *A.* The counterrecoil buffer.

Q. What would you do if the equalizing pipe broke during battle? *A.* Plug up the pipe holes with the bronze plugs provided.

Q. To what is the piston rod fastened, and how is it fastened? *A.* It is fastened to a sliding cross head by means of a collar and nut.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What pieces transmit the force of recoil from the mortar trunnion hoop to the cross head? *A.* Crankpins.

Q. The elevating rack is cut on the arc of a circle. Where is the center of this circle? *A.* At the intersection of the axis of the trunnions and the axis of the bore.

Q. If the mortar is fired and does not return completely into battery, can an elevation be given accurately by the elevation scale? *A.* No.

Q. Describe the action of the elevating mechanism. Describe in detail the adjustment of this mechanism. *A.* The elevating rack is bolted to the under side of the mortar and meshes with a pinion on the shaft; this shaft is rotated by means of gearing on a second shaft, on which are the elevating handwheels. To protect teeth of gearing from stripping, the elevating shaft has a slip-friction device. Friction may be adjusted to any degree of pressure. The adjustment is correct when the strength of two men on the handwheels is required to cause slipping when an attempt is made to depress the mortar below its minimum elevation.

Q. How is the mortar held in the loading position? *A.* By a lock bar and spring attached to the top carriage, which engages a lock stud on the elevating rack.

Q. How is it held in the firing position? *A.* By a clamp on the elevating mechanism.

Q. Point out the principal parts of the traversing mechanism and show how they function. How are the worm gear and gear rim lubricated? *A.* ———.

Q. Where does the firing circuit come into the carriage? *A.* Through the well and a receptacle box bolted to the under side of the base ring.

Q. How is the receptacle kept closed and watertight? *A.* By a cap when not in use, and by a rubber gasket.

Q. How is the electrical connection made from the receptacle box to the primer? How is it kept watertight? How must the connecting cable be hung between receptacle boxes? *A.* From base ring to rotating racer by reinforced cord, from racer to mortar in elevated position by a short cord and a special plug. The connection is kept watertight by a rubber gasket and plug screwed into the receptacle cover. The receptacle box on the racer has a spring cover which closes automatically when the safety firing plug is withdrawn.

Q. Trace the lighting circuit and tell the purpose of each part. *A.* (Practical demonstration.)

Q. Can you insert the lighting plug into the firing receptacle and vice versa? *A.* No.

Q. How long should the cable be which suspends the safety firing

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

plug? *A.* Just long enough for the plug to fit in the receptacle when the mortar is elevated to its minimum firing elevation.

Q. Where should the firing circuit be stored when not in use? *A.* It should be kept in a clean, dry place.

NOTE.—Questions of a similar scope may be improvised locally to cover the M1908 carriage.

10. Guns on barbette carriages.—*a. Recoil system.*—*Q.* What liquid is used in the recoil system on your carriage? *A.* ———.

Q. What gas is used in the recuperator on your carriage? *A.* ———.

Q. Point out the filling and drain plugs on the recoil cylinders. Show how to fill the cylinders. *A.* (Practical demonstration.)

Q. Point out the filling and drain plugs on the recuperator. Show how to fill the recuperator. *A.* (Practical demonstration.)

b. Waterbury hydraulic speed gear.—*Q.* How is power transmitted from the input shaft to the output shaft? *A.* By a hydraulic connection.

Q. How is the speed of the output shaft controlled? *A.* By varying the angle of the tilting box in the input end.

Q. Are the speed and direction of rotation of the input shaft varied in any way? *A.* No.

Q. How do you determine the sufficiency of oil in the speed gear? *A.* The oil level should be even with the index line in the expansion box.

Q. Will damage result if a load is placed on the output shaft so that the shaft cannot turn? *A.* No. Release valves in the valve plate will function to relieve any unduly excessive pressure.

c. M5 data transmission system.—*Q.* What type of electrical current is required for operation of the M5 data transmission system? *A.* One hundred and ten-volt alternating current.

Q. What does the data transmission system transmit? *A.* Firing data only.

Q. Is there a mechanical connection between the coarse and fine dials on the receiver? *A.* No.

Q. What angle is represented by one complete revolution of the fine dial on the azimuth receiver? *A.* Ten degrees.

Q. What angle is represented by one complete revolution of the fine dial on the elevation receiver? *A.* One hundred mils.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

SECTION II

INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

Paragraph
Guns and mortars 11

11. Guns and mortars.—*Q.* Why are grease cups instead of oil cups used on certain bearings? *A.* Spring pressure is necessary, and lubrication must sometimes be furnished from the lower side of the bearing surface.

Q. In connection with maintenance for what is the gun commander responsible? *A.* Periodic lubrication and painting, making adjustments and repairs of a minor nature, calling attention to the need for major repairs, and such constant attention as is necessary to maintain the equipment in a serviceable and clean condition.

Q. How often should the breech mechanism, and elevating and traversing mechanisms be operated between limits? *A.* At least once a week, in order to assure proper lubrication and to detect any fault which requires attention.

Q. What care should be taken of recoil cylinders? *A.* They should be kept filled with oil. They should be emptied and refilled at least once every 6 months and thoroughly cleaned once each year.

Q. What care should be taken of hydropneumatic counterrecoil mechanisms? *A.* The recuperator cylinder and plunger should be emptied and refilled at least once every 6 months. The Ordnance handbook pertaining to the particular armament should be consulted with reference to the proper protrusion from the stuffing box of the nut on the forward end of the piston rod.

Q. Should a steel hammer ever be used directly on any part of a cannon? *A.* No. Use a copper hammer or place a piece of copper or wood or other cushion between the steel hammer and the cannon.

Q. What parts of guns and carriages are painted? *A.* All steel and iron nonbearing surfaces. Wearing and bearing surfaces, teeth of gears, elevating screws, piston rods, cylinders, counterrecoil springs, and interiors of spring cylinders will not be painted.

Q. What color paint is used? *A.* Olive drab, except for oil holes, grease cups, and similar lubricating devices, which are painted red.

Q. If paint as issued is too thick, how should it be thinned? *A.* Use turpentine as a thinner, but not to a greater extent than 2 percent by volume. If the paint is still too thick use linseed oil.

Q. How are surfaces prepared for painting? *A.* All parts to be painted should be free from scale, dirt, or grease. They may be washed in a liquid made by dissolving one-half pound of sal soda in 8 quarts of warm water, then rinsed in clear water, and wiped thoroughly dry.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What is the method of painting matériel that is in fair condition and only marred in spots? *A.* The marred surfaces should be primed with olive drab paint, given a second coat, and allowed to dry. Then the whole surface should be sandpapered with No. 1½ sandpaper and a coat of paint applied and allowed to dry thoroughly before the piece is used.

Q. What is the method of painting matériel that is in bad condition? *A.* All parts should be thoroughly sandpapered with No. 2½ sandpaper, given a coat of paint and allowed to dry for at least 24 hours. Then sandpaper with No. 00 sandpaper, apply a finishing coat, and permit the parts to dry thoroughly before use.

Q. In general, how many coats of paint a year are necessary to keep the matériel in good condition? *A.* Two.

Q. If, after repeated painting, the paint may become so thick as to scale off in places or give an unsightly appearance, how may it be removed for repainting? *A.* By use of a scaling hammer, putty knives, or scrapers made locally from old files, tool steel, etc; or the following paint remover may help if the paint is not too thick: Dissolve 1 pound of concentrated lye, powdered form, in 6 pints of hot water and add enough lime to give the solution the consistency of paint. Use the solution freshly mixed and apply to parts where paint is to be removed with a brush or with waste tied to the end of a stick. When the solution begins to dry on the surface, use a scraper to remove the old paint and complete the cleaning of the surface with cloth and water. If one application is not enough to loosen the paint, apply additional coats. Before painting, wash the surface with sal soda solution, rinse with clean warm water, and wipe thoroughly dry. If prepared paint remover is available, it may be used instead of the lye solution.

Q. What is used for the base coat on iron or steel when the surface has been scraped down to the metal? *A.* Red lead.

Q. What particular care must be taken in painting artillery matériel? *A.* Care must be taken to avoid interfering with the proper lubrication of the moving parts and to prevent the paint from entering oil holes and bearings.

NOTE.—For members of caretaking detachments, special questions and answers should be prepared in accordance with the latest instructions for care and preservation of such matériel.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 4

INSTRUCTION OF MEMBERS OF GUN SECTION

Paragraph
Requirements 12

12. Requirements.—The candidate should be required to demonstrate practically his ability to instruct one or more members of the gun section. Duties of members of the gun section are prescribed in TM 4–305. Modifications are made in assignments, depending upon the weapons and matériel actually in use.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 5

GUNNERY

Paragraphs
SECTION I. Elementary gunnery 13–17
II. Use of firing tables, charts, and scales 18

SECTION I

ELEMENTARY GUNNERY

Paragraph
Firing tables 13
Charts and scales for fire-control instruments 14
Corrections for variations in range 15
Corrections for variations in direction 16
Meteorological message 17

13. Firing tables.—*Q.* What are firing tables? *A.* Books which give information used in preparing firing data for cannon. There is a different book for each type of cannon.

Q. What is meant by standard conditions? *A.* In computing the elements of the trajectory as listed in table A, part 2, Firing Tables, certain assumptions must be made. Some of these are—

(1) There is no wind.

(2) The temperature of the air is 59° F. at the muzzle of the gun and varies regularly with the altitude in a particular manner.

(3) The density of the air is that corresponding to the temperature at 59° F., a barometer reading of 29.528 inches, and a humidity of 78 percent, and the density varies regularly with the altitude according to certain fixed laws.

(4) That the temperature of the powder is 70° F., and that the powder will give the normal muzzle velocity at that temperature.

(5) The target is at the same level as the gun.

(6) That the earth is not rotating.

Q. Will these assumptions be true for any particular firing? *A.* No. Some or all of them will not be true.

Q. What provision is made in firing tables to meet this situation? *A.* Tables in part 2 of Firing Tables give corrections to be applied when conditions are not standard.

NOTE.—The introductory portion of the firing tables will be of material benefit when using the tables and should be consulted freely.

14. Charts and scales for fire-control instruments.—*Q.* Why are firing tables not consulted during seascoast artillery firing? *A.* Because the data from these firing tables have been made up in a more convenient form for use in the battery. Charts and scales for

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

such instruments as range-correction boards and deflection boards are based on values taken from the firing tables. When it is suspected that these scales or charts are inaccurate due to shrinkage or some mistake in making or mounting them they can be checked against the values in the firing tables. Range or elevation scales at the guns may also be checked against the values given in the firing tables. However, a special range-elevation relation is usually recorded in the emplacement book for a fixed battery and it is more convenient to use it than to use the firing tables.

15. Corrections for variations in range.—*Q.* What position corrections are made for variation in range. *A.*

Correction for—	Effect on range	Nature of correction to range	Usual method of correction
Motion of earth (long-range fire):			
Firing east of N–S line	Decrease	Plus	Range-correction board.
Firing west of N–S line	Increase	Minus	
Height of site (mobile batteries):			
Gun above target	Increase	Minus	Range-correction board.
Gun below target	Decrease	Plus	
Height of tide (fixed batteries):			
Tide above mean low water	Decrease	Plus	Range-correction board.
Tide below mean low water	Increase	Minus	

Q. What matériel corrections are made for variations in range? *A.*

Correction for—	Effect on range	Nature of correction to range	Usual method of correction
Muzzle velocity:			
Above standard	Increase	Minus	Range-correction board.
Below standard	Decrease	Plus	
Weight of projectile, effect on range:			
Above standard	Decrease for short range	Plus	Range-correction board.
	Increase for long range	Minus	
	Increase for short range	Minus	
	Decrease for long range	Plus	

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What corrections are made for variations in range due to nonstandard weather conditions? *A.*

Correction for—	Effect on range	Nature of correction to range	Usual method of correction
Wind:			Determined on wind-component indicator and applied on range-correction board.
Head wind	Decrease	Plus	
Tail wind	Increase	Minus	
Density of atmosphere:			
Above standard	Decrease	Plus	Range-correction board.
Below standard	Increase	Minus	
Temperature of air:			
Above standard	Increase [1]	Minus	Range-correction board.
Below standard	Decrease [1]	Plus	
Temperature of powder:			Converted to correction for muzzle velocity by range officer and applied through range-correction board.
Above standard	Increase	Minus	
Below standard	Decrease	Plus	

[1] For some guns this changes at the longer ranges.

NOTE.—Examination should be made of the firing table for the gun to which the battery is assigned to determine whether "elasticity" curves on the range-correction board cross.

16. Correction for variations in direction.—*Q.* What direction corrections are made? *A.*

Correction for—	Effect on direction	Nature of correction to direction	Usual method of correction
Cross wind:			
Wind from right	Left	Right	Deflection board.
Wind from left	Right	Left	
Drift	Right [1]	Left [1]	Deflection board.

[1] The 37-mm subcaliber gun is an exception to this rule.

Q. Should the actual range as read from the plotting board, or the corrected range corresponding to the elevation for firing, be used on the deflection board in working out the direction correction? *A.* The corrected range should be used in finding the direction corrections. This is usually furnished to the deflection-board operator in the form of the range drum or elevation scale setting taken from the percentage corrector.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

17. Meteorological message.—*Q.* What is a meteorological message? *A.* A statement in code form, containing groups of figures, of data as to atmospheric conditions sent out from the meteorological station. Column (1) below is a sample meteorological message and column (2) gives the translation of the message.

(1)	(2)				
	Meteorological message from station FS for low-angle fire. Altitude of m. d. p., 500 feet. Temperature at m. d. p. 70° F.				
MFS MFS 30570	Altitude zone	Upper limit of altitude zone in feet	Direction of ballistic wind in mils from north	Speed of ballistic wind in mph	Density in percent of normal
0411298	0	0	4, 100	12	98
1401298	1	600	4, 000	12	98
2461498	2	1, 500	4, 600	14	98
3471498	3	3, 000	4, 700	14	98
4501699	4	4, 500	5, 000	16	99
5531799	5	6, 000	5, 300	17	99
6561699	6	9, 000	5, 600	16	99

Q. Is this message intended for use by mortars? *A.* No. The figure 3 in the first group means that the message is for low-angle fire, that is, fire below about 45° elevation. A message for high-angle fire, such as mortar fire, and for AA artillery would have "2" as its first figure.

Q. What is the meaning of MFS in the message given? *A.* Meteorological message from station FS.

Q. Explain the first group of five digits. *A.* The first digit is 3 and means that this message is suitable for use by artillery having low-angle fire, that is, firing at angles less than about 45°. The next two digits are 05, and means that the meteorological station FS is 500 feet above mean low water. The elevation of the station, in this case 500 feet, is called the mean datum plane (m. d. p.) of the station. The last two digits are 70 and mean that the temperature at the station FS, or at the m. d. p., is 70° Fahrenheit.

Q. What do the groups of seven digits mean? *A.* The ballistic winds and densities for the maximum ordinates corresponding to the altitude of the zones indicated by the first digit of the group.

Q. Explain the group whose first digit is number 2. *A.* The digit 2 indicates that the data in this group are for altitude zone 2, which extends to an altitude of 1,500 feet above the mean datum plane. The digits 46 mean that the ballistic wind is blowing from the direction

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

4,600 mils from north. The digits 14 means that the ballistic wind is blowing at 14 miles an hour. The digits 98 mean that the ballistic density is 98 percent of normal.

Q. What is meant by ballistic wind and density? *A.* The actual wind speed and direction are measured for the several layers of atmosphere included in the zone represented by the first digit of the seven-digit group, and an average constant wind is computed from the different zone data. These fictitious values would have the same effect as the different actual values of wind on a projectile traveling through the zone. Ballistic density is a fictitious density having the same effect as the several actual densities and is obtained from a set of tables.

Q. What parts of this message are used in the plotting room? *A.* The group of five digits, and the group of seven digits the altitude for which is nearest to but not less than the maximum ordinate. For example, if the maximum ordinate for the range at which the battery is firing is 4,600 feet, the seven-digit group of the meteorological message beginning with 5 will be used; if the maximum ordinate is 5,900 feet the same group will be used; if the maximum ordinate is 6,100 feet, the group beginning with 6 will be used.

Q. How is the maximum ordinate determined? *A.* It is given in table A of the firing table opposite each range. If no firing table is available, the value of the maximum ordinate may be taken roughly as four times the flight of the projectile squared ($4t^2$).

Q. If the battery position is more than 100 feet higher or lower than the meteorological station, what correction should be made to this data? *A.* No correction of wind data is made. The temperature and density should be corrected to the altitude of the battery using the formulas in the firing tables. These formulas are:

$\frac{1}{5}°$ F.=decrease in temperature for each 100 feet increase in altitude.

$\frac{1}{5}°$ F.=increase in temperature for each 100 feet decrease in altitude.

0.3 percent=decrease in air density for each 100 feet increase in altitude.

0.3 percent=increase in air density for each 100 feet decrease in altitude.

In using these formulas, the difference in altitude between the battery and the meteorological station is taken to the nearest 100 feet.

Q. The first line of the meteorological message is 30365; the battery is 140 feet above sea level. What temperature of the air should be used? *A.* The increase in temperature of the air given by the for-

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

mula is $\frac{1}{5}° \times (3-1) = \frac{2}{5}°$. Since this is less than $\frac{1}{2}°$ it is disregarded.

Q. The following is part of a meteorological message:

30671	2371302
0341202	3381501
1361302	4381501

The battery is 360 feet above sea level. The maximum ordinate is 2,560 feet. What density should be used? *A.* Meteorological data for the third zone should be used. The formula 0.3 percent × (6–4) = 0.6 percent increase in density. Since this is more than one-half of 1 percent, increase the density by 1 percent. The density to be used is then 101+1=102.

SECTION II

USE OF FIRING TABLES, CHARTS, AND SCALES

Paragraph
Special charts and scales 18

NOTE.—This topic will include the material contained in paragraphs 13 to 17, inclusive, in addition to the material contained in this section.

18. Special charts and scales.—*Q.* What is an operations map? *A.* Normally a Coast and Geodetic Survey chart properly mounted and showing the unit positions and stations, sectors of fire, water areas, and other pertinent data. It is usually combined with the intelligence map.

Q. What is the intelligence map? *A.* A map upon which all available information of the enemy is graphically recorded.

Q. What other map may be used in a command post? *A.* A chart for plotting, showing areas and zones covered by the fire of the armament.

Q. What should be shown on this chart? *A.*

(1) The seaward limit of gun fire.

(2) The water areas and a system of coordinates.

(3) Azimuth circles around the principal observation posts to facilitate location of targets by range and azimuth.

(4) Area of inshore patrols.

(5) Positions of supporting troops.

(6) Areas of enemy activity, with courses if known.

Q. What equipment is used with this chart? *A.* Tracing cloth, a scale of yards and miles arranged to pivot around centers located at the principal observation posts, a protractor, and a series of time-travel scales for ships at various speeds.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What officer of the staff has supervision of the operations map or battle chart? *A.* The operations officer (S–3).

Q. What is a dead area chart? *A.* One showing areas that cannot be reached by fire due to covering masks. It may be incorporated in the battle chart.

Q. When would it be necessary to show the minimum range of a gun on a chart? *A.* When a gun is emplaced so there is a mask in front of it that would prohibit firing against targets which could otherwise be engaged.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 6

POINTING

	Paragraph
Pointing methods	19
Boresighting, orienting, and clinometering	20
Data transmission	21
Adjustment of sights and quadrants	22

19. Pointing methods.—*Q.* What is meant by pointing? *A.* The operation of giving a gun a designated elevation and direction.

Q. What two general methods are used to point in elevation? *A.* The method which uses "quadrant elevation" and the method which uses "angle of elevation."

Q. How are fixed guns pointed by quadrant elevation? *A.* By the use of a quadrant which sets off the elevation of the gun from horizontal, or by the use of a dial or a range drum or disk.

Q. How is a gun pointed by angle of elevation? *A.* By waterlining the target with a sight and elevating the gun above the line of sight an amount sufficient to correct for the curvature of the trajectory.

Q. What fixed seacoast gun sometimes uses angle of elevation? *A.* The 3-inch rapid-fire gun.

Q. What two general methods are used to point a gun in direction? *A.* The direct method and the indirect method.

Q. How is a gun pointed in direction by the direct method? *A.* The sight is pointed directly at the target and the axis of the bore is caused to diverge from the line of sight by an angular amount called the "deflection."

Q. How is a gun pointed in direction by the indirect method? *A.* The axis of the bore is pointed in azimuth.

Q. How are fixed seacoast guns pointed in azimuth? *A.* By an azimuth circle or dial.

Q. According to the combinations of pointing methods used, how many cases of pointing are there for seacoast artillery? *A.* Three.

Q. Name the three cases of pointing. *A.* Case I, case II, and case III.

Q. What is case I pointing? *A.* Pointing by setting a deflection and an angle of elevation.

Q. What is case II pointing? *A.* Pointing by setting a deflection and a quadrant elevation.

Q. What is case III pointing? *A.* Pointing by setting an azimuth and a quadrant elevation.

Q. What is the rule for pointing in direction to which all seacoast artillery pointing equipment conforms? *A.* Right, raise; left, lower.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What does the rule "right, raise; left, lower" mean? *A.* If the deflection (or azimuth) is increased, the gun will be pointed farther to the right; if the deflection (or azimuth) is decreased, the gun will be pointed farther to the left.

20. Boresighting, orienting, and clinometering.—*Q.* What adjustment of the sight is necessary for case II pointing? *A.* Boresighting.

Q. What is boresighting? *A.* Adjusting the gun sight so that, when the normal reference number or zero deflection is set, the line of sight and the axis of the bore either will be parallel or will converge beyond a certain minimum range.

Q. Is the sight normally boresighted for convergence or for parallelism? *A.* When a point is available which is not too close, the sight is normally boresighted for convergence.

Q. What determines the minimum range of a point suitable for boresighting? *A.* The point must not be so close as to give a convergence angle greater than 0.03°. A point at greater range should be used when available.

Q. What is the minimum range of a point that would be suitable for boresighting your battery? *A.* ——— yards.

Q. When it is necessary to adjust a gun sight for parallelism, what piece of equipment is used? *A.* A testing target.

Q. What is a testing target? *A.* A testing target is a chart on which are two marks separated by the same horizontal distance as that which separates the sight from the axis of the bore.

Q. How is a testing target used to boresight? *A.* Place the testing target any convenient distance away from the gun, so that it is level and perpendicular to the axis of the bore. Point the gun at one mark and the sight at the other so that the line of sight and axis of the bore are parallel.

Q. What adjustment in direction is necessary for case III pointing? *A.* Orientation.

Q. When is a gun said to be oriented for case III pointing? *A.* When the azimuth circle or dial reads the azimuth of the axis of the bore.

Q. How may the axis of the bore be pointed at a known azimuth? *A.* By pointing the bore at a datum point or an oriented instrument.

Q. Explain how to point the axis of the bore at an object. *A.* Place a boresight in the breech and threads in the horizontal and vertical diameters of the muzzle. Sight through the center hole of the boresight and traverse and elevate the gun until the cross threads are on the object. On guns that use separate loading ammunition, the primer vent may be used in place of a boresight.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. Explain how to determine the azimuth of the axis of the bore by a transit. *A.* Set up a transit over a point from which the azimuth to a visible datum point is known and which is visible from the gun. Orient the transit to read correct azimuths. Using the upper motion of the transit, point it at the gun; point the gun at the transit; adjust these pointings until the line of sight and the axis of the bore coincide. Read the azimuth shown by the transit, change minutes to hundredths of degrees, and subtract (or add) 180°. This gives the azimuth of the axis of the bore.

Q. What adjustment of elevation pointing equipment must be made? *A.* Clinometering.

Q. What is clinometering? *A.* Checking the quadrant, range drum, or elevation dial with a clinometer or a quadrant of known accuracy.

Q. What is a firing table? *A.* A collection of ballistic information for a particular model of gun with specified ammunition.

Q. What is an elevation table? *A.* A table showing for a particular fixed battery, the range-elevation relation corrected for the height of site.

Q. Which are used to check range drums or disks, firing tables or elevation tables? *A.* Elevation tables.

21. Data transmission.—*a. General.*—*Q.* How may firing data be transmitted to a gun? *A.* By voice, telephone, mechanical transmitter, or electrical data transmission system.

Q. What system or systems are used to transmit data to the guns in your battery? *A.* ———.

b. Data transmission system M5.—*Q.* What angular unit is used to transmit azimuth in the M5 system? *A.* Degrees and hundredths.

Q. What angular unit is used to transmit quadrant elevation? *A.* Mils.

Q. Is alternating or direct current used to energize the system? *A.* Alternating current.

Q. How many dials are needed to transmit firing data to one gun? *A.* Four dials: A coarse dial and a fine dial for the azimuth and a similar set for the elevation.

Q. Show how to synchronize the mechanical azimuth (elevation) pointers. *A.* (Practical demonstration.)

Q. Show how to synchronize the electrical azimuth (elevation) pointers. *A.* (Practical demonstration.)

22. Adjustment of sights and quadrants.—*a. Sights.*—*Q.* Of what does a telescopic sight consist? *A.* Generally it consists of a telescope and a mount on the gun.

Q. What model of telescope is used on your guns? *A.* ———.

Q. What model of telescope mount is used on your guns? *A.* ———.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. How is the sight placed in position for use? *A.* Wipe the bearing surfaces between the sight and cradle clear of all grit or other foreign matter; place the sight (having the same serial number as the bracket)

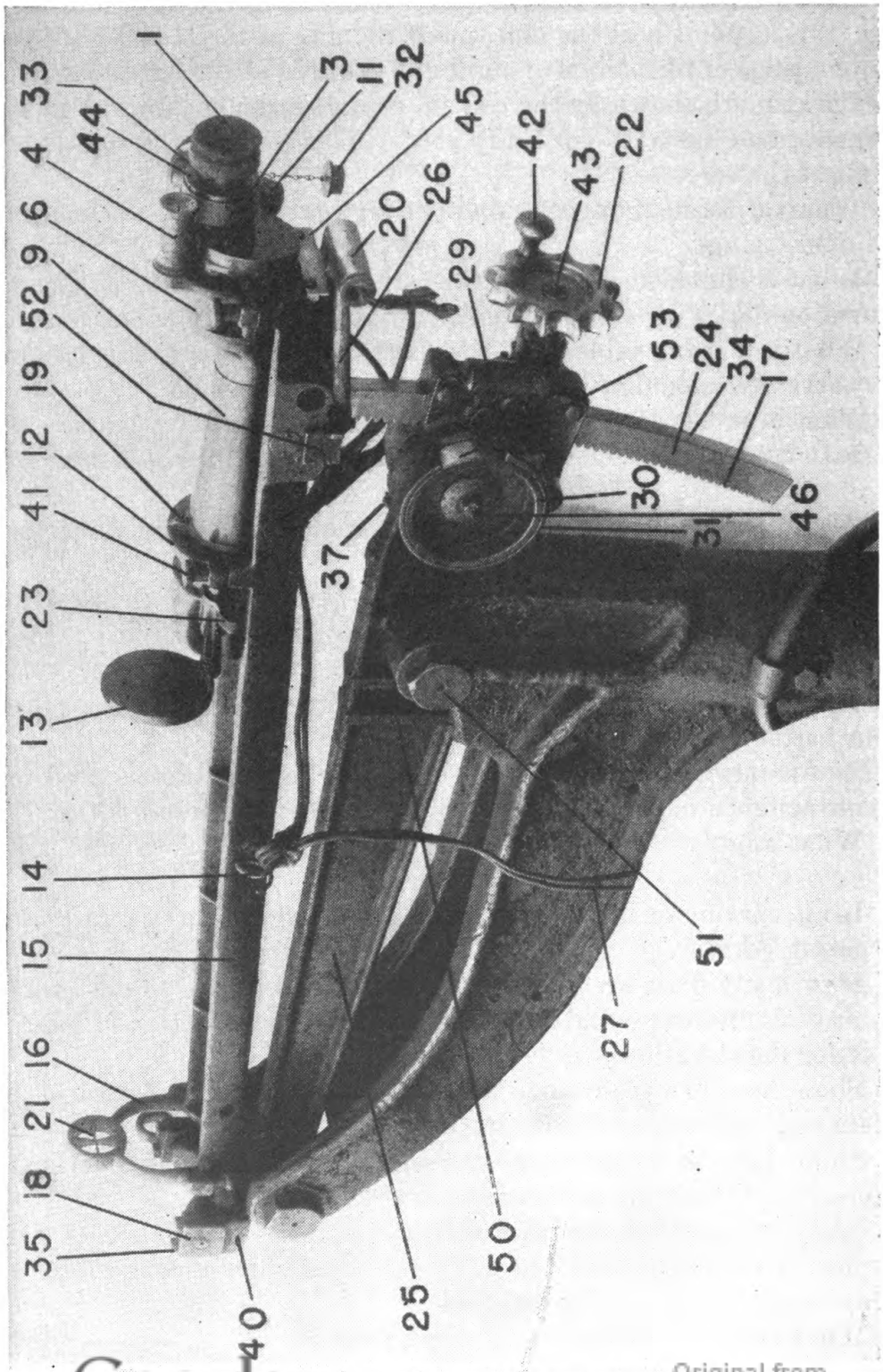


FIGURE 15.—Telescope M1904 on mount M1904.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

1. Telescope eyepiece.
3. Focusing ring.
4. Peep sight.
6. Prism holder (Porro erecting prisms).
9. Telescope tube.
11. Telescope lamp bracket.
12. Cell and telescope clamp.
13. Objective shutter.
14. Twisted hooks.
15. Telescope cradle.
16. Cross sight holder.
17. Elevation rack.
18. Yoke cap.
19. Locating lug.
20. Deflection scale lamp bracket.
21. Cross sight.
22. Elevating handwheel.
23. Shutter lever.
24. Sight shank.
25. Sight arm.
26. Deflection pointer bracket.
27. Plug connection cables.
29. Lamp bracket for range drum and elevation scale.
30. Range drum.
31. Gear case cover and range drum covers.
32. Lamp cap.
33. Telescope lamp holder.
34. Sight shank elevation scale (when used).
35. Yoke cap screw.
37. Oil hole clip cover.
40. Yoke.
41. Telescope clamp set screw.
42. Elevating handle.
43. Elevating worm shaft.
44. Focusing sleeve nut.
45. Deflection scale.
46. Elevating gear shaft.
50. Elevation guide.
51. Sight arm bracket pin.
52. Deflection worm box and head of sight shank.
53. Range scale.

carefully in the cradle and secure it with the two clamps, making sure that the lug on the forward clamp fits accurately into its recess on the telescope body. Set the clamping screws well home. Run the sight cradle up or down until it is properly adjusted for the range at which the sight is to be used.

Q. What is the least graduation of the deflection scale? *A.* Five one-hundredths of a degree.

Q. Describe the adjustments of the sight. *A.*

(1) Screw the eyepiece in or out until the cross wires are clearly outlined.

(2) Turn the focusing ring until the object viewed is also distinct and clear and until there is no apparent movement (parallax) between the cross wires and the object when the eye is shifted from side to side.

Q. Give instructions for the care and preservation of the telescopic sight. *A.* This is a delicate instrument and must not be handled roughly. When not in use, keep the instrument in its case in a dry place. If moisture collects on the glasses, place in a gentle warmth. Material issued for cleaning of lenses should be used on the glasses. Cleaning of the interior, or repair of the cross wires, should be done only by an ordnance mechanic or some other person competent to do so.

Q. How is dust cleaned off the cross wires? *A.* Blow on them lightly—nothing else.

Q. What is used to clean the lenses? *A.* Optical paper.

Q. How is the glare from sunlight on the water cut down? *A.* By use of the amber glass disk.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. Is a telescopic sight used for case II or case III pointing? *A.* Case II.

Q. What is the normal or zero deflection reading on your sights? *A.* ———.

Q. Set a deflection of ———. *A.* (Practical demonstration.)

Q. Boresight your gun for case II pointing. *A.* (Practical demonstration.)

b. Gunner's quadrant M1 (or M1919).—Q. What angular unit is used to set quadrant elevation on the gunner's quadrant M1? *A.* Mils.

Q. What is the least graduation on the elevation scales? *A.* Ten mils.

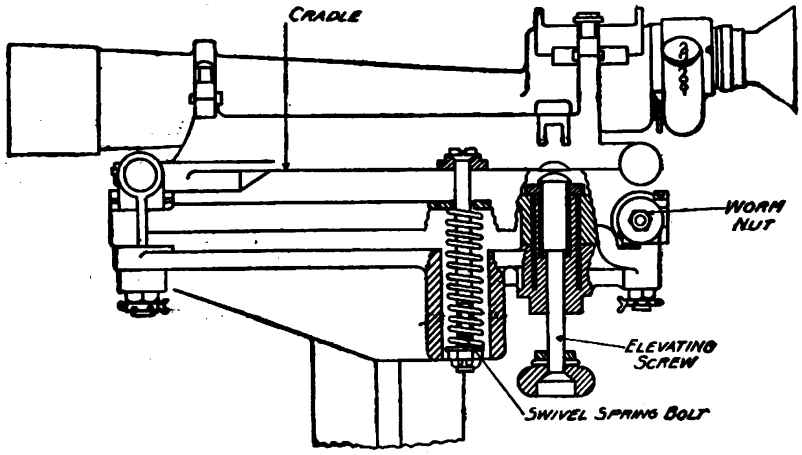


FIGURE 16.—Telescope M1912 on mount M1912.

Q. Where are units of mils set? *A.* On the micrometer.

Q. How is the quadrant applied to the gun? *A.* By placing it on the machined surfaces provided.

Q. Set a quadrant elevation of 283 mils on the quadrant. *A.* (Practical demonstration.)

Q. Set a quadrant elevation of 947 mils on the quadrant. *A.* (Practical demonstration.)

Q. What is the standard method of verifying the accuracy of the quadrant? *A.* By comparing it with a clinometer or with a quadrant of verified accuracy.

Q. When neither a clinometer nor a verified quadrant are available, how may the bubble be checked for use on the 0–800-mil scale? *A.* By applying the quadrant to the gun with a setting of zero and centering the bubble by bringing the gun to horizontal. Now reverse the quadrant on the machined surfaces. The bubble should remain centered.

Q. How may the bubble be checked for use on the 800–1,600-mil

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

scale? *A.* First check the bubble for use on the 0–800-mil scale, then, using the 0–800-mil scale, point the gun at an elevation of 800 mils. Then, without changing the gun or quadrant arm, reverse the quadrant so the quadrant elevation is indicated on the 800–1,600-mil scale. The bubble should remain centered.

c. Elevation quadrant M1908.—*Q.* What angular unit is used to set quadrant elevation on the elevation quadrant M1908? *A.* Degrees and minutes.

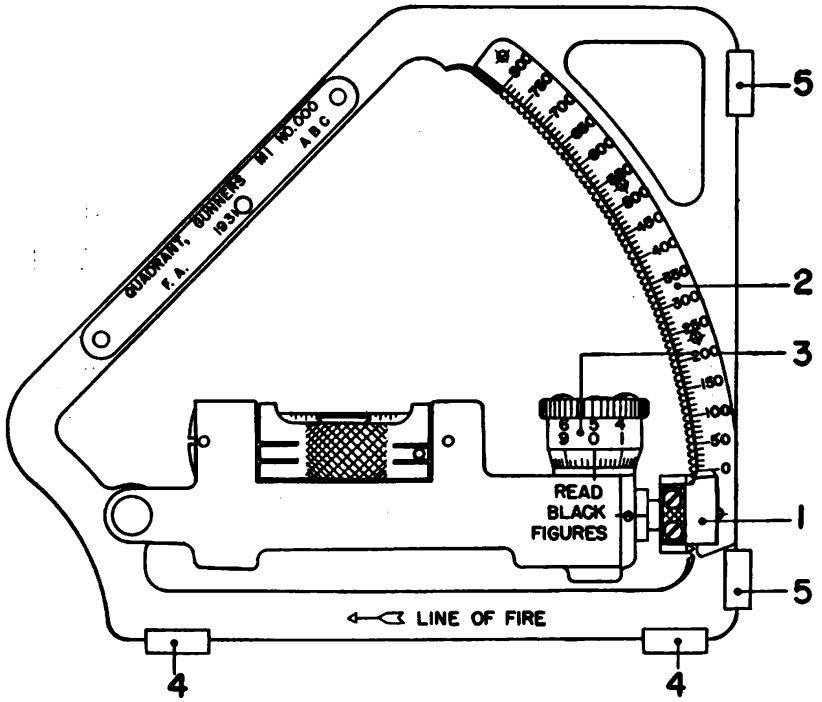


FIGURE 17.—Gunner's quadrant M1.

Q. What is the least graduation on the elevating arc? *A.* One degree.

Q. Where are minutes set? *A.* On the micrometer.

Q. Set the gun at a quadrant elevation of ——— degrees ——— minutes. *A.* (Practical demonstration.)

Q. How is the quadrant verified for accuracy? *A.* By the use of a clinometer and bore rest. The clinometer bore rest is placed in the muzzle and the clinometer is mounted on the rest. The piece is usually laid at a low angle of elevation, then a medium angle, and finally a high angle, using the clinometer for laying, and checking the readings on the quadrant. If an error is found that cannot be corrected, it is recorded and applied as a correction to elevation settings. It may also be checked by a verified gunner's quadrant placed on the quadrant seat.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 7

POSITION-FINDING SYSTEM

	Paragraph
General	23
Tracking	24
Prediction	25
Calculation of firing data	26

23. General.—*Q.* What are the four main steps in the operation of determining firing data for moving targets? *A.*

(1) Tracking the target.

(2) Location of the set-forward point.

(3) Relocation.

(4) Calculation of firing data.

Q. Of what does each step consist? *A.*

(1) Tracking consists of observing and plotting successive positions of the target.

(2) Location of the set-forward point consists of predicting the position at which the target will be when the projectile lands.

(3) Relocation consists of determining the range and direction of the future position of the target from the directing point.

(4) Calculation of firing data consists of converting the relocated data into corrected firing data for use in pointing the guns.

24. Tracking.—*Q.* What are the three standard methods of tracking the target? *A.*

(1) Horizontal base.

(2) Vertical base.

(3) Self-contained base.

Q. How is a target tracked by horizontal base? *A.* Two observation stations are selected and the azimuth and distance from one to the other determined by surveying. The line connecting the two stations is called the base line. The direction and distance of the directing point of the battery from one or both of the stations is also determined. These three points are then located, to a small scale, on a plotting board in the same relation to each other as on the ground. An observer with an azimuth instrument is located in each observation station. Each observer determines the azimuth of the target from his station at the end of equal time intervals and telephones it to the plotting room. Arms on the plotting board, which are pivoted at each of the positions representing the stations, are set to the azimuths received from the observers, and the intersection of the arms represents the position of the target. (See fig. 18.) Such a position is marked on the board. It is called a "plotted

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

point." Several plotted points will mark out the track or path of the target.

Q. State the principles governing the establishment of a base line.
A.

(1) It should be from one-fourth to one-third as long as the maximum range to be measured by the base line.

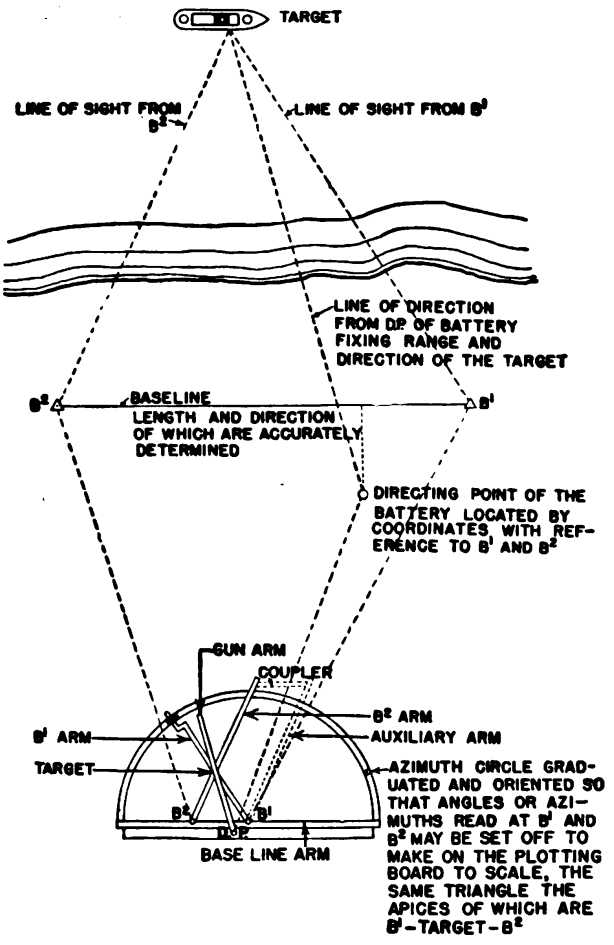


FIGURE 18.—Principles of horizontal base position finding.

(2) It should be nearly at right angles to a line drawn from the battery through the center of the field of fire to be covered by the base line.

(3) The base-end stations should be located so that the observer will have an unobstructed view to seaward and high enough to allow observation beyond the maximum range to be measured by the base line.

(4) The length and direction of the base line and the position of the directing point should be accurately determined.

Q. How is the target tracked by vertical base? *A.* Only one ob-

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

servation station is used. The observer is furnished with a depression position finder with which he can determine the azimuth and range to the target. He telephones these data to the plotting room where the station arm is set in azimuth. The plotted point is then located at the proper range by means of a range scale on the edge of the arm.

Q. Explain briefly the range-finding principles of the depression position finder (D. P. F.). *A*. The D. P. F. solves a vertical right triangle of which one of the legs is the height of the instrument above the target (water level), the other leg is the horizontal distance, or range, to the target, and the hypotenuse is the line of sight. A right triangle may be solved if one leg and one acute angle are known. In this triangle the leg representing the height of instrument is known, and the instrument is used to measure one of the angles. The angle measured is the one at the instrument

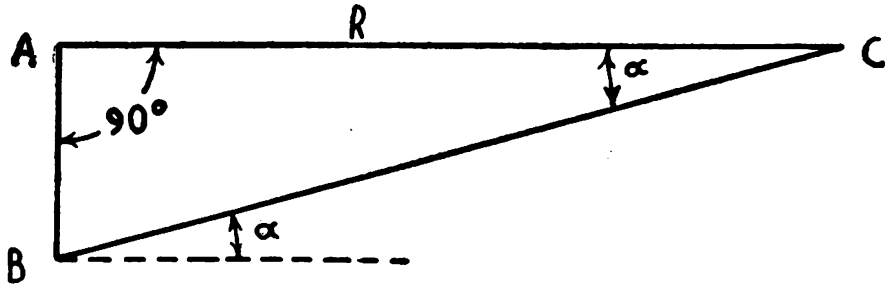


FIGURE 19.—Geometric principles of self-contained range finder.

between the horizontal and the line from the instrument to the water line of the target. It is called the "depression angle." In measuring the depression angle the instrument automatically indicates on a range scale the range to the target.

Q. How does the height of the instrument affect the accuracy of range finding? *A*. The greater the height, the greater the accuracy of the ranges read. For a given height, the greater the range, the less the accuracy of the ranges read.

Q. How is the target tracked by self-contained base? *A*. Only one observation station is used, as in the vertical base system. The observer is furnished with a self-contained base range finder with which he can measure the range and, with some types, the azimuth to the target. With the older instruments it is necessary to measure azimuths with a separate instrument. The data are telephoned to the plotting room and the plotted points are located as in the vertical base system.

Q. Explain briefly the range-finding principles of the self-contained horizontal base instrument. *A*. The modern horizontal base

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

self-contained range finder is designed to determine the range to a target by the same geometric principles as those used in the depression position finder. The triangle solved is shown in figure 19. AB is the base line (contained in the instrument), C is the target, and AC is the range R. In the instrument the base line AB and the angle at A are maintained constant. The measured angle α is indicated on a scale which is graduated to read directly in range. There are two types of self-contained instrument, the "coincidence" type and the "stereoscopic" type, named from the method used to measure the angle involved. In one the angle is measured by obtaining coincidence be-

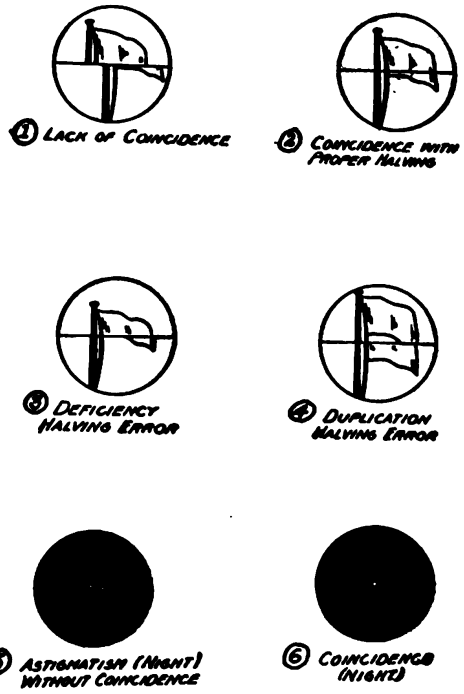


FIGURE 20.—Appearance of target in coincidence range finding.

tween duplicate images of the target; in the other it is measured by obtaining stereoscopic contact, that is, placing the observed image of the target at the same apparent depth as the markings that are visible on the reticule of the instrument.

25. Prediction.—*Q.* What is a predicted point? *A.* The point at which it is expected that the target will arrive at the end of the dead time.

Q. What is a set-forward point? *A.* A point on the expected course of the target at which it is expected the target will arrive at the end of the predicting interval plus the time of flight. It is the point for which firing data are calculated.

Q. What three things must be known before the set-forward point can be located? *A.*

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(1) The expected path of the target.

(2) The length of time from the instant the target was at the last plotted point to the instant of impact.

(3) The rate of travel.

Q. Where is this information obtained? *A.*

(1) The expected path of the target is obtained by extending the plotted path ahead.

(2) The elapsed time consists of the dead time plus the time of flight. The dead time is selected before tracking commences. It is the length of time from the instant the target was at the last plotted point to the instant the gun is fired, and is usually the same as the observing interval. The time of flight is usually obtained from the time of flight corresponding to the range to the last set-forward point.

(3) The rate of travel is obtained by measuring the rate between the last two or three plotted points.

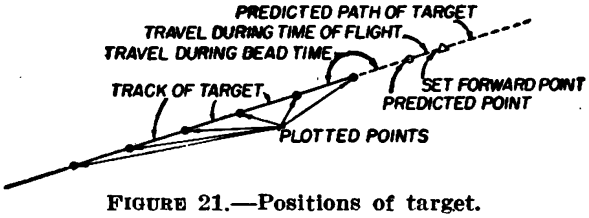


FIGURE 21.—Positions of target.

Q. How is this information used to find the set-forward point? *A.* The elapsed time is multiplied by the rate of travel, giving the distance ahead of the last plotted point that the target will be when the projectile lands. This distance is measured off on the expected path of the target, and the set-forward point is marked on the plotting board. There are several methods and instruments used to make this prediction.

26. Calculation of firing data.—*Q.* What are the firing data? *A.* The corrected range (or elevation) and the corrected azimuth (or deflection).

Q. How is the corrected range (or elevation) calculated? *A.* The range to the set-forward point is read from the plotting board to the operators of the range-correction board and the percentage corrector. The operator of the range-correction board makes the range corrections according to the data given him by the range officer and calls off the correction to the percentage-corrector operator. The percentage-corrector operator applies it to the uncorrected range and telephones the corrected range to the guns, or, if necessary, changes the range into an elevation and telephones it to the guns.

Q. How is the corrected azimuth (or deflection) calculated? *A.* The azimuth to the set-forward point is read from the plotting board

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

to the deflection-board operator who makes the lateral corrections according to the data given him by the range officer, applies the corrections to the uncorrected azimuth, and telephones the corrected azimuth to the guns. If deflections are being used, the travel of the target is read to the deflection-board operator who computes the corrected deflection and telephones it to the guns.

Q. On what does the accuracy of the firing data depend, so far as personnel is concerned? *A.* On the accuracy and skill of each indi-

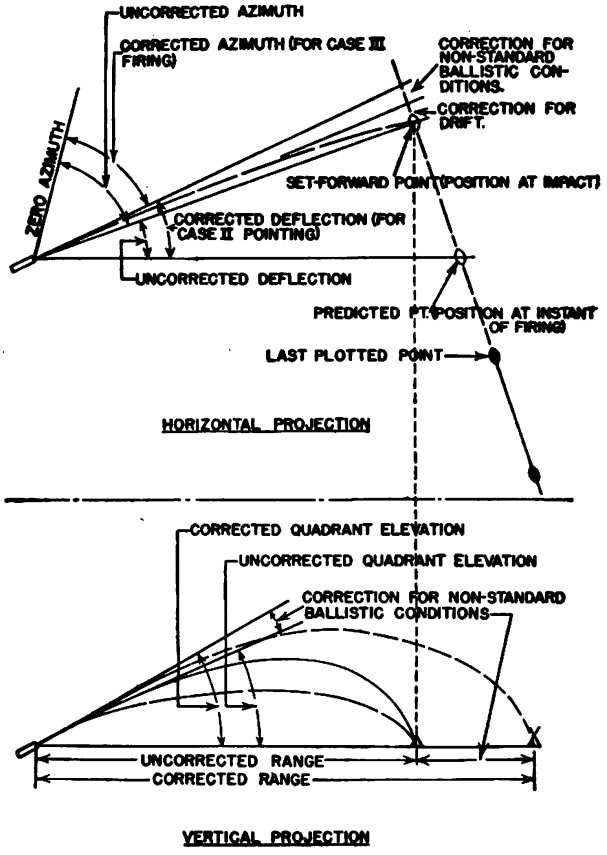


FIGURE 22.—Elements of corrected firing data.

vidual operator in adjusting and operating his board and transmitting the data. One inaccurate operation or one mistake in transmission of data by any member of the team may mean the difference between a hit and a miss.

Q. What is the system of position finding ordinarily used in your battery? *A.* ———.

Q. Is there an auxiliary or emergency system in your battery? If so, describe it. *A.* ———.

Q. Will an emergency system be successful without drill? *A.* No. It is as necessary to drill with an emergency system as it is with the standard system if successful operation is expected.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. Trace the range (or elevation) and the azimuth (or deflection) data from the plotting board to the gun, stating the operation performed at each step. *A*. (Description of local method.)

In addition to the foregoing, the candidate should be questioned as to his knowledge of the entire position-finding system in use in the battery, to include the method of spotting. He should also familiarize himself with such emergency systems as are provided for use by his particular battery.

The organization and general duties of the members of the range section of a gun battery are to be found in TM 4–305.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 8

POSITION-FINDING APPARATUS

Paragraphs
SECTION I. Plotting-room apparatus 27–45
II. Observation instruments, including range finders .. 46–53

SECTION I

PLOTTING-ROOM APPARATUS

Paragraph
Plotting boards, general 27
Plotting and relocating board M1923 (Cloke) 28
Plotting and relocating board M1 29
110° plotting board M1915, M1918, and M3 30
Whistler-Hearn plotting board M1904 (for guns) 31
Whistler-Hearn plotting board (for mortars) 32
Prediction scale 33
Set-forward rules 34
Set-forward chart 35
Set-forward scales 36
Range-correction board M1 37
Deflection board M1 38
Gun deflection board M1905 39
Mortar deflection board M1906 40
Universal deflection board 41
Angular-travel computer 42
Azimuth adjustment slide rule 43
Percentage corrector 44
Wind-component indicator 45

NOTE.—This section contains information on the equipment usually found in the plotting room. The candidate should be required to demonstrate his proficiency in the operation of all of the various boards, instruments, and computing devices used in the plotting room of his battery.

27. Plotting boards, general.—*Q.* What is meant by orienting a plotting board? *A.* Setting up the board so that the parts representing the directing point (or guns) of the battery and the base-end stations will have the same relative positions on the board as they have on the ground, and adjusting the azimuth circle so that it indicates the azimuths of those points from each other, and of points in the field of fire.

Q. What are check points? *A.* Selected points within the field of fire, or points for which data have been computed, used to check the orientation of the plotting board.

Q. How are check points used? *A.* The ranges and azimuths to the check points from each observation station and from the directing point are computed from the coordinates. The station arms are

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

then set at the azimuths computed and the points are plotted on the board. If the orientation of the board is correct, the measured ranges from the various stations to the check points should agree with the computed ranges, and the measured azimuths from the directing point to the check points should agree with the computed azimuths.

28. Plotting and relocating board M1923 (Cloke).—*Q.* What is the main difference between this type of board and all other types? *A.* On all other types of boards the points representing observation stations and directing point are held fixed, and the point representing the target (the intersection of the arms) moves about the board. In other words, the plotted points are target positions. On the plotting and relocating type of board, the point representing the target (the intersection of the arms) is fixed, and the observation stations and directing point move about the board. In this case the plotted points are successive positions of the directing point. Since, to an observer stationed at the target, the apparent movement of the directing point about the target is the same as the actual movement of the target about the directing point, those plotted points may be assumed to represent the course of the target.

Q. As a result of this difference in operation, there are two general rules that must be followed in interpreting the data obtained from the board. What are they? *A.*

(1) In visualizing the relative positions of the various elements and the target as they appear in the field of fire, and in orienting the board, you must place yourself at the outer rim of the board and look toward the center. The azimuths of all lines considered, as indicated on the azimuth circle, will be from the outside toward the center.

(2) In visualizing the relative movement of the target about the directing point, and in measuring the azimuth of the course, you must place yourself at the center of the board and look outward.

Q. What difference does this make in the procedure for orientation? *A.* During orientation you must set azimuths from points on the plotting surface toward the center. For instance, if the B^2 station is being represented at the center of the board during orientation, the relocating arm must be set at the azimuth from B^1 to B^2 to locate the position of B^1, and at the azimuth from DP to B^2 to locate the position of DP. Furthermore, the platen once oriented must be maintained, during plotting, parallel to its position at orientation. Therefore, the orientation is not complete until the base-line stop has been adjusted against the platen to provide a means of keeping it oriented.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What difference is there in the plotting? *A.* There is no difference in the principles of plotting. The plotter treats the plotted points as successive target positions whose movement about the center of the board duplicates the movement of the target about the directing point in the field of fire.

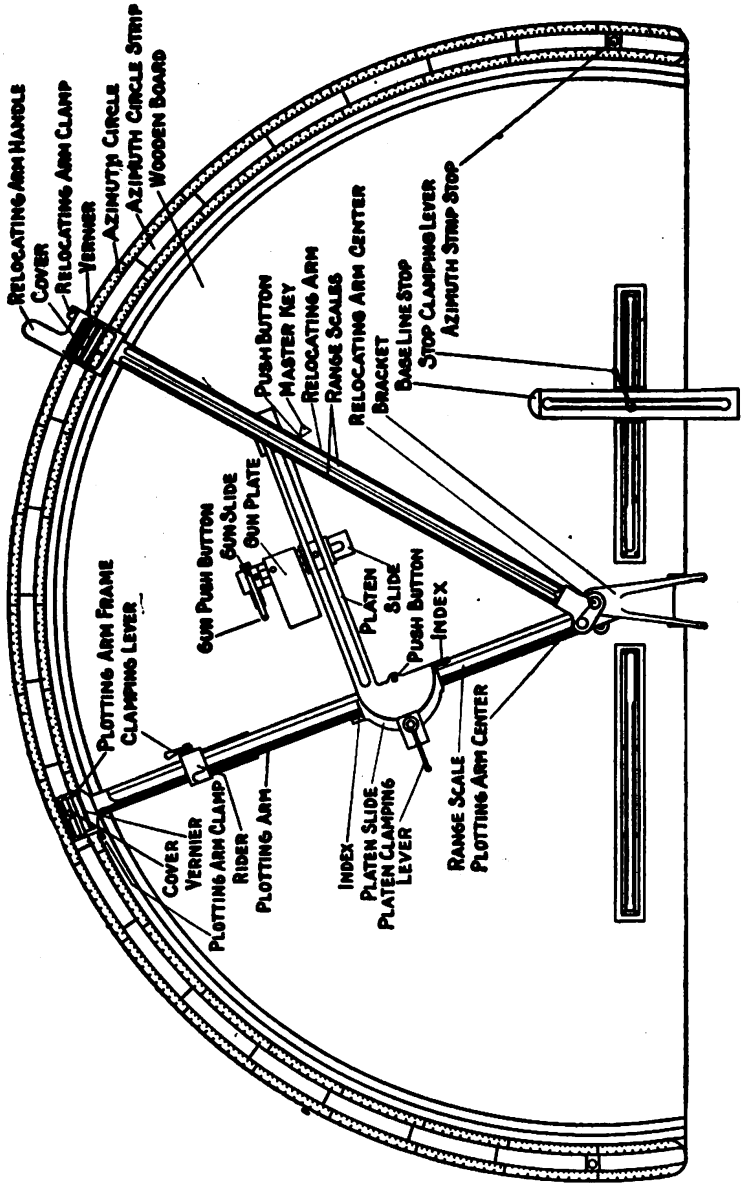


FIGURE 23.—Plotting and relocating board M1923 (Cloke).

Q. What is the "reading edge" of an arm? *A.* The edge that, if extended, would pass through the center of the board; that is, the point at which the arms are pivoted.

Q. What precaution is necessary in placing the arms on their pivot? *A.* Each arm has two holes so that either edge may be used as the reading edge. The arms must be so placed on the pivot that the proper edges will be in position as reading edges.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What is the rule for this? *A.* If the relocating arm is on the right of the plotting arm, the right edges of both arms should be used as the reading edges; if the relocating arm is on the left, the left edges of both arms should be used.

Q. What precaution is necessary in setting azimuths? *A.* Each arm has two azimuth verniers, so that either edge may be set in azimuth. The vernier belonging to the edge that is in position as the reading edge must be used in setting azimuths.

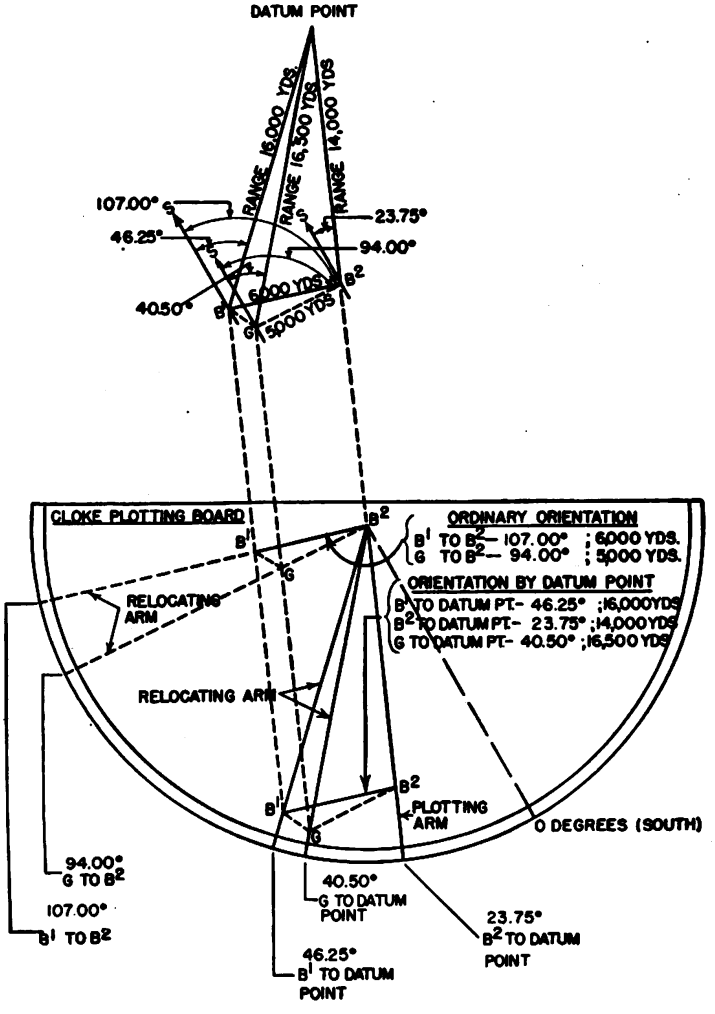


FIGURE 24.—Orientation of Cloke board, ordinary and datum point methods.

Q. How is the azimuth circle adjusted? *A.* Slide the azimuth circle strips around in the groove until the graduations covered by the board include the field of fire; that is, put the azimuth of the center of the field of fire near the center of the arc. This adjustment can be made for both degrees and mils by placing opposite the longer lines on the azimuth circle those azimuths in degrees that are divisible by nine. Then azimuths may be set in either degrees or mils.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What parts of the board represent the observation stations? *A.* The platen pivot and the master key.

Q. Must a particular part represent a particular observation station? *A.* No. Either observation station may be represented by either the platen pivot or the master key.

Q. What is the general rule? Why? *A.* The general rule is to put that station which is farthest from the directing point, usually B [1], at the platen pivot. This is to avoid mechanical interference on the board in setting up the position of the directing point.

Q. What part of the board represents the DP? *A.* The gun push button.

Q. What is the ordinary method of orientation? *A.* By means of the azimuth and the length of the base line, with the platen pivot (representing one of the stations) at the center of the board.

Q. How is the platen oriented by the ordinary method? *A.*

(1) Release the platen clamp and slide the platen along the plotting arm until the slide touches its stop at the inner end of the plotting arm. This position is called the orienting position. Keep the platen in this position throughout the process of orientation.

NOTE.—The azimuth at which the plotting arm is set is immaterial.

(2) Set the relocating arm at the azimuth of the base line and clamp it. According to the general rule, the azimuth set should be that from the station represented by the master key to the station represented by the platen pivot.

(3) Swinging the platen about its pivot and moving the master key along the platen, set the master key on the reading edge of the relocating arm and opposite the length of the base line. Clamp the platen and secure the master key to it in this position.

(4) Bring the base-line stop against the edge of the platen and clamp the base-line stop.

(5) Set the relocating arm at the azimuth from the DP to the station represented by the platen pivot and clamp it.

(6) Moving the gun push button along the platen, set it on the reading edge of the relocating arm and opposite the distance from the DP to the station. Secure the gun push button to the platen in this position.

Q. What may be done if it is impossible to set the relocating arm at the azimuths necessary for orientation? *A.*

(1) Orient the platen, using false azimuths that differ from the true azimuths by a constant amount.

(2) Note the azimuth reading of the plotting arm when orienting.

(3) With the platen clamped and the base-line stop out of the

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

way, move the plotting arm through an angle equal to the constant difference used and in the opposite direction.

(4) Bring the base-line stop against the platen in its new position and clamp the base-line stop.

Q. When using the vertical base or a self-contained base system, what part of the board represents the observation station, and what part represents the DP? *A.* The platen pivot represents the observation station and the gun push button represents the DP.

Q. How is the platen oriented for such a system? *A.* In the same way as for a two-station system, except that it is necessary to locate only the gun push button.

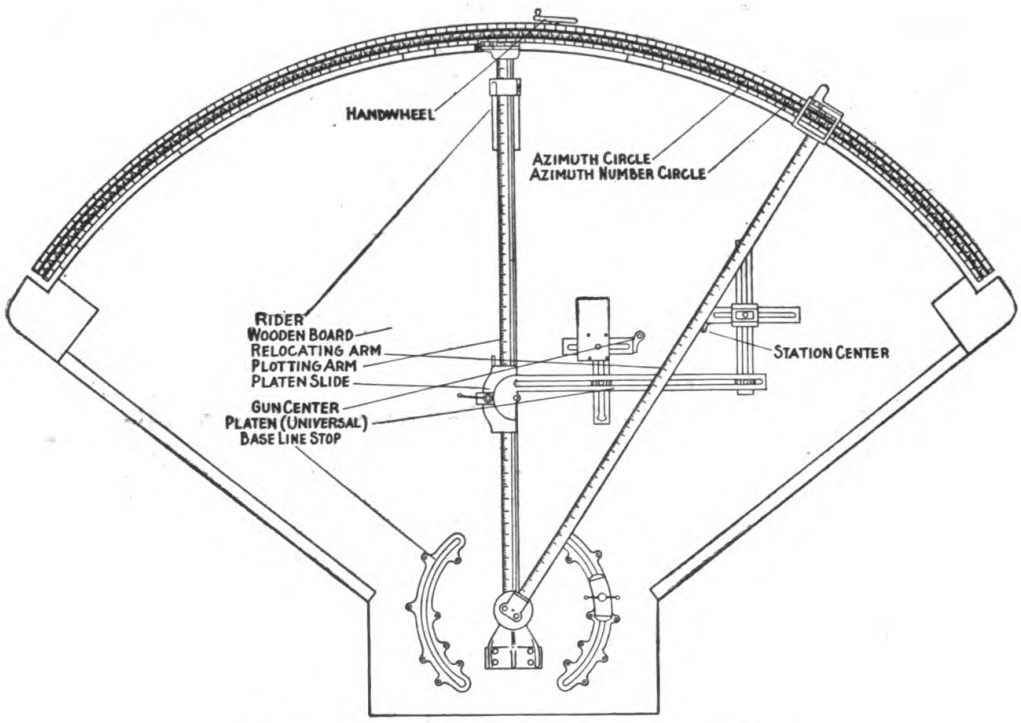


FIGURE 25.—Plotting and relocating board M1.

Q. What is "offset plotting"? *A.* A method of plotting used when different ranges and azimuths must be sent to each gun.

Q. What is used to represent the gun positions for offset plotting? *A.* A gun plate is put on the board in place of the gun push button.

Q. How is the gun position located on the gun plate? *A.*

(1) Slide the platen to the orienting position.

(2) Set the relocating arm to the azimuth from the gun to the station represented at the platen pivot.

(3) Mark the gun position on the gun plate under the reading edge of the arm and opposite the distance from the gun to the station.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. If, when orienting the board, the gun position falls on the platen arm, how can the platen be oriented? *A.* Remove the platen from the slide, turn it upside down and replace it, remount the gun push button and the master key, and reorient.

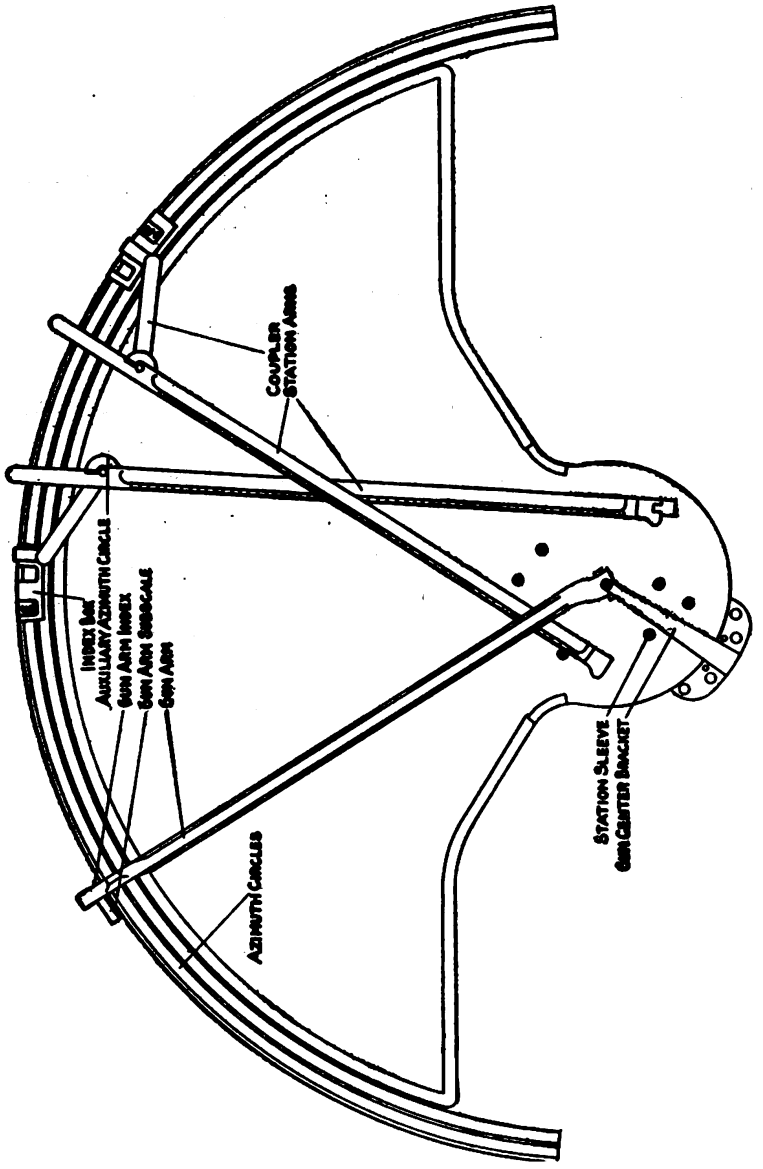


FIGURE 26.—110° plotting board M1915.

29. Plotting and relocating board M1.—*Q.* Describe briefly the M1 plotting and relocating board. *A.* This board is similar in operation to the Cloke board. The principal differences are in the construction of the azimuth scale and the base-line stop. The azimuth scale is in degrees only, and the readings are marked on an endless chain which can be adjusted by turning a handwheel to put any desired azimuth reading, from 0° to 360°, at the center of the

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

arc; the arc subtended by the azimuth circle is about 120°. The base-line stop has been redesigned to facilitate orientation.

30. 110° plotting board M1915, M1918, and M3.—*Q.* Describe briefly these three boards. *A.* These three boards are for use with all types of seacoast artillery cannon. They provide means for locating the target by either the two-station or the single-station method, for locating and relocating the set-forward point in range and azimuth, and for determining the rate of angular travel when case II pointing is being used. The 110° plotting board M1918 is practically identical with the M1915 board except that the former is slightly larger and covers longer ranges.

Q. Set the station arms for a given base line. Set them again for the same base line, but use station sleeves in another quadrant. In each case, show what azimuth circle is used. *A.* (Practical demonstration.)

Q. May a plotting board of this type be used for gun positions and observation stations other than those for which it was specially constructed? *A.* No.

Q. May the M3 board be used for different batteries? *A.* No. Any particular M3 board is designed to be used for one battery only and has an azimuth circle and a plotting surface covering the whole seaward field of fire of that particular battery.

31. Whistler-Hearn plotting board M1904 (for guns).—*Q.* Explain how to orient the Whistler-Hearn plotting board M1904. *A.*

(1) The base-line arm may be moved through 1° in either direction. The zero of the base-line arm may be given any convenient degree number, depending upon the azimuth of the actual base line. It is convenient to number one zero with the degree nearest to the back azimuth. For example, assume that the azimuth of the base line is 212.14° and that the base line is left-handed. The zero at the left end of the base-line arm is numbered 212° and the zero at the right end is numbered 32°. To orient the base-line arm to correspond with the actual base, it is necessary to swing the base-line arm clockwise through 0.14°; i. e., set the left end at 212.14° and the right end at 32.14°. Again assume that the azimuth of the base line is 212.80°; then the left end is numbered 213° and the right end 33°. To set the base line at 212.80° it is necessary to swing the base-line arm counterclockwise through 0.20°.

(2) To orient the gun arm, bring the gun arm center over the primary station by placing the zeros of the longitudinal adjusting scale vernier and the lateral adjusting scale vernier coincident with the zeros of their respective scales. Be sure that the zero of the worm gear is

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

opposite 15 on the azimuth correction scale and that the scale on the micrometer head of the worm is at zero. Bring the primary arm to the normal line of the board. See that the pointer of the index box on the primary arm is set at zero. Place the targ against the reading edge of the primary arm and bring the gun arm carefully against the targ. The reading edges of the primary and gun arms should now

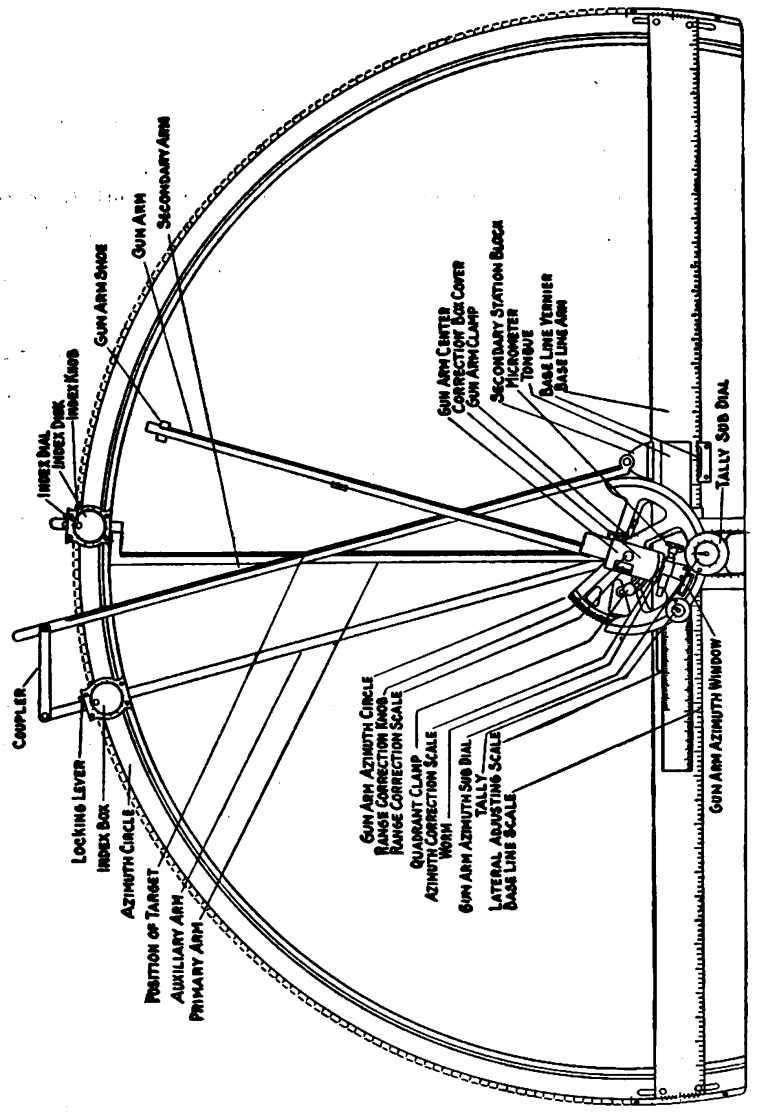


FIGURE 27.—Whistler-Hearn plotting board for guns.

coincide with the normal line. Set the azimuth pointer, by means of the adjusting screw, to the whole degree of the azimuth of the normal line. Next set the gun arm azimuth subdial indicator to zero by loosening the screw holding the indicator in place. This will allow an adjustment of one-fourth, one-half, or three-fourths of a degree. If this is not sufficient, the tally subdial is removed. The gun arm azimuth subdial can now be adjusted within the limits of one-fourth

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

degree by loosening the retaining screw and moving the subdial until the pointer is at zero. To verify this setting, the gun arm should be moved away from the targ and brought up to it several times. The gun arm center is then moved to the position on the board corresponding to that of the directing point. This position is determined by the distance in yards the directing point is in rear or in front of the base line and to the right or to the left of the primary station. Care must be taken that the proper coupler is used with the primary arm. This coupler must be equal in length "to scale" to the base line.

Q. May this plotting board be used for more than one combination of gun positions and observation stations? *A.* Yes. It can be used for as many gun positions and as many observation stations as desired within the mechanical limitations of the board. Orientation of the board for different positions, however, cannot be accomplished in a short time, and a coupler has to be provided for each different set-up.

32. Whistler-Hearn plotting board (for mortars).—The adjustment and orientation of the Whistler-Hearn plotting board for mortars are similar to those for the gun plotting board.

33. Prediction scale.—*Q.* What instruments are used in obtaining predicted and set-forward points? *A.* (State those used locally.)



FIGURE 28.—Prediction scale.

Q. What is the purpose of the prediction scale? *A.* The prediction scale is used for measuring the rate of linear travel of the target and, with a set-forward rule or chart, to locate the set-forward point. It may be used also for locating the set-forward point.

Q. What member of the range section uses the prediction scale? *A.* The plotter.

Q. Explain the location of the predicted point by means of the prediction scale. *A.* Place the zero graduation at the last plotted point and measure the distance between the last two plotted points. The predicted point is located and marked at the same distance ahead of the last plotted point and on the expected path of the target.

Q. Explain how the prediction scale is used in location of the set-forward point. *A.* The plotter measures the distance between the last two plotted points as before, and calls off this distance to the operator of the set-forward device (either the set-forward rule or the set-forward chart). That operator calls back to the plotter the distance the target will travel during the next observing interval plus

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

the time of the flight, and the plotter locates and marks the set-forward point at that distance ahead of the last plotted point and on the expected path of the target.

34. Set-forward rules.—*Q*. What is the purpose of the set-forward rule? *A*. The set-forward rule is for use with the prediction scale to determine the location of the set-forward point.

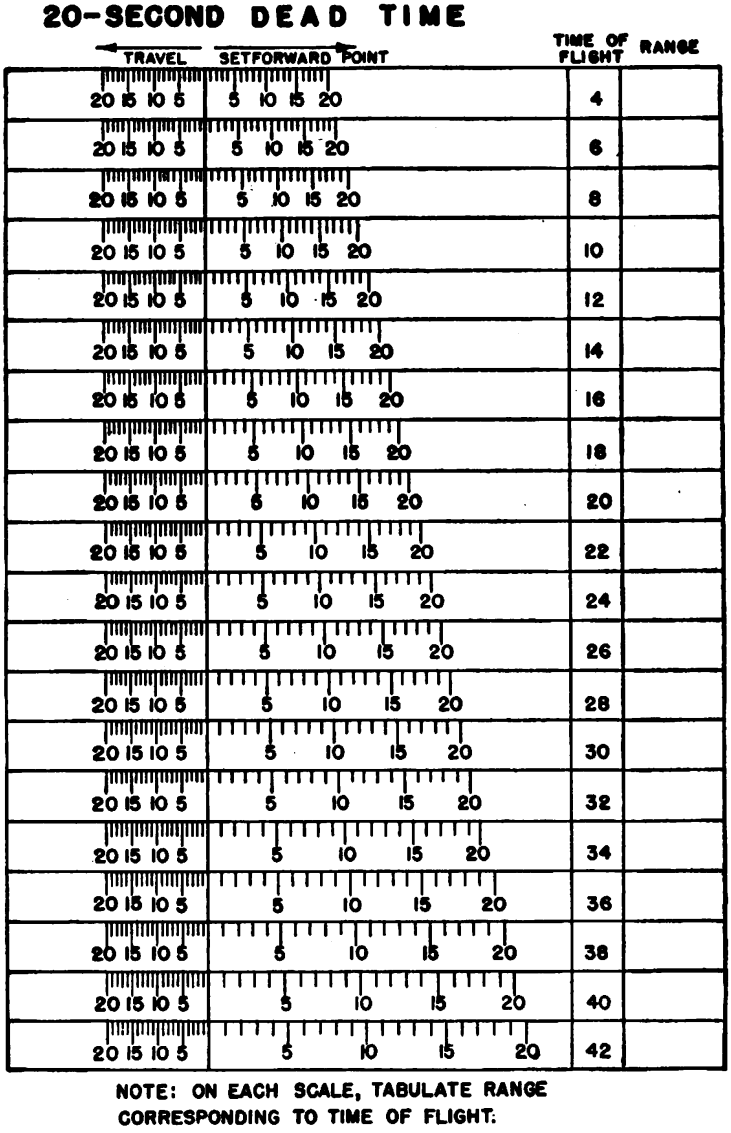


FIGURE 29.—Set-forward scales.

Q. What data are necessary for its operation? *A*. The range (or time of flight) to the last set-forward point and the yards of travel during one observing interval are obtained from the plotter.

Q. Explain the operation of the instrument used in your battery to accomplish this solution. *A*. (The explanation should cover in detail the operation of the particular device in use.)

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. Will one rule be suitable for use under all conditions of firing? *A.* No. A new rule must be used at any time that the observing interval or the dead time is changed.

35. Set-forward chart.—*Q.* Explain the purpose and method of operation of the set-forward chart. *A.* The set-forward chart serves the same purpose as the set-forward rule; that is, it gives the yards of travel from the last plotted point to the set-forward point. To operate it, set the T-square opposite the range (or time of flight) to the last set-forward point; opposite the yards of travel as called out by the plottter, read the yards of travel to the set-forward point and transmit this information to the plotter.

36. Set-forward scales.—*Q.* What is the purpose of a set-forward scale? *A.* The set-forward scale is for the purpose of locating the set-forward point directly from the plotted course. It combines the functions of the prediction scale and the set-forward ruler or chart.

Q. Can the same scale be used for all ranges or values of time of flight? *A.* No. Separate scales are ordinarily furnished for each two seconds of time of flight.

Q. Explain the use of the set-forward scale. *A.* Select the proper scale for the current range. Place the zero of the scale at the last plotted point and measure the distance to the preceding point; mark the set-forward point the same number of graduations ahead of the zero mark, and on the expected course of the target.

NOTE.—In the discussions of prediction and set-forward devices it has been assumed that the predicting interval is equal to the observing interval. In some batteries this is not the case, and examining boards must modify the questions to fit the local conditions.

37. Range-correction board M1.—*Q.* What is the purpose of the range-correction board M1? *A.* The range-correction board M1 is for the purpose of determining the algebraic sum of the range corrections due to prevailing nonstandard ballistic conditions. This sum of the range corrections is called the ballistic correction.

Q. How many men are required for the operation of this board? *A.* One man.

Q. List the nonstandard conditions for which corrections are made, the units in which expressed, and the source from which information as to each of these nonstandard conditions is obtained. *A.*

(1) Muzzle velocity, in foot-seconds, from the range officer.

(2) Atmospheric density, in percent of normal density, from the meteorological message (corrected for difference in elevation).

(3) Height of site or tide, in feet, from the range officer and tide station.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(4) Ballistic wind, in wind reference numbers, from the component indicator.

(5) Weight of projectile, in pounds, from the range officer (who gets the average weight from the battery executive).

(6) Elasticity, in degrees Fahrenheit, from the meteorological message (corrected for difference in elevation), or from a thermometer at the battery.

(7) Rotation of the earth, in degrees, from the plotter. (This setting is the azimuth to the set-forward point.)

Q. In what units is the ballistic correction obtained? *A.* In percent of range, usually in terms of reference numbers, with 300 as zero correction.

Q. To whom is the ballistic correction sent? *A.* To the operator of the percentage corrector.

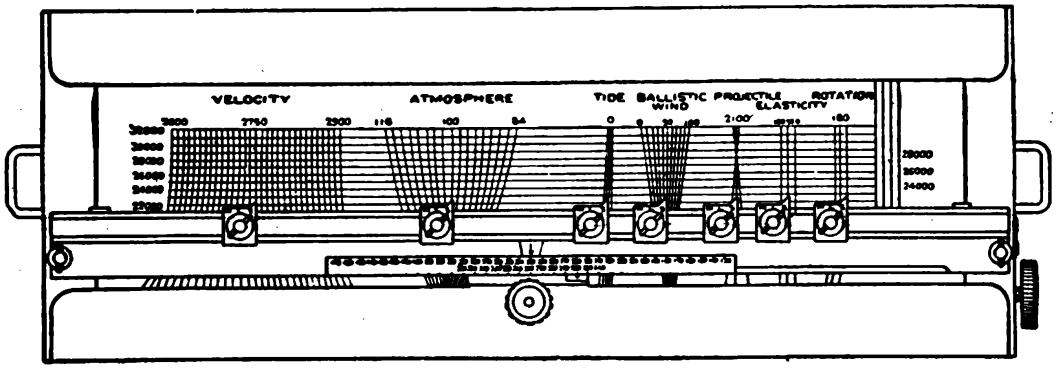


FIGURE 30.—Range-correction board M1.

Q. Explain the operation of the range-correction board M1. *A.* (1) The operation of the board is continuous during firing, though performed periodically. The initial ballistic correction is determined in the following manner. It should be made under the direct supervision of the range officer.

(*a*) Turn the roller handle until the proper chart appears on the face of the board, and adjust the correction ruler to bring it parallel to the range lines. This may be done by loosening the clamp screws and swinging one end of the ruler the necessary amount, then tightening the screws.

(*b*) Bring each pointer to the normal of its set of curves. This is done by turning the wing nut clamp to "M" and turning the knob at the bottom of the ruler until the pointer is opposite the normal line, then turning the wing nut clamp back to "S."

(*c*) After all pointers are at normal, bring the index of the correction scale to the normal (300) of that scale.

(*d*) Record with chalk, in a convenient place in the space provided

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

near the top of the board, the necessary data to indicate the curves representing the nonstandard conditions existing.

(*e*) As soon as a range is announced, move the chart to bring that range line under the correction pointers and set each pointer in turn to its proper correction curve.

(*f*) Call out to the percentage-corrector operator the ballistic correction indicated on the correction scale.

(2) As the firing continues, the operator keeps the chart set at the range to the set-forward point and keeps the pointers set opposite their proper charts, moving the pointers separately. He announces a new ballistic correction whenever it changes by one unit (1/10 of 1 percent).

(3) The operator notes any change in the range wind reference number and in the azimuth of the set-forward point, and changes the record at the top of the board to indicate the new wind curve and the new rotation curve to be used, as necessary.

Q. In mortar and howitzer firing, how is a change of zones made? *A*. The operator must anticipate the change of zones, setting the board up for the new zone in time to have the new ballistic correction ready when the target enters the new zone. The range officer should designate the new muzzle-velocity curve to use and, if necessary, the new elasticity, density, and wind curves (as dictated by the proper zone of the meteorological message). Other curves used should be the same curves as for the previous zone.

38. Deflection board M1.—*Q*. What corrections are applied on this instrument? *A*. Corrections due to wind, drift, rotation of the earth, travel of the target, and adjustment corrections.

Q. Can it be used for both case II and case III firing? *A*. Yes.

Q. Can it be used for both mobile and fixed seacoast artillery? *A*. Yes. It can be adjusted to operate in either degrees and hundredths, or in mils, by a replacement of gearing and a change of scales and correction curves.

Q. What is the purpose of the wind-resolving mechanism? *A*. It is for the purpose of splitting the ballistic wind up into its range and deflection components. It takes the place of the wind-component indicator.

Q. Is it necessary to reset the wind-resolving mechanism as the azimuth of the target changes? *A*. No. Once the wind speed and direction are set, the wind arm rotates with the main azimuth plate and scale as the target moves in azimuth. The wind reference numbers, representing the range and deflection components, are read from the face of the top plate of the wind-resolving mechanism.

Q. Explain how to set and read the wind-resolving mechanism. *A*.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(1) Set the "read" pointer to the speed of the ballistic wind on the wind arm.

(2) Set the wind azimuth pointer to the azimuth (from zero north) of the ballistic wind, using the index N on the same end of the wind arm as the wind-speed scale if target azimuths are measured from north; if target azimuths are measured from south, use index S on the opposite end of the wind arm from the wind-speed scale to set wind azimuth.

(3) Under the "read" pointer on the top plate, read the range and deflection components of the ballistic wind.

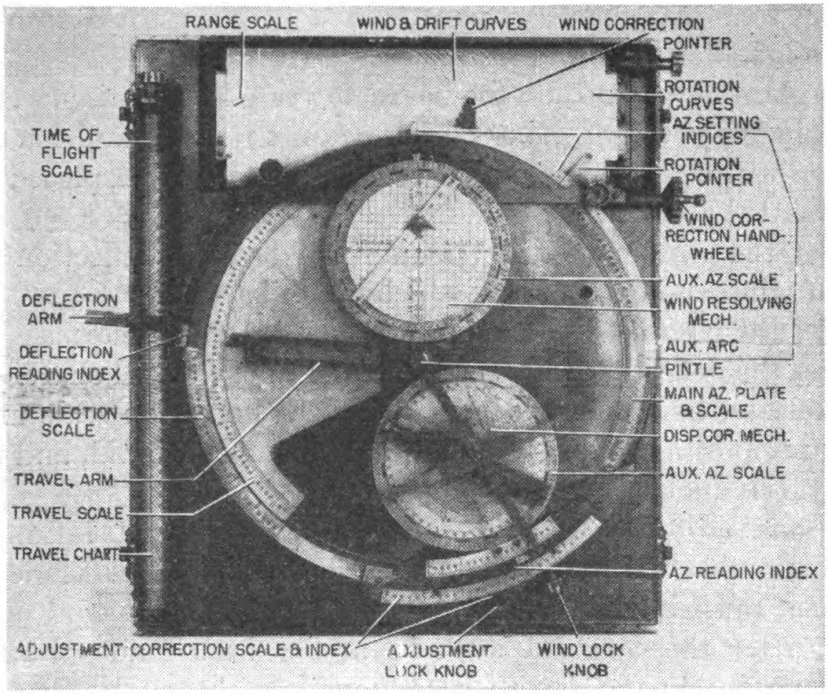


FIGURE 31.—Deflection board M1.

Q. Explain how to set uncorrected azimuth on the instrument. *A.* Rotate the main azimuth plate and scale until the proper number of hundreds and tens of the azimuth to be set are opposite the target index (on the wind-resolving mechanism); set the units and hundredths of the azimuth on the main azimuth scale opposite the azimuth setting index (above the wind and drift curves).

Q. What is the adjustment of the board, and what is its purpose. *A.* The adjustment of the board consists of establishing the proper relation between all "set" and "read" pointers so that the proper corrected azimuths or sight settings are obtained when corrections are applied to observed data.

Q. Explain how to adjust the board for case III pointing. *A.*

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(1) Set the rotation pointer on the zero deflection line of the rotation curves. (The zero deflection line is the reference line running through the origin of each set of curves.) If no correction is to be made for rotation of the earth, run the rotation pointer back against its stop and fasten it so that there will be no danger of it being accidentally displaced during operation of the board.

(2) Set the wind-correction pointer on the zero deflection line of the set of wind and drift curves which are to be used. (Some charts furnished contain more than one set of wind and drift curves.)

(3) Set the lateral adjustment correction pointer to normal.

(4) Release the wind lock knob, set opposite the azimuth-reading index the same azimuth as that found opposite the azimuth-setting index, and tighten the wind lock knob.

Q. Explain how to adjust the board for case II pointing. *A.*

(1) Run the rotation pointer back against its stop and fasten it so that there will be no chances of it being accidentally displaced during operation of the board.

(2) Set the wind-correction pointer on the zero deflection line of the set of wind and drift curves which are to be used.

(3) Set the lateral adjustment correction pointer to normal.

(4) Set the deflection arm to the normal of the travel chart.

(5) Release the wind lock knob, move the deflection scale until the deflection opposite the deflection-reading index is normal, and tighten the wind lock knob.

Q. Is one adjustment good for all ballistic charts? *A.* No. If the ballistic chart is changed after the adjustment is made a new adjustment must be made.

Q. If, after the case III adjustment has been made, the method of pointing is changed to case II, must the board be readjusted? *A.* Yes. When using case II pointing, the adjustment must include the travel chart.

Q. How do you set in a correction for wind and drift? *A.* Corrections for wind and drift are combined into one set of curves on the ballistic correction chart.

(1) Set the chart at the corrected range to the set-forward point.

(2) By means of the wind-correction handwheel bring the wind-correction pointer to the wind curve indicated on the wind-resolving mechanism. This displaces the azimuth-reading index by the amount of the correction.

Q. How is a correction for rotation of the earth set into the instrument? *A.* Set the ballistic correction chart at the corrected range to the set-forward point. Bring the rotation pointer to the

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

proper azimuth curve on the chart. This pointer is fastened to the auxiliary arc bearing the setting index, so that in setting a rotation correction, the setting index is displaced by the amount of the correction, and the main azimuth plate must be reset to the proper azimuth.

Q. Explain how to set in a lateral adjustment correction. *A.*

(1) Loosen the adjustment lock knob.

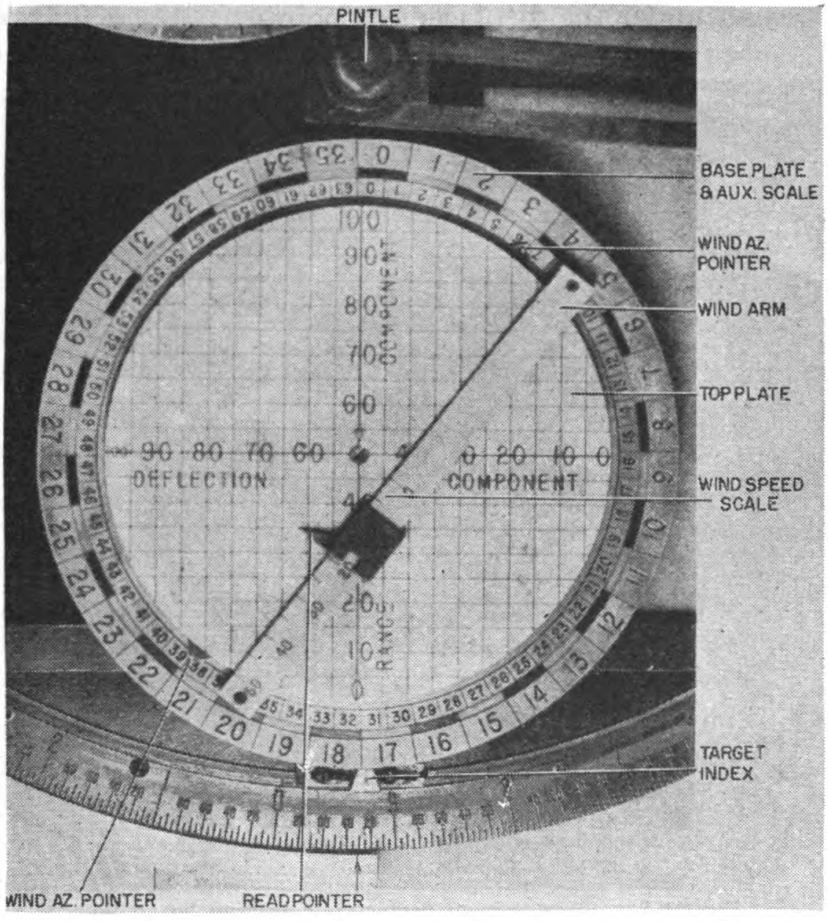


FIGURE 32.—Wind-resolving mechanism, deflection board M1.

(2) Shift the reading index and the adjustment scale so that the desired correction is indicated opposite the adjustment correction index and tighten the lock knob. The adjustment correction index remains locked to the wind-correction pointer.

Q. Explain the purpose of the displacement corrector. *A.* The displacement corrector is for the purpose of correcting the firing data for parallax due to displacement; that is, if the guns are at a distance from the directing point sufficient to require the data, as computed for the directing point, to be corrected for use on the guns, the displacement corrector applies the necessary lateral cor-

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

rection. Also, if the two guns of a battery are separated sufficiently to require different firing data, and one gun is designated the directing gun, the displacement corrector will apply a lateral correction to the firing azimuth for the other gun.

Q. Explain how to set in a correction for displacement. *A.*

(1) Set the gun arm to the azimuth of the displaced gun from the directing point.

(2) Revolve the curve disk until the distance to the displaced gun, in yards, is set under the displacement pointer.

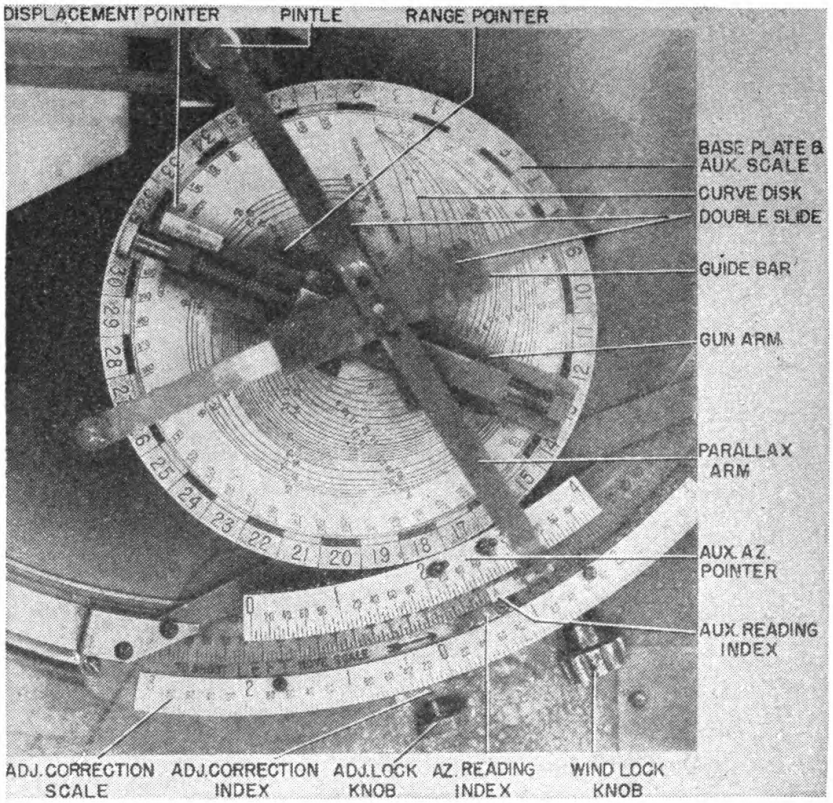


FIGURE 33.—Displacement corrector, deflection board M1.

(3) Set the range pointer over the proper range curve on the curve disk.

(4) Read the corrected azimuth opposite the index on the parallax arm.

Q. What is the purpose of the angular-travel computing mechanism? *A.* The angular-travel computing mechanism is used in case II pointing for the purpose of correcting the deflection for the angular travel of the target during the time of flight.

Q. Explain its operation. *A.* After the main azimuth plate is set to the uncorrected azimuth to the set-forward point, set the travel

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

arm to the normal (6.00) of the travel scale. When the next uncorrected azimuth is set, the travel arm, which is attached to the main azimuth plate by a slip-friction device, will move with the main azimuth plate and indicate, on the travel scale, the angular travel of the target during the observing interval. The travel chart is rotated until the time of flight corresponding to the corrected range to the set-forward point is indicated opposite its index, and the deflection arm is set over the proper travel curve. The deflection is then read opposite the deflection-reading index.

Q. How are ballistic and adjustment corrections applied for case II pointing? *A*. In the same manner as for case III pointing. The deflection is attached to the arm carrying the azimuth reading index, so that when that index is displaced, either by the wind-correction pointer or by the application of an adjustment correction, the deflection scale is displaced by the same amount.

Q. How many men are required to operate this board? *A*. Two men are required for either case II or case III pointing. Operator *A* operates the wind-resolving mechanism and the ballistic correction chart and pointers, and sets the uncorrected azimuths. Operator *B* wears a telephone head set connecting him with the azimuth setters or gun pointers at the guns. He operates the lateral adjustment correction mechanism and angular travel device and transmits the corrected azimuths or deflections to the guns. He operates the displacement corrector when that mechanism is used.

39. Gun deflection board M1905.—*Q*. Point out the following parts of the gun deflection board, M1905: drift scale; platen scale; range-time scale; platen; travel arm; wind scale. *A*. (See fig. 34.)

Q. Which edge of the wind arm or of the travel arm is read in setting off the readings? *A*. The one which would pass through the center of the pivot of the arm if prolonged.

Q. What information is necessary for the operation of this deflection board? *A*. The wind reference number, obtained from the wind-component indicator; the corrected range to the set-forward point, obtained from the range percentage corrector; and the angular travel of the target, obtained from the angular-travel computer or from the plotting board.

Q. Explain the operation of the board to obtain the deflection for sight. *A*.

(1) Set the wind arm to the proper reference number, as indicated by the wind-component indicator.

(2) Set the travel arm (reading edge) for the travel reference number obtained from the plotting board.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

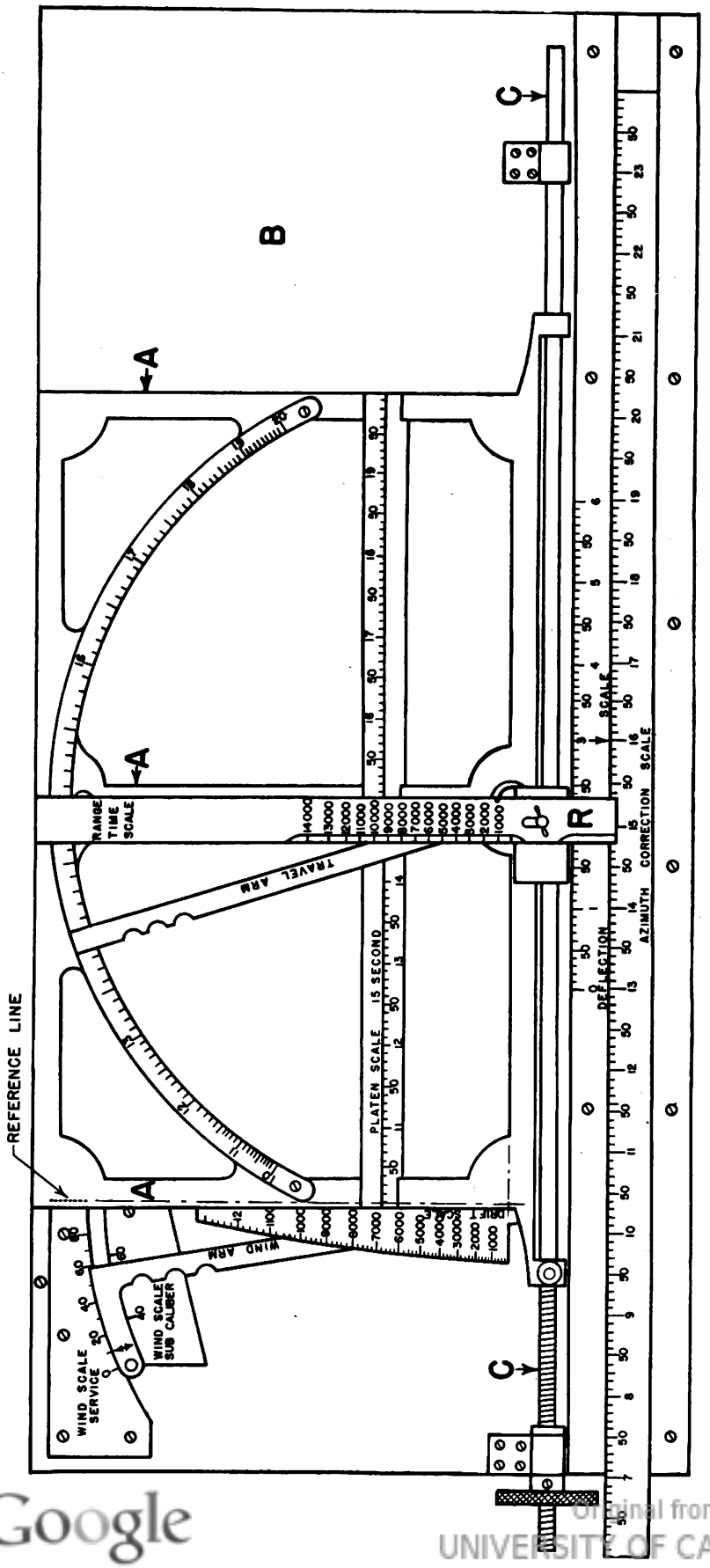


FIGURE 34.—Gun deflection board M1906.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(3) Set the platen so that the point of the drift scale corresponding to the corrected range, obtained from the range percentage corrector, will be accurately over the right-hand edge of the wind arm.

(4) Set the range-time scale so that the point of its scale corresponding to the corrected range obtained from the range percentage corrector, will be accurately over the reading edge of the travel arm.

(5) Set the lateral adjustment correction (obtained from the range officer) on the azimuth-correction scale at the normal of the deflection scale.

(6) The beveled edge of the range-time scale then indicates on the azimuth-correction scale the corrected deflection to be used on the sight with case I or II.

Q. May this deflection board be used in case III pointing? *A.* Yes, but such use is not very satisfactory and the board should not be used in case III pointing except in case of emergency.

Q. How is this board adapted for subcaliber firing? *A.* The range-time scale and the drift scale for service use are removed and replaced by corresponding subcaliber scales. The subcaliber wind scale is used instead of the service wind scale. The operation of the board is then the same as for service use.

40. Mortar deflection board M1906.—*Q.* Point out and state the purpose of each of the parts shown in figure 35. *A.* (See fig. 35.)

Q. What corrections does this board apply? *A.* It applies to the uncorrected azimuth corrections for wind, drift, and adjustment. It does not apply corrections for the rotation of the earth.

Q. How is the deflection chart oriented on the mortar deflection board? *A.*

(1) Bring the "read" and "set" pointers of the board to the same azimuth reading.

(2) Bring adjusting and lateral wind-correction scales to normal of 3.00.

(3) Fasten the deflection chart to rollers so that the zero deflection line falls immediately beneath the normal of the adjusting scale.

Q. Explain the operation of the board. *A.*

(1) Unless otherwise ordered, set the lower index of the adjusting scale to the normal of the lateral wind-correction scale. Turn the handle and ratchet ring until the proper degree on the cylinder is brought into view and set the uncorrected azimuth pointer marked "set" to the uncorrected azimuth of the set-forward point as called out by the plotter. Turn the rear rod knob until the horizontal line representing the corrected elevation, obtained from the percentage corrector, coincides with the fiducial edge of the adjusting scale. Turn the slide knob until the arrow of the adjusting scale

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

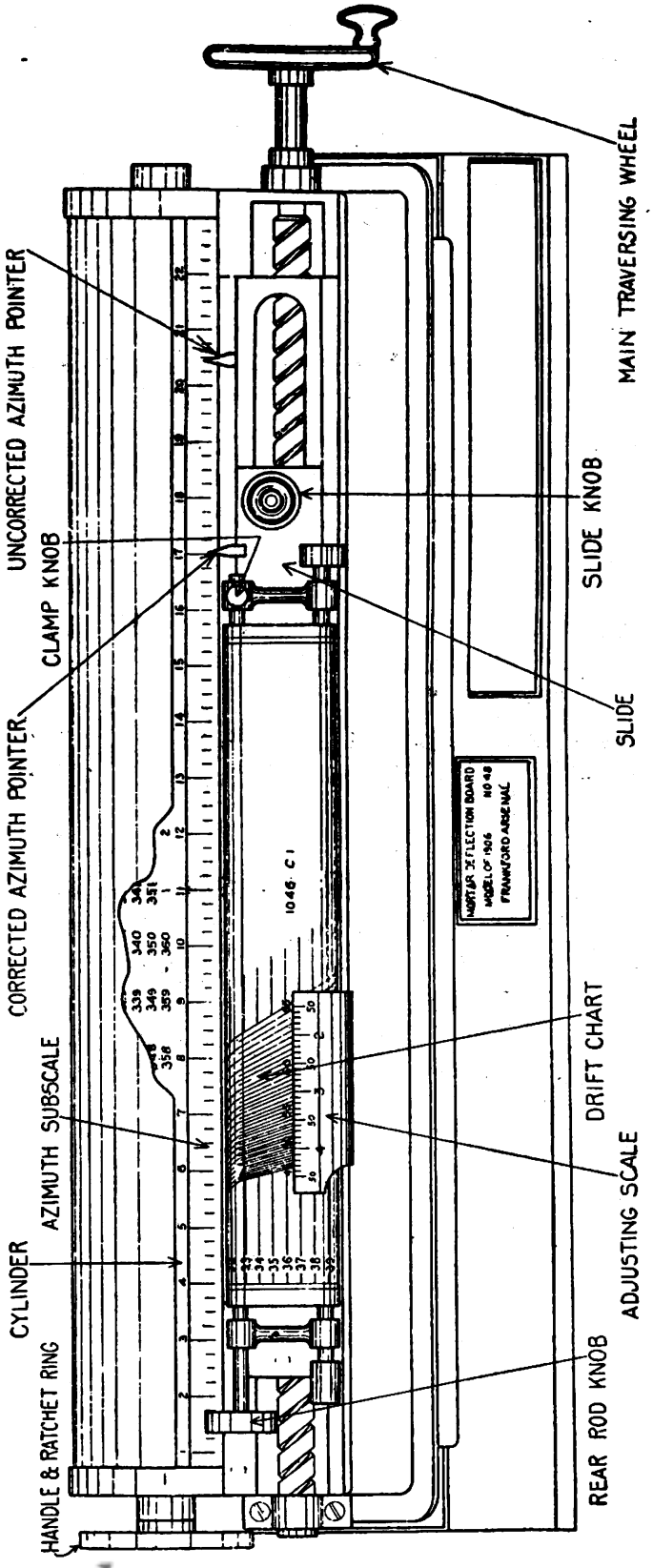


FIGURE 35.—Mortar deflection board M1906.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

points to the proper curve representing the cross-wind component reference number, as obtained from the wind-component indicator. Read the corrected azimuth of the set-forward point under the "read" pointer. As changes occur, move the chart to the new corrected elevation and the arrow to the new cross-wind reference number.

(2) If the wind measurements are not available, the pointer (normal) of the adjusting scale may be set on the wind curve representing a deflection wind reference number of 50 (normal, or zero, wind correction), thus correcting for drift alone.

(3) Corrections resulting from observation of fire are applied on lateral wind-correction scale. Move the adjusting scale right or left until the lower arrow of the scale coincides with the proper graduation on the lateral wind-correction scale, as indicated by the correction ordered. This correction is in reference numbers with normal of 3.00.

(4) This deflection board applies adjustment corrections as flat angular corrections. This is satisfactory for low-angle fire. When used for mortars the azimuth adjustment slide rule should be used also to give the appropriate correction for changes in elevation.

41. Universal deflection board.—*Q.* Point out and state the purpose of each of the parts shown in figure 36. *A.* (See fig. 36.)

Q. What corrections are applied on the universal deflection board? *A.* For drift, wind, rotation of the earth, and adjustment resulting from observation of fire.

Q. How is the board adjusted for case III pointing? Case II pointing? *A.*

(1) *Case III pointing.*—The adjustment of the board consists in placing all pointers and indices at their normal or "zero" positions as follows:

(*a*) Reading index opposite the origin line of the wind and drift curves.

(*b*) Setting index directly over the reading index.

(*c*) Wind pointer opposite origin line of wind and drift curves.

(*d*) Rotation pointer opposite origin line of the rotation curves.

(*e*) Adjustment correction pointer opposite normal (3.00) of the adjustment correction scale.

(2) *Case II pointing.*—The same as for case III pointing.

Q. What data are necessary for the operation of the board for case III? *A.* Uncorrected azimuth of the set-forward point, wind-component reference number, corrected elevation, and the adjustment correction to be applied as a result of observation of fire.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. Explain the operation of the universal deflection board in case III. *A.* Set the pointer arm at the corrected range to the set-forward point. The rider is set (for the rotational correction) at the

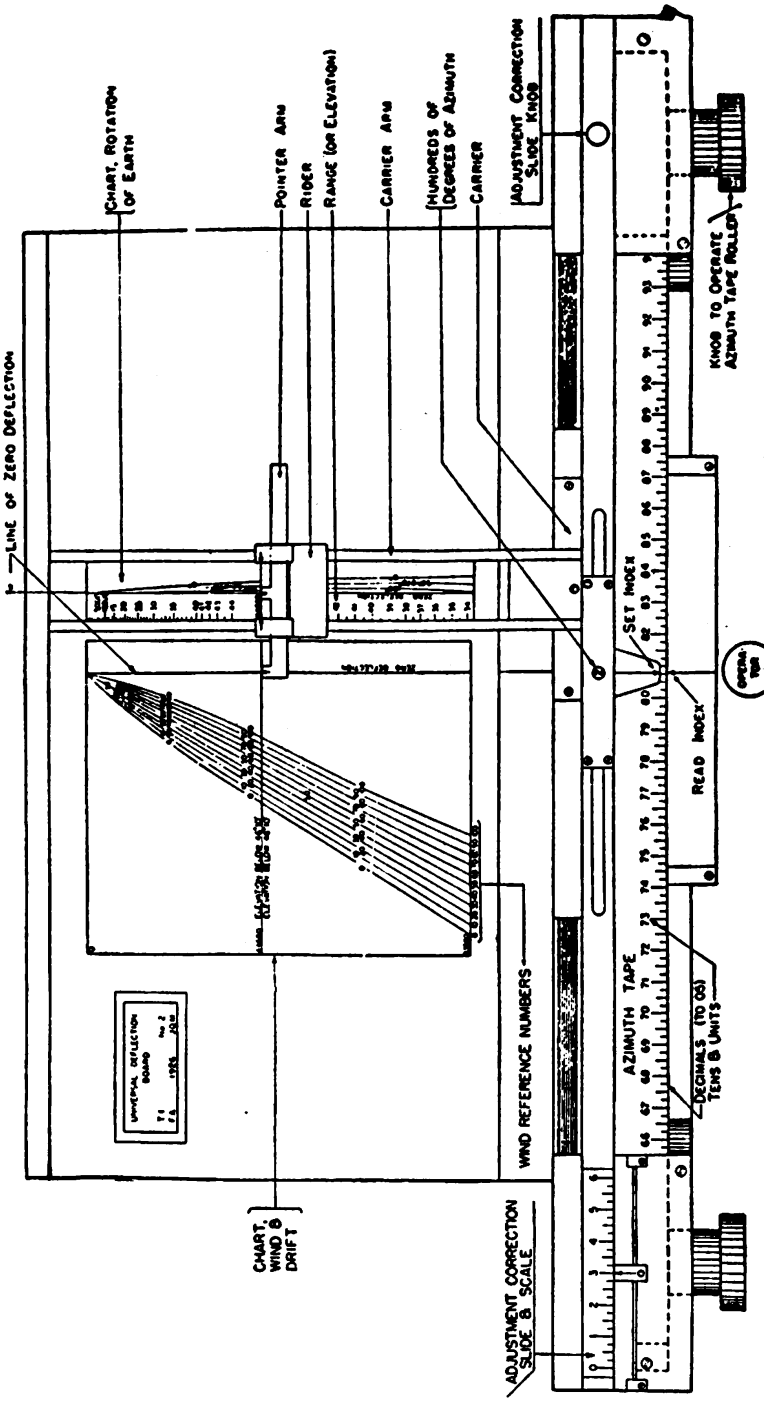


FIGURE 36.—Universal deflection board.

curve corresponding to the approximate azimuth of the set-forward point. The wind-and-drift curve to be used is determined by the deflection wind component obtained from the wind-component indi-

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

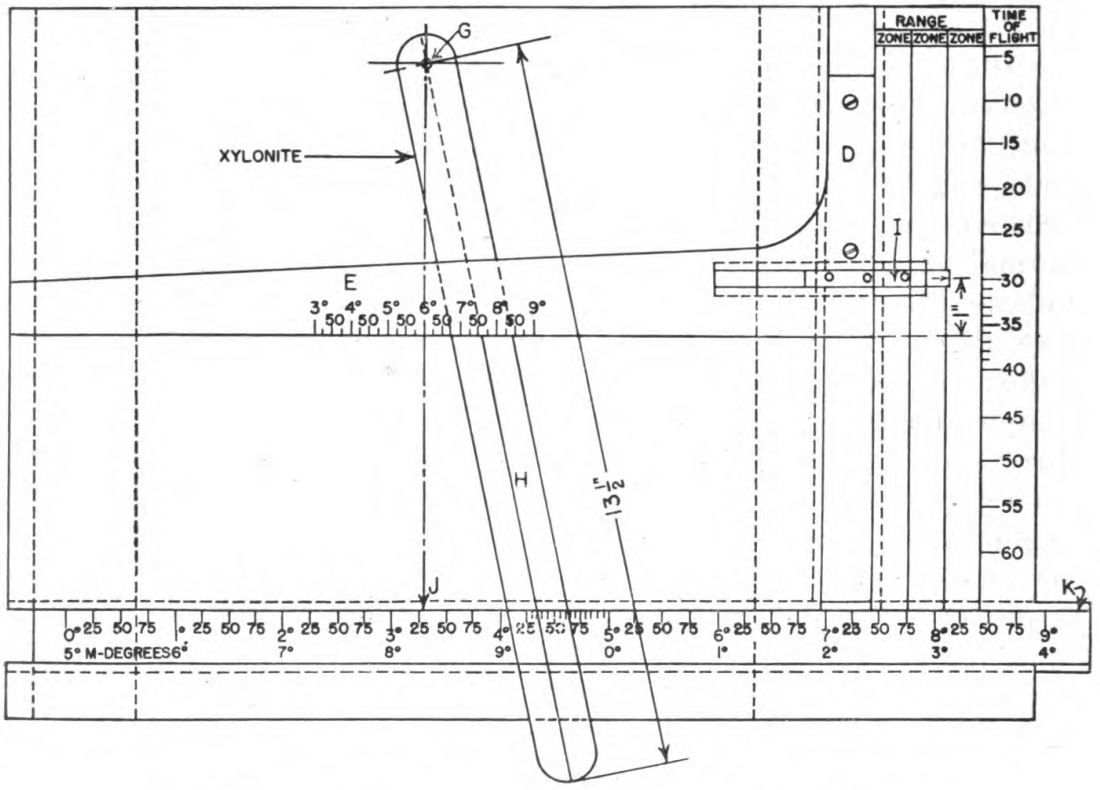
cator. With the adjustment correction scale at zero, move the carrier, with arm, until the wind-and-drift correction pointer is brought to the proper wind-and-drift curve. Thereafter, keep the pointer arm set at the proper elevation, the rider on the proper rotation curve, and the pointer on the proper wind-and-drift curve. Set the slide to indicate the hundreds of degrees azimuth of the set-forward point. Move the tape so that the azimuth of the set-forward point called out by the plotter is set opposite the "set" index. Read the corrected azimuth on the tape opposite the "read" index.

Q. Explain the operation of the universal deflection board in case II. *A*. For use in case II firing, azimuth tapes for the universal board carry at one end scales graduated to correspond to the graduations of the deflection scales of telescopic sights, except that the azimuth tape scale is numbered from left to right. See that the adjustment correction slide is set at normal or at the adjustment correction ordered. Move the tape by rolling it up on the left roller until the normal of the scale of the sight being used comes under the "set" index. If the normal of the telescopic sight is 3, as in the usual case, the 3 of the deflection scale on the tape is set under the same index. The angular travel of the target during the time of flight is computed and added to or subtracted from (depending upon the direction of travel of the target) the normal of the proper sight scale (depending upon the sight being used) by the operator of the angular-travel computer, who transmits to the operator of the universal deflection board the angular-travel reference number so determined. The deflection-board operator moves the azimuth tape until the angular-travel reference number is under the "set" index. Move the pointer arm until its index is set at the corrected range to the set-forward point. Move the rotational correction rider until it coincides with the proper curve corresponding to the azimuth of the set-forward point. Move the wind-and-drift correction pointer by moving the carrier to the right or left until the index of the pointer is over the proper wind-and-drift curve. The corrected deflection is read on the tape under the "read" index.

Q. How are adjustment corrections applied to the universal deflection board? *A*. Through the adjustment correction slide which is graduated in 0.05° spaces to the right and left of normal (zero correction). The direction in which the slide is to be moved to make the correction is indicated by an arrow on the slide. Set the movable slide coincident with the fixed index of the adjustment correction slide and opposite its normal. Move the adjustment correction slide in the proper direction until the amount of the correction is read opposite

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

the fixed index and the marker. The "set" index has been displaced by the amount of the correction, and readings made on the azimuth tape opposite the "read" index will give the corrected azimuth, which includes the adjustment correction. Move the reference pointer so that it will again be opposite the normal of the adjustment correction slide. Apply additional adjustment corrections with reference to the index of the marker, and after the corrections have been accomplished always move the marker until it is again opposite the normal of the adjustment correction slide.



D. Slide.
E. Deflection scale.
G–J. Median line.
H. Travel arm.
I. Range index.
K. Platen scale.
M. Azimuth scale.

FIGURE 37.—Angular-travel computer.

42. Angular-travel computer.—*Q*. What is the purpose of the angular-travel computer? *A*. To determine the deflection due to angular travel (called the "angular-travel reference number"), for case II pointing.

Q. Point out the following parts: azimuth scale, range-time scale. median line, deflection scale, and travel arm. *A*. (See fig. 37.)

Q. How is the board adjusted for operation? *A*. By mounting the proper range-time scale and deflection scale in place. The range-

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

time scale depends on the gun and ammunition being used, and the deflection scale depends on the gun sight being used.

Q. What data are necessary for the operation of the board? *A.* The corrected range to the current set-forward point and the uncorrected azimuths to the current set-forward point and the next preceding one.

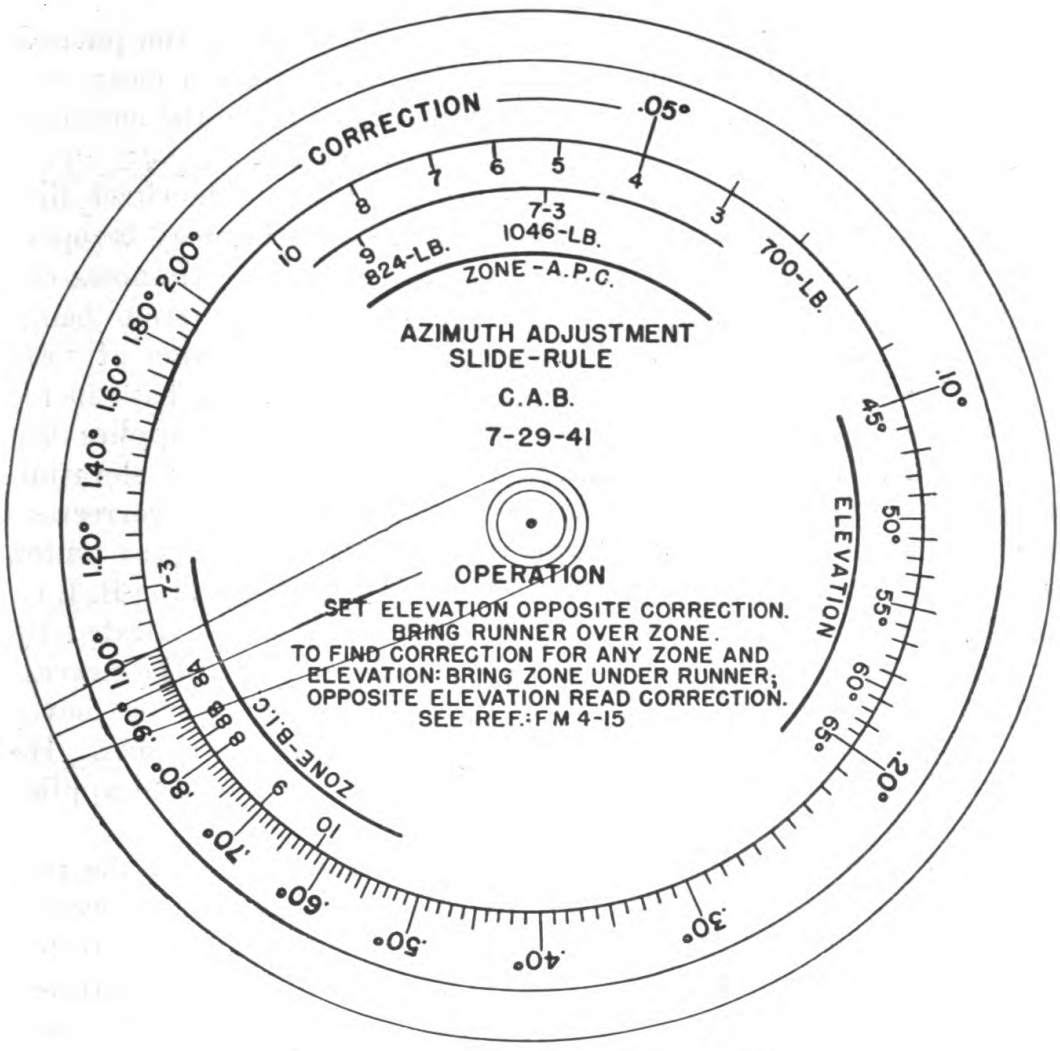


FIGURE 38.—Azimuth adjustment slide rule.

Q. Explain the operation of the angular-travel computer. *A.* (1) Set the azimuth scale so that the uncorrected azimuth (last three numbers) of the next preceding set-forward point is opposite the index J (the median line of the board).

(2) Set the range index opposite the corrected range to the current set-forward point.

(3) Set the travel arm to the uncorrected azimuth of the current set-forward point.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(4) Read the angular-travel reference number indicated by the travel arm on the deflection scale.

Q. How is the board adjusted for subcaliber firing? *A.* By substituting the proper range-time scale.

Q. Can the same deflection scale be used if the observing interval is changed? *A.* No, because it is constructed for a particular observing interval.

43. Azimuth adjustment slide rule.—*Q.* What is the purpose of the azimuth adjustment slide rule? *A.* To provide a means for varying an angular adjustment correction according to the elevation in high-angle fire.

Q. When should it be used? *A.* For mortar and howitzer fire.

Q. Explain the operation of the rule. *A.* The rule may be operated by the deflection-board operator or his assistant. He notes the adjustment correction ordered and the zone and elevation being used. For example, assume that an adjustment correction of "left 0.15°" has been ordered when firing in zone 8–A using base increment charges, at an elevation of 55°. The operator applies the correction to his deflection board. He next sets the 55° elevation mark on the inner scale of the rule opposite the 0.15° correction mark on the outer scale, as shown in figure 38, and sets the center line of the runner over the mark representing zone 8–A on the B. I. C. scale. He then observes the change in the correction indicated by new elevations ordered and keeps the correction set to the nearest 0.05° on his deflection board. When the zone changes he moves the smaller disk until the new zone mark is under the runner. He then reads the new correction opposite the new elevation and applies it on the deflection board.

44. Percentage corrector.—*Q.* What is the purpose of the percentage corrector M1? *A.* The percentage corrector M1 is a device for applying the ballistic and adjustment corrections to the uncorrected range to the set-forward point, and for transforming the corrected range, when necessary, into the corresponding elevation or the corresponding range in those units with which the pointing device on the gun is marked.

Q. Explain its operation. *A.* The percentage-corrector operator keeps the ballistic pointer set on the ballistic-correction scale at the ballistic correction called out by the operator of the range-correction board. If an adjustment correction has been ordered, he sets the "read" pointer at that correction on the adjustment-correction scale; otherwise that pointer coincides with the ballistic pointer. As soon as the uncorrected range to the set-forward point is called out from the

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

plotting board, he sets that range on the range scale under the index line on the xylonite. He wears a telephone head set connecting him to the range or elevation setters at the guns, and calls out to them the

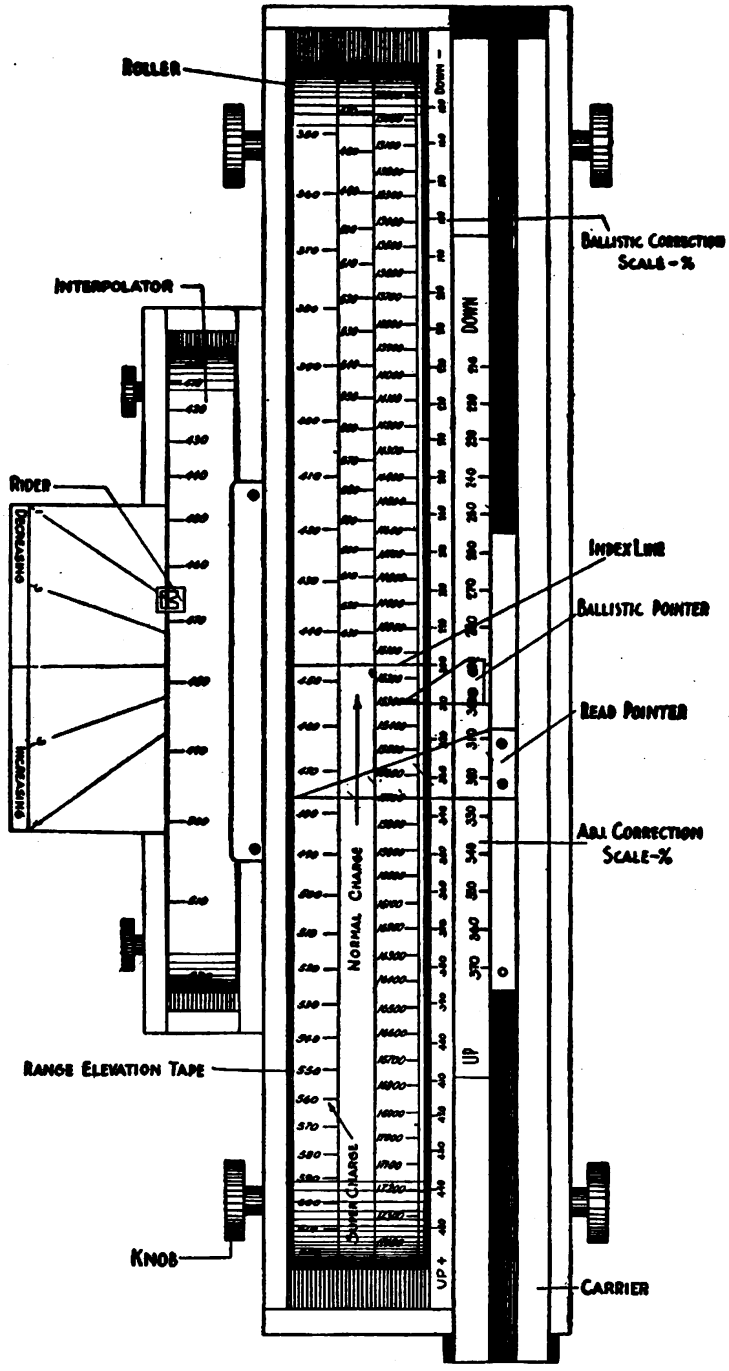


FIGURE 39.—Percentage corrector M1.

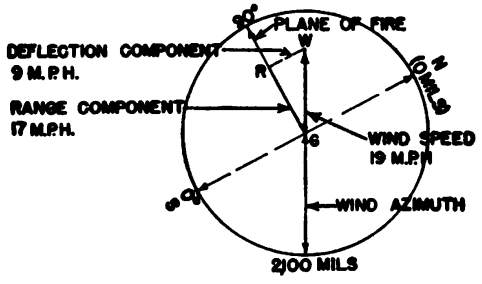
corrected range or elevation indicated by the "read" pointer on the range scale.

45. Wind-component indicator.—*Q.* What is the purpose of the wind-component indicator? *A.* To determine the range and deflec-

Digitized by Google
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

tion components of the ballistic wind for use in making wind corrections.

Q. What data are needed to operate the instrument? *A.* The azimuth and speed of the ballistic wind and the azimuth of the set-forward point.



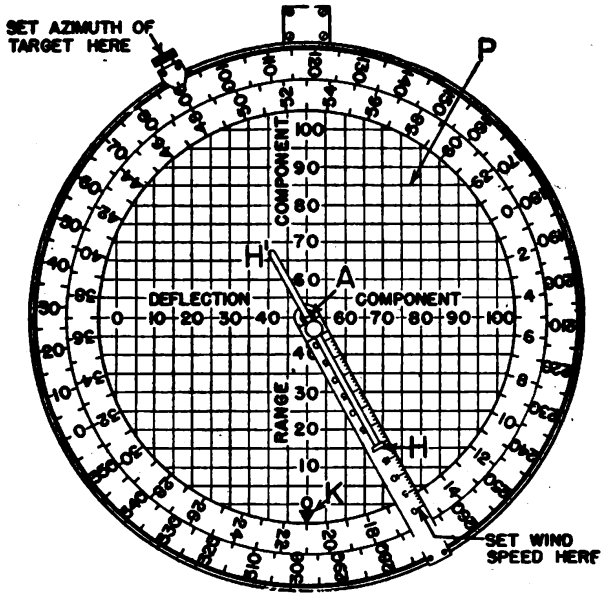


FIGURE 40.—Wind-component indicator.

Q. Where are they obtained? *A.* The wind azimuth and speed are obtained from the meterological message. The azimuth of the set-forward point is obtained from the plotting board.

Q. How is the azimuth of the ballistic wind given in the meteorological message? *A.* It is always given in hundreds of mils from zero north.

Q. Explain the operation of the instrument when the target azimuths are measured in degrees from south. *A.*

(1) Set the pointer on the target arm to the wind speed.

(2) Turn the azimuth circle until the wind azimuth is indicated on the inner scale opposite the pointer (K) at the lower end of the deflection component normal line.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(3) Keep the target arm set to the approximate azimuth of the set-forward point by setting the index on the end of the arm opposite the azimuth of the set-forward point on the outer scale, changing the setting whenever the azimuth of the set-forward point differs by as much as 2½°.

(4) Read the range-component reference number from the vertical scale on the grid where the horizontal line that runs under the pointer crosses the scale, and read the deflection-component reference number from horizontal scale where the vertical line that runs under the pointer crosses that scale.

Q. If there are no lines exactly under the pointer, what do you do? *A*. Take imaginary lines and estimate the nearest unit between the readings on the scales.

Q. What is the normal of the wind-component reference scales? *A*. Fifty.

Q. If the target azimuth is measured in degrees from north, how is the instrument used? *A*. The only change in operation is to set the wind azimuth opposite the upper end of the deflection component normal line, instead of the lower end.

Q. If the target azimuth is measured in mils from north, how is the instrument used? *A*. Set the wind azimuth at the lower end of the normal line, as in the first case, and set the target azimuths opposite the marks on the inner azimuth scale.

Q. Where is the range-component reference number used? *A*. On the range-correction board.

Q. Where is the deflection-component reference number used? *A*. On the deflection board.

Q. Is the instrument used when the deflection board M1 is used? *A*. No. A wind-component indicator is built into the deflection board.

Section II

OBSERVATION INSTRUMENTS, INCLUDING RANGE FINDERS

	Paragraph
Orientation and adjustment of instruments	46
Azimuth instruments	47
Depression position finders, general	48
Depression position finder M1907	49
Swasey depression position finder	50
Depression position finder M1	51
Self-contained horizontal base range finders	52
Care and preservation of instruments	53

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

46. Orientation and adjustment of instruments.—*Q.* What is meant by orienting an observation instrument? *A.* Setting up and so adjusting the instrument that it will read correct azimuths.

Q. What is an azimuth? *A.* The horizontal angle measured in a clockwise direction from a selected reference line passing through the position of the observer to the horizontal projection of the line of sight from the observer to the objective. In the case of seacoast artillery the reference line is a line running true south.

Q. Name the necessary adjustments, in the order in which they are usually made, to an observation instrument for reading azimuths. *A.*

(1) Exact location of the instrument over the point representing the base-end station.

(2) Leveling of the instrument.

(3) Focusing the eyepiece.

(4) Removal of parallax.

(5) Orientation to read correct azimuths.

Q. How is an instrument with tripod mount placed exactly over a point representing a base-end station? *A.* Set up and adjust the height of tripod as desired, mount the instrument on the tripod head, and hang a plumb bob from the base. With the aid of the plumb bob place the tripod approximately over the point representing the base-end station, making the tripod head as nearly level as possible by eye. Traverse the instrument until it reads the azimuth of a known datum point visible from the station. Adjust the telescope so that it is in its normal position on the base. (For example, the telescope of an azimuth instrument should be adjusted so that the eyepiece extends over the rear of the base.) Lift up the instrument and tripod together and set them down so that the telescope points in the general direction of the datum point. Center the plumb bob over the point representing the base-end station by shifting the tripod legs, keeping the tripod head as level as possible and the telescope pointed toward the datum point. Make sure that the legs when finally adjusted are firmly fixed into the ground.

Q. Explain how to level an instrument that has four leveling screws. *A.* See that all four leveling screws have a uniform and moderately firm bearing on the leveling plate. Traverse the instrument until one of the levels on the base is parallel to two diagonally opposite leveling screws. Turn those screws simultaneously, one clockwise and the other counterclockwise, until the level bubble is centered. The bubble will follow the direction of motion of the left thumb. Without traversing the instrument, center the bubble of the other level by means of the other two leveling screws, readjusting

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

each bubble for any error caused in centering the other. Traverse the instrument 180° and check the level; if a bubble leaves the center, correct one-half of the error by the adjusting screws on the level box and the other half by the proper pair of leveling screws. Repeat the operation until the level bubbles remain centered for any position of the telescope in azimuth.

Q. Explain how to level an instrument with only three leveling screws. *A.* The procedure is the same except that one of the levels is set parallel to any two leveling screws, the other being perpendicular to them. The first level is then centered by means of the two parallel screws and the second by means of the third screw used with each of the others alternately.

Q. What precautions should be taken in leveling? *A.* Have each leveling screw bear firmly but not too tightly on the leveling plate; do not force a screw if it binds but slack off on the opposite screw. Binding of the screws will bend the spindle and make correct leveling of the instrument impossible in the future.

Q. Explain how to focus the eyepiece and remove parallax. *A.*

(1) *Focusing eyepiece.*—Screw the eyepiece in or out until the roughness of the cross wires can be seen most distinctly. This should be done with the telescope pointed at the sky if possible.

(2) *Removal of parallax.*—Parallax is the apparent motion of the cross wire across the image of an object as the eye is moved from side to side across the eyepiece. It is caused by improper focusing of the objective lens. To remove parallax, point the telescope at a distant object and move the objective lens in or out until the cross wire remains on the same point of the image as the eye is moved.

NOTE.—This operation is unnecessary on some types of instruments because they have a fixed focus.

47. Azimuth instruments.—*Q.* What is an azimuth instrument used for? *A.* To measure the azimuth to any point such as a target; and to measure the angular deviation of a splash from a target.

Q. In what units are these angles measured? *A.* In degrees or in mils, depending on the instrument.

Q. How many degrees are there in a circle? How many mils? *A.* Three hundred and sixty degrees; 6,400 mils.

Q. Name the three main parts of an azimuth instrument and state their uses. *A.*

(1) The telescope, which contains the lenses that enable the observer to see distant objects.

(2) The base, which supports the telescope and provides gears for traversing and scales for reading the azimuths.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(3) The tripod, which supports the base.

Q. Where are azimuth instruments generally used? *A.* In base-end stations and spotting stations.

Q. How many men are necessary to operate the instrument? *A.* When determining azimuths, an observer and a reader; when measuring deviations, one man does both jobs.

Q. How are azimuths measured? *A.* The observer tracks the target, keeping the vertical cross wire on the target, until a signal is sounded indicating the end of an observing interval. At that instant he stops traversing the instrument and the reader reads the azimuth indicated. This process is repeated throughout the course.

Q. How are deviations measured? *A.* The observer keeps the cross wire on the target until the splash occurs. The instrument is then held stationary and the angular deviation of the splash is read directly (without using the splash pointer) by means of the deflection scale etched on the reticle. If it is desired to read the deviation of the center of impact of a salvo, the splash pointer is moved to the estimated position of the center of impact and the deviation is read on the deflection scale.

Q. Assuming that the preliminary adjustments have been made, explain how to make the final adjustment of an instrument to read correct azimuths. *A.* With the instrument set at the azimuth of the datum point, loosen the azimuth clamp screw and bring the vertical cross wire on or very nearly on the datum point. Tighten the azimuth clamp screw and bring the vertical cross wire exactly on the datum point by means of the azimuth slow-motion screw. Clamp the azimuth slow-motion screw. Check the adjustment by traversing the instrument away from and back to the datum point several times, checking the readings of the azimuth scale. The orientation should be checked on at least one other known datum point if possible.

Q. What two standard types of azimuth instruments are issued? *A.* The azimuth instruments M1910A1 and M1918.

Q. What are the main differences between them? *A.* The M1910A1 instrument measures angles in degrees and hundredths and cannot be used to measure vertical angles; the M1918 instrument measures angles in mils and can be used to measure vertical angles from −300 to +500 mils.

Q. What is the value of one space on the graduated circle of each? *A.* On the M1910A1 instrument, 1°; on the M1918, 10 mils.

Q. What are the smallest graduations on the index disks? *A.* On the M1910A1 instrument, one one-hundredth of a degree; on the M1918, one-tenth of a mil.

Q. Where are the instruments used? *A.* The M1910A1 instrument

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

is used for all seacoast artillery except the 155-mm guns. The M1918 instrument is used for 155-mm guns.

Q. How is backlash eliminated? *A*. Adjust the worm-box adjusting screw so that there is no play between the worm and the worm gear; adjust the worm adjusting screw until there is no longitudinal play of the worm in its box. The disk crank should turn freely but not too loosely, and there should be some movement of the graduated circle when the graduated disk is turned.

Q. What care should be given the instrument? *A*. It should be kept free from dust and dirt. Both dust and moisture will in time injure the glasses. It should be kept in the case provided for it when not in use. It should be kept properly oiled. Do not touch the lenses with the fingers. Clean the lenses with soft linen or special paper supplied for the purpose. Do not jar the instrument. Keep one eyepiece assembled in the telescope to prevent dust or moisture from collecting on the reticle. Do not turn the leveling screws so that they bear too hard against the leveling plate; too much pressure may bend the spindle. If the screws bind, loosen one screw until they all have a uniform and moderately firm bearing.

Q. Where can detailed descriptions of the azimuth instruments be found? *A*. In the ordnance pamphlets issued with the instruments.

48. Depression position finders, general.—*Q*. What is a D. P. F. used for? *A*. To measure both range and azimuth. It indicates the range on a drum which moves in proportion to the angle the telescope is depressed from the horizontal to the water line of the target.

Q. What adjustments are required on a D. P. F.? *A*.

(1) Leveling.

(2) Focusing the eyepiece.

(3) Removal of parallax.

(4) The range adjustment to correct for tide, curvature, and refraction.

(5) Orientation to read correct azimuths.

NOTE.—On the Swasey D. P. F. the adjustment of "telescope level" is also necessary. This consists of moving the range drum to indicate "telescope level" when the telescope is horizontal.

Q. Describe the adjustments. *A*. All except the range adjustment are similar to those for an azimuth instrument. The range adjustment is as follows:

(1) If the tide is known, set off on the height scale the height of instrument corrected for tide.

(2) Select two datum points, D_1 at a range somewhat longer, and

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

D_s at a range somewhat shorter than the ranges over which it is expected to work.

(3) Set the range drum by normal operation at the range to D_l and traverse the instrument on that point. Bring the horizontal cross wire to the water line by means of the micrometer screw (Swasey) or the compensating screw (M1907 and M1).

(4) Set the range drum by normal operation at the range to D_s and traverse the instrument on D_s. Waterline by changing the height setting by means of the height slide pinion (Swasey) or the adjusting screw (M1907 and M1).

(5) Repeat operations (3) and (4) above until correct range readings can be obtained on both D_l and D_s by normal operation.

Q. Is one range adjustment sufficient? *A.* No. This adjustment should be repeated at intervals, the frequency depending on the extent of the variation in tide and refraction.

49. Depression position finder M1907.—*Q.* What model and class D. P. F. is mounted in your battery station? *A.* Depression position finder M1907, class ———.

Q. Where can a detailed description of this instrument be found? *A.* In ordnance pamphlet issued with the instrument.

Q. What does the class letter of the instrument refer to? *A.* Height of site for which it was designed.

Q. What is the height of your instrument above mean low water? *A.* ——— feet.

Q. In what units is the range read? *A.* Yards.

Q. What is the unit of angular measure? *A.* Degrees.

Q. What is the smallest reading which can be made in azimuth? *A.* One one-hundredth of a degree.

Q. How many eyepieces has the instrument? *A.* Two, a 15-power and a 25-power eyepiece.

Q. What do you mean by power? *A.* By power is meant the ability to magnify; thus 25-power means that the lens of the eyepiece causes the object to appear 25 times as large as it would if the eye only were used.

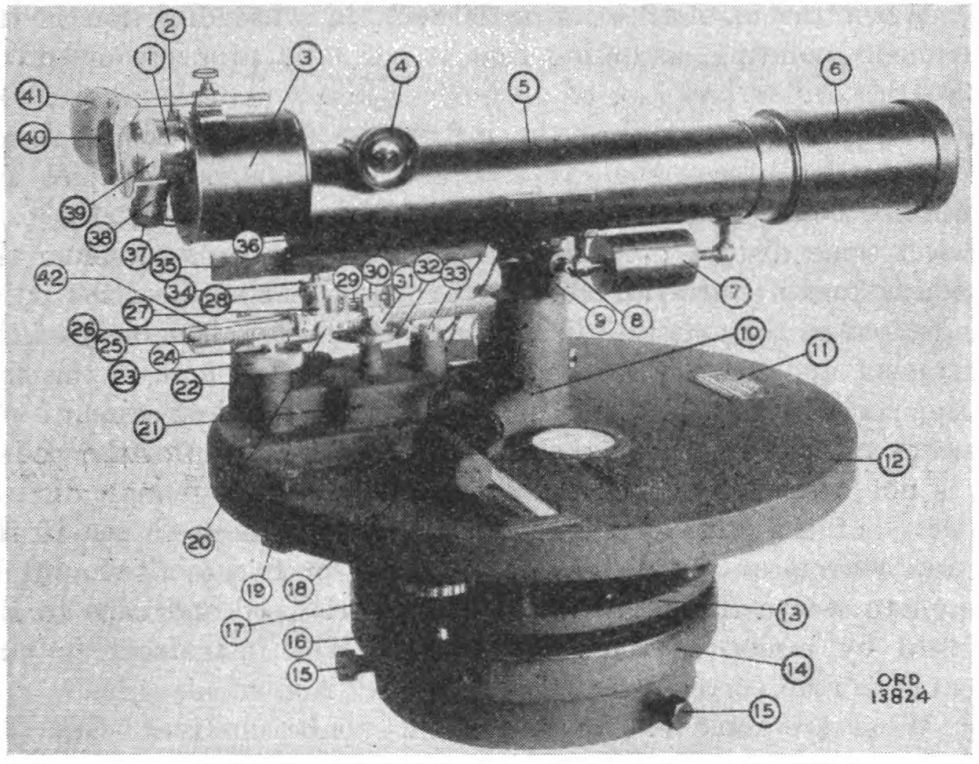
Q. What is the field of view of the instrument? *A.* Using the 25-power eyepiece, the field of view is 2°; using the 15-power eyepiece, the field of view is 3°.

Q. For what height are the range graduations exactly correct? *A.* The graduations on the range dial are exact for one height of instrument only, due allowance being made for curvature of the surface of the sea and normal refraction. This height is known as the initial height. The initial height is usually the height on the height

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

scale which locates the point of the compensating screw in the slide block at a distance of 7 inches from the tangent screw rail.

Q. What is the purpose of the Erdman compensator? *A.* It corrects automatically for errors which are caused by the varying effects of curvature and normal refraction when the instrument is used at any other than the initial height above sea level.



1. Eyepiece adapter.
2. Cross wire adjusting screws.
3. Prism case.
4. Focusing wheel.
5. Telescope tube.
6. Telescope sunshade.
7. Telescope counterweight.
8. Telescope trunnion yoke centers.
9. Telescope trunnion yoke.
10. Azimuth lamp hood.
11. Name plate.
12. Table.
13. Body.
14. Pedestal cap.
15. Pedestal cap screws.
16. Leveling screw sockets.
17. Leveling screws.
18. Range dial lamp hood.
19. Table clamp.
20. Slide block clamping screw.
21. Depression mechanism case.
22. Lamp hood for height scale.
23. Outer sleeve nut.
24. Tangent screw.
25. Tangent screw rail.
26. Compensating bar.
27. Slide block.
28. Set screw.
29. Slide block adjusting screw.
30. Nut block.
31. Nut block clamping screw.
32. Compensating cam.
33. Tangent screw.
34. Compensating screw.
35. Telescope depression bar.
36. Draw tube.
37. Cross wire lamp holder.
38. Cross wire illuminating lamp hood.
39. Regulator for cross wire illumination.
40. Eyepiece.
41. Eye shield.
42. Height scale.

FIGURE 41.—Depression position finder M1907.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What is the shortest range the instrument can indicate? *A.* ——— yards.

Q. What is the longest range the instrument can indicate? *A.* ——— yards.

Q. How may this instrument be converted into another class? *A.* By replacing the present depression mechanism, height scale, and range dial.

Q. When the azimuth reading is zero, in what direction is the instrument pointing, assuming that it has been properly oriented? *A.* South.

Q. Explain how to adjust the instrument in azimuth. *A.* Level the instrument, focus the eyepiece and telescope, and adjust for parallax. To adjust to read correct azimuths—

Select some distant point for which the exact azimuth from the station is known; turn the table until the exact azimuth of the point is indicated on the azimuth dials; clamp the table to the body of the instrument and insert the large pin wrench in the hole in the side of the pedestal cap. Turn the cap until the vertical wire of the telescope coincides with the distant object. As the top of the pedestal is not necessarily level, the movement of the cap may disturb the level of the instrument. Level again and check to see if the vertical wire is on the distant object. One or two trials should be enough to secure this adjustment. Clamp the pedestal caps to the pedestal by means of the three screws. The instrument is now oriented to read correct azimuths.

Q. What are some of the precautions to be observed with this position finder? *A.*

(1) The depression mechanism should not be operated until the height setting has been made.

(2) Stops are provided to prevent an observer from running beyond the maximum or minimum marks on the range dials.

(3) The operator should be careful not to lean his head against the rubber eyeshield when using the instrument, as pressure on the telescope will tend to throw it out of level and cause incorrect range readings.

(4) The sunshade should be kept in place at all times since it is necessary for a proper balance of weight over the depression mechanism.

(5) When the 15-power eyepiece is used, the counterweight should be screwed out as far as possible from the center of the instrument; when the 25-power eyepiece is used, it need not be so far out.

Q. How often is it necessary to oil any part of the instrument? *A.* Every 6 months.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. How is the illumination of the cross wires varied? How brightly should the cross wires be illuminated for night work? *A.* (1) By turning the knurled regulator ring.

(2) Just enough so the wires can be seen.

Q. How do you prevent the glare from sun on the water from dazzling the eye? *A.* Use the amber glass slide.

Q. Suppose the instrument lights should fail, how could the cross wires be illuminated? *A.* By flashlight reflected into the objective lens.

Q. Should the depression mechanism be operated before the height setting has been made? *A.* No.

Q. What device is used to prevent running the range mechanism beyond or below the allowable limits? *A.* Stops are provided to prevent overrunning.

50. Swasey depression position finder.—*Q.* What instrument is mounted in your battery station? *A.* Swasey depression position finder.

Q. Where can a detailed description of the Swasey depression position finder be found? *A.* In ordnance pamphlet issued with the instrument.

Q. Name the principal parts of the instrument. *A.* Telescope, cradle, height slide, range drum shaft, range pointer, attachment for correction of curvature and normal refraction, range drum, azimuth scale, leveling screws, and base.

Q. What is the field of the telescope? *A.* 1.85°.

Q. What is the power of the telescope? *A.* Twelve-power or 20-power, depending on the eyepiece used.

Q. Where is the range drum set when the telescope is level? *A.* To point marked "telescope level" on range drum.

Q. How is the range drum graduated? *A.* Every 10 yards from 12,000 to 1,500; figures engraved every 100 yards from 12,000 to 6,000, every 50 yards from 6,000 to 3,000, and every 20 yards from 3,000 to 1,500.

Q. In what units is the azimuth circle graduated? *A.* Degrees and hundredths, with smallest reading 0.01°.

Q. Describe the lighting system for the instrument. *A.* Illuminated by six lamps, one for each scale, one for the drum, and two for the cross wires; connected in parallel, with a snap switch in the circuit. Wires from electric mains pass into a rheostat which cuts down the current to that required. Stops prevent obtaining enough current to injure the lamps. Fuses are provided in the circuit.

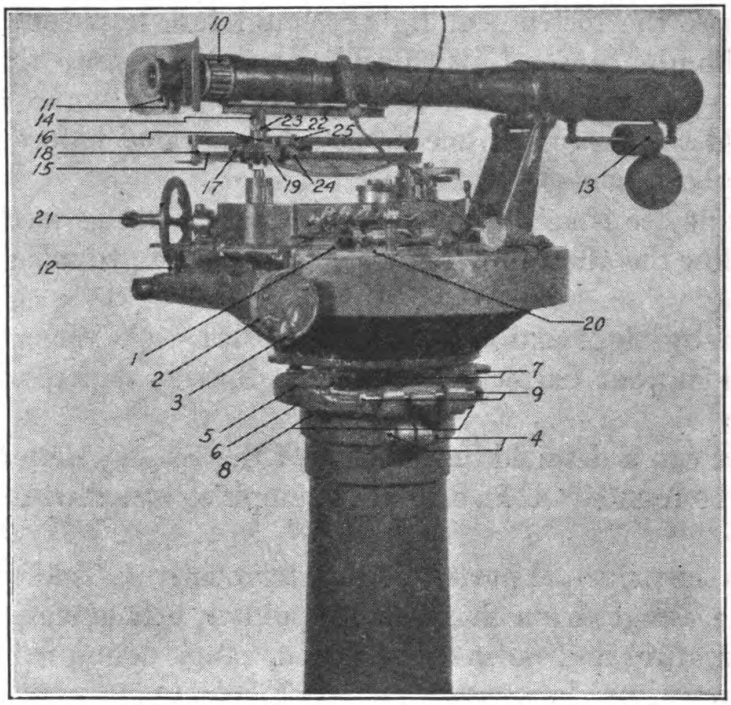
51. Depression position finder M1.—*Q.* Is the depression posi-

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

tion finder M1 operated in the same manner as the Swasey D.P.F. and the Lewis D.P.F.? *A.* Yes.

Q. How do you orient and adjust the D. P. F. M1? *A.*

(1) Set the azimuth scale and the micrometer to the exact azimuth of the datum point by means of azimuth knob.



1. Azimuth scale.
2. Azimuth micrometer.
3. Azimuth handwheel knob.
4. Clamp screw.
5. Leveling plate.
6. Pedestal cap.
7. Leveling screws.
8. Cap screws.
9. Tangent (slow-motion) screws.
10. Power control knob (eyepiece).
11. Ray filter levers.
12. Throw-out lever.
13. Counterbalance.
14. Fulcrum pin.
15. Tangent screw rail.
16. Compensatory screw nut.
17. Height scale index.
18. Height scale.
19. Thumbscrew.
20. Range scale.
21. Range handwheel knob.
22. Thumbscrew.
23. Compensating screw.
24. Thumbscrew.
25. Micrometer screw.

FIGURE 42.—Depression position finder M1.

(2) Loosen the clamp screw and revolve the instrument by grasping the rim of the leveling plate and the pedestal cap until the vertical cross wire of the telescope is approximately on the datum point. Tighten clamp screw.

(3) Level the instrument by means of the four leveling screws.

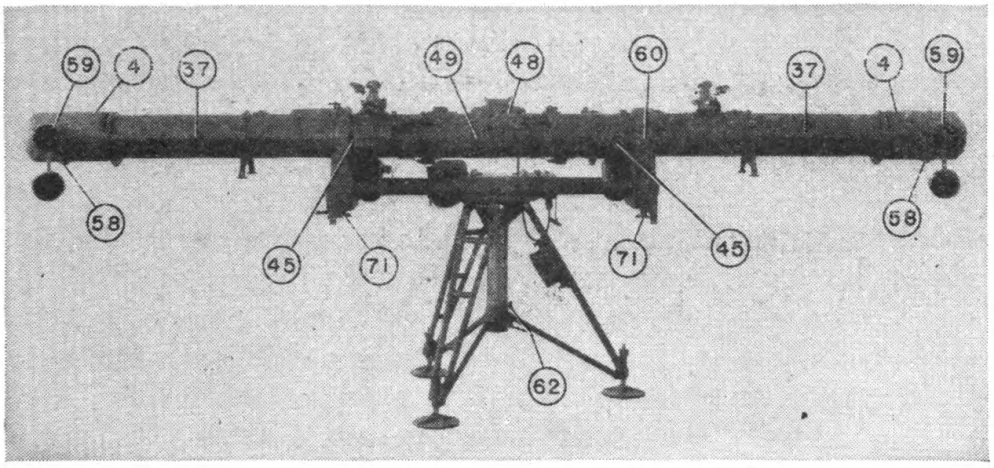
(4) Focus the telescope. A diopter scale is provided for rapid setting of the eyepiece when an observer knows the correct setting for his eye. The power of the telescope can be changed by revolving the

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

power-changing ring until the desired power is indicated on the scale on the ring. Amber and blue ray filters within the telescope can be controlled by levers projecting from the under side of the eyepiece.

(5) Loosen the three cap screws, thus allowing the leveling plate to revolve independently of the pedestal cap by an amount sufficient to bring the vertical cross wire accurately on the datum point by means of the slow-motion adjusting screws. Clamp the three cap screws.

(6) Azimuths can now be determined and read. The whole degrees are read on the azimuth scale which is graduated into three hundred and sixty 1° spaces. The fractions of a degree are read on the micrometer which is graduated into 100 spaces corresponding to a least reading of 0.01°. Rapid changes in azimuth can be made by disengaging the worm from the worm gear by pulling the throw-out lever toward the observer and then revolving the table carrying the telescope by a slight pressure of the hands.



4. End box.
37. Porter bars.
45. Internal adjuster cover plates.
48. Wiring box.
49. Centering plate cover plug.
58. Air valve.
59. Sunshade.
60. Worm gear plate.
62. Sleeve clamp screws.
71. Locking knob.

FIGURE 43.—Stereoscopic height (range) finder M1, front view.

52. Self-contained horizontal base range finders.—*Q.* What different types of range finders are in use? *A.*

(1) Stereoscopic type.

(2) Coincidence type.

Q. What is the adopted standard for seacoast artillery? *A.* The stereoscopic height finder M1, originally designed for AA artillery.

Q. Where can a detailed description of this instrument be found? *A.* In TM 4–250.

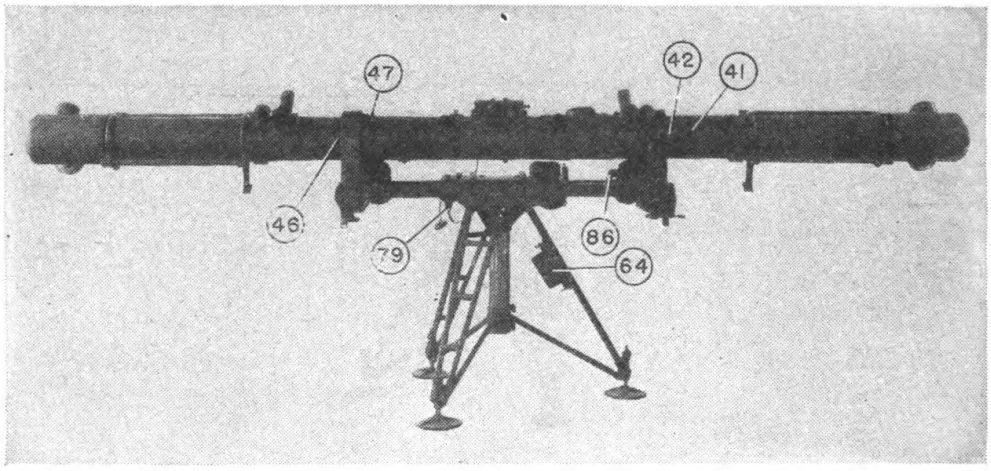
Q. What is meant by a stereoscopic range finder? *A.* An instrument which gives correct ranges when the object sighted appears at

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

the same distance, or depth, as an image or reticle, marked on a lens of the optical system.

Q. What adjustments are necessary when using the stereoscopic range finder? *A.*

(1) Leveling of the instrument.
(2) Orientation of the instrument.
(3) Collimation of trackers' telescopes.
(4) Setting of interpupillary distance.
(5) Selection of magnifying power.
(6) Selection of ray filter.
(7) Focusing of the eyepieces.
(8) Adjustment of the headrest.
(9) Height of image adjustment.
(10) Determination and application of range-corrector setting.
(11) Setting of range height lever.



41. Compensator unit support.
42. Bevel gear cover cap.
46. Elevation index.
47. Main tube level.
64. Eyepiece cover in stand-by position.
79. Tube lighting socket.
86. Orientation clutch.

FIGURE 44.—Stereoscopic height (range) finder M1, rear view.

Q. How many operators are required for the range finder **M1**, and what are they? *A.* Four. Elevation tracker, azimuth tracker, observer, and reader.

Q. Where can a detailed description of the coincidence range finder be found? *A.* In Ordnance Department publications furnished with the instrument.

Q. What is meant by a coincidence range finder? *A.* An instrument which gives correct ranges when the object sighted appears unbroken in both the upper and lower part of the eyepiece.

Q. What adjustments are necessary when using a coincidence range finder? *A.*

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(1) Leveling.
(2) Orientation (when equipped to read azimuths).
(3) Focusing of the eyepiece.
(4) Halving adjustment.
(5) Range (coincidence) adjustment. Adjustments (1) and (2) are the same as for any other observation instruments.

Q. Describe the halving adjustment. *A.* Sight on an object such as a flagpole or spire; move the telescope in elevation until the object is seen only in the lower field; then gradually change the elevation until the image rises to the separating line. If halving is correct, the top of the object will appear above the dividing line at the instant it disappears from the lower field. If the image appears too soon, rotate the halving adjusting knob upward. If the image appears too late, rotate the halving adjustment knob downward.

Q. Describe the range (coincidence) adjustment. *A.* Turn the measuring knob until the scale reads the range to a known object. If the partial images do not coincide, move the correction wedge dial until the partial images coincide (come together). Check at two or more known ranges, and then leave adjustment alone.

Q. When is the astigmatizer used? *A.* At night when observing on small lights.

Q. Describe briefly the operation of the instrument. *A.* The observer and trainer bring the instrument approximately on the target by sighting over it. Thereafter the trainer keeps the instrument on the target and the observer brings the two partial images into coincidence. When coincidence is obtained (not necessarily at any given time interval) the range is read from the range scale.

53. Care and preservation of instruments.—*Q.* May telescopes be taken apart or any adjustment made by battery personnel? *A.* No. The only allowable adjustment is to focus the telescope.

Q. How should telescopes be cared for? *A.* They should be protected from moisture and dust. To obtain satisfactory vision the glasses should be kept perfectly clean and dry. Only such material as is issued by the Ordnance Department specifically for the purpose of cleaning lenses should be used, taking care that the cleaning material does not contain any dirt or grit. Chamois skins must not be used to clean lenses. Finger marks and lint will cause trouble in observation and should be promptly removed from lenses. Care should be taken that no oil comes in contact with lenses or prisms. Care must be taken to avoid shock to the telescopes.

Q. How are position-finding instruments cared for? *A.* These are all delicate instruments and should be handled carefully, avoiding any shock. All exposed steel parts should be protected against

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

rusting by a thin film of oil; all parts subject to friction should be oiled regularly and carefully. Except as otherwise noted, neutral oil is used for the purpose. All instruments should be checked and adjusted frequently by the Ordnance Department if necessary. No *abrasive* is permitted to be used on any part of the instrument by battery personnel.

Q. What special care is to be given the azimuth instrument M1910A1? *A.* An oil hole, closed by an oiler in the base of the yoke, provides a means for lubricating the internal bearings. Vaseline is used for lubricating worms and worm gearings. The opening covered by the spring cover in the rear surface of the body should be kept closed.

Q. How is the depression position finder M1907 cared for? *A.* This instrument should be oiled twice a year paying particular attention to the table center and circular rack bearing surfaces, the unit-degree azimuth dial center, and the compensating screw. Vaseline, slightly thinned with paraffin oil, should be used on the compensating screw.

Q. How are self-contained range finders cared for? *A.* They should be kept in a dry place and covered when not in use. The optical parts of these instruments should be given the same care as telescopes of azimuth instruments and depression position finders.

NOTE.—Instruction and tests or examinations should be as practical as possible. Therefore they should be conducted in the stations where the instruments are to be found. If a man cannot give the exact names of the less prominent parts, he should be considered qualified if he can point to the part under discussion, tell what it is for and how it operates, and give other pertinent information as to care and adjustment.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 9

INSTRUCTION OF MEMBERS OF RANGE SECTION

Paragraph
Requirements 54

54. Requirements.—The candidate should be required to demonstrate practically his ability to instruct one or more members of the range section. General duties of members of the range section are outlined in TM 4–305. Modifications are made in assignments depending upon the plotting-room equipment actually in use.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 10

OBSERVATION

Paragraphs
SECTION I. Observation of fire and application of corrections__ 55–56
II. Spotting boards_____ 57–58
III. General duties of observers in observation posts__ 59

SECTION I

OBSERVATION OF FIRE AND APPLICATION OF CORRECTIONS

Paragraph
Observation of fire_____ 55
Application of corrections_____ 56

55. Observation of fire.—*Q.* What is spotting? *A.* The process of determining deviations or sensings for use in adjustment of fire.

Q. What is spotting by sensing? *A.* Locating the position of a splash from the target, in sense only, as over or short, right or left. This method of spotting is used with the bracketing method of adjustment.

Q. What is spotting by sense and magnitude? *A.* Finding the direction and distance of a splash from the target, as so many yards over or short, so many mils (or hundredths of a degree) right or left. This method of spotting is used with the magnitude method of adjustment.

Q. What are the two general methods of spotting? *A.*

(1) Terrestrial.

(2) Aerial.

Q. What are the two classes of terrestrial spotting systems? *A.*

(1) Where two instruments some distance apart are used (two-station or bilateral).

(2) Where one instrument or station is used (single-station).

Q. Classify the spotting systems, using only one spotting station. *A.* The systems are called—

(1) Axial if the angle battery-target-station is less than 5°.

(2) Unilateral if this angle is between 5° and 75°.

(3) Flank if this angle is more than 75°.

Q. In axial spotting what effect does height of site have on the accuracy of range sensings? *A.* Increasing the height of site should increase the accuracy of range sensings by making the relative positions of target and splash more easily seen.

Q. What deviations can be determined by axial spotting? By flank spotting? *A.*

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(1) Axial spotting can be used to determine the magnitude of lateral deviations and the sense of range deviations. If the height of site is great enough, the magnitude of the range deviation can be determined by using a depression position finder.

(2) Flank spotting can be used to determine the sense of the range deviations.

Q. Can the stereoscopic range finder be used as a spotting instrument? *A.* Yes. Its use will greatly facilitate axial spotting.

Q. Explain briefly bilateral spotting. *A.* Two instruments are used, one at each end of a base line. The angular deviation of the impact (or center of impact) from the target as seen from each station is read by the observer. These deviations are set into a graphical spotting board and the range and lateral deviations with respect to the battery are read from it.

Q. On what part of the splash should a spotting observer read? *A.* On the side of the splash toward the guns.

Q. If two or more batteries are firing at the same time, how may a spotting observer be helped in identifying splashes? *A.* By the chief spotter telling him when a shot is fired and calling "Splash" at the end of the time of flight.

Q. Why should fire be observed whenever possible? *A.* The presence of systematic errors may result in the center of impact being off the target. In observed fire this can be corrected for by introducing adjustment corrections to obtain the maximum probability of hitting.

56. Application of corrections.—*Q.* What is the purpose of adjustment of fire? *A.* To place the center of dispersion on the target and keep it there.

Q. What is a probable error? *A.* The error which is as likely as not to be exceeded. A value which will in the long run be exceeded half the time and not be exceeded half the time.

Q. What is a fork? *A.* Four probable errors. For example, if the probable error is 50 yards, then a fork would be 200 yards.

Q. What is trial fire? *A.* Usually four shots fired with the object of obtaining a correction which will cause the target to be within three probable errors of the center of dispersion.

Q. What is fire for effect? *A.* Fire for the purpose of obtaining destructive effect on the target by placing the center of dispersion on the target and keeping it there. It should follow the trial fire with as little delay as possible.

Q. What methods of trial fire may be used? *A.*

(1) Ranging salvos at the target with corrections applied after

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

the last salvo based on the center of impact of all salvos. (A correction may be applied after the first salvo if its center of impact is more than two gun probable errors from the target.)

(2) Single ranging shots at the target with corrections based on the center of impact of all shots, applied after the last shot.

(3) Single ranging shots at the target, with a correction applied after the last shot if the deviation of that shot is more than three probable errors of the target; and a final correction based on the average of all deviations, taking into consideration any correction applied during the firing of the trial shots.

(4) Four shots fired with the same data at a fixed point in the water with corrections based on the center of impact of all shots, applied after the last shot.

(5) Bracketing method. Fire by salvos or single shots until a bracket of one fork has been obtained.

Q. Explain the method used in your battery for adjusting fire in direction. *A.* ———.

Q. What are the two methods of adjustment of fire for range? *A.*

(1) Magnitude method. (When the amount and sense of the deviation are known.)

(2) Bracketing method. (When the sense only of the deviation is known.)

Q. What is meant by stripped deviation? *A.* The deviation which would have occurred had no adjustment correction been applied, and had there been no personnel errors.

Q. What is meant by stripped center of impact? *A.* The algebraic mean of the stripped deviations.

Q. What is the standard fire-adjustment board? *A.* Fire-adjustment board M1. (See fig. 45.)

Q. What does this board accomplish? *A.* It provides means of plotting stripped deviations, of determining quickly the stripped center of impact, and of determining the proper adjustment correction. It provides also a permanent record of the adjustment.

Q. What instrument is used to apply the adjustment correction determined on the fire-adjustment board? *A.* The percentage corrector.

Q. Explain the operation of the fire-adjustment board M1. *A.*

(1) A piece of cross-section paper (10 divisions to the inch) is fastened to the board so that the horizontal lines are parallel to the edge of the T-square. Every tenth vertical line—that is, each whole percent line—is numbered each way from the center, 300, 290, 280, etc., to the left and 310, 320, etc., to the right. Numbers should

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

be placed at the top and should be repeated on horizontal lines about every 2 inches below the top. Time is plotted vertically to any convenient scale, or shots or salvos may be plotted vertically at equal intervals. Except where fired with different adjustment corrections, all trial shots are usually plotted on the same horizontal line.

(2) To begin the adjustment bring the reading edge of the scale on the T-square just below the horizontal line on which the trial shots are to be plotted, with the normal of the scale (300) on the 300 line of the chart. (Until an adjustment correction is made, the 300 line of the chart is the "line of targets" and the scale is not absolutely necessary.) Each correction of the trial shots (or trial salvo) received in reference numbers from the spotting board is plotted with a cross (X). A center of impact of four shots is indicated by a small circle (o). A check mark is made to indicate the center of impact of the trial shots and the adjustment correction is read from the chart at the top of the chart or at the nearest set of numbers above the check mark. It is sent to the percentage corrector where it is applied on the adjustment correction scale. The amount of the correction ordered is written above the check mark. A new line of targets is drawn downward below this check mark at the proper place and the 300 mark on the scale is then brought to this new line. A horizontal line may be drawn to connect the old line of targets with the new line.

(3) When fire for effect begins, the operator checks off with an (S) each salvo as fired. With the normal of the scale on the line of targets he plots with a cross (X) on the proper horizontal line each correction received. (A center of impact of four shots is indicated by a small circle.) If a new correction is made after the impacts of the first shots (or the salvos comprising them) have been plotted, the normal of the scale is brought to the center of impact of both trial fire and fire for effect, and the new correction is read from the nearest scale on chart. (Under certain conditions trial fire is not considered.) If some crosses indicate single impacts and others indicate salvos, this fact must be considered in giving them weight in determining the position of the center of impact. Crosses for impacts of salvos are marked with an exponent equal to the number of shots in the salvo. As soon as the correction is ordered a check mark ($\surd$) is made at the proper position and the amount of the correction ordered is written above it. As soon as an elevation or range carrying this correction is transmitted to the guns the percentage corrector operator reports, "Correction applied." The group of impacts on which a correction is based is indicated by a bracket. From a consideration of the salvos fired a horizontal mark on the side of the chart is made,

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

indicating the salvo on which the correction is applied. A new line of targets is then drawn downward beneath the check mark and the normal (300) of the scale is brought to this line for plotting of the next shots.

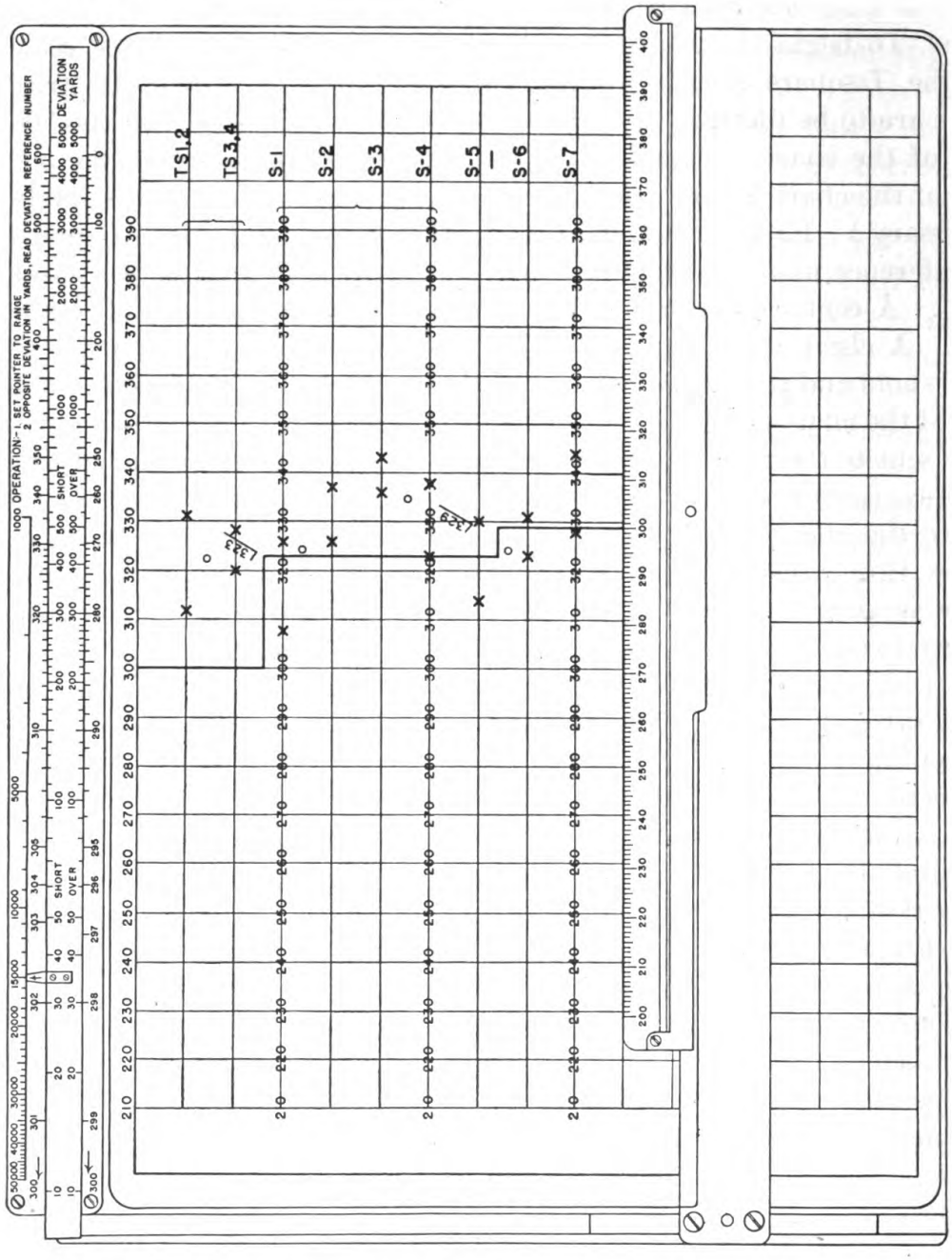


FIGURE 45.—Fire-adjustment board M1.

(4) This procedure is continued throughout the firing, additional corrections being made to keep the line of targets on the center of impact of the preceding shots.

(5) If deviations are received in yards, as in aerial spotting, the

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

slide rule at the top of the board is used to convert these deviations into reference numbers. The slide is moved until the arrow is at the range to the set-forward point for that particular shot or salvo. Opposite the deviation in yards is read the proper reference number for use in plotting that shot or salvo.

Q. What indicates the corrections applied? *A.* The line of targets indicates the magnitude of the correction and the salvos on which each was applied. The correction is positive (greater than 300) if it is to the right of the axis of correction, and negative if to the left.

Q. What indicates the actual deviations? *A.* The distance from any cross (X) to the line of targets indicates the magnitude of the deviation, short if the cross is to the right of this line, and over if to the left.

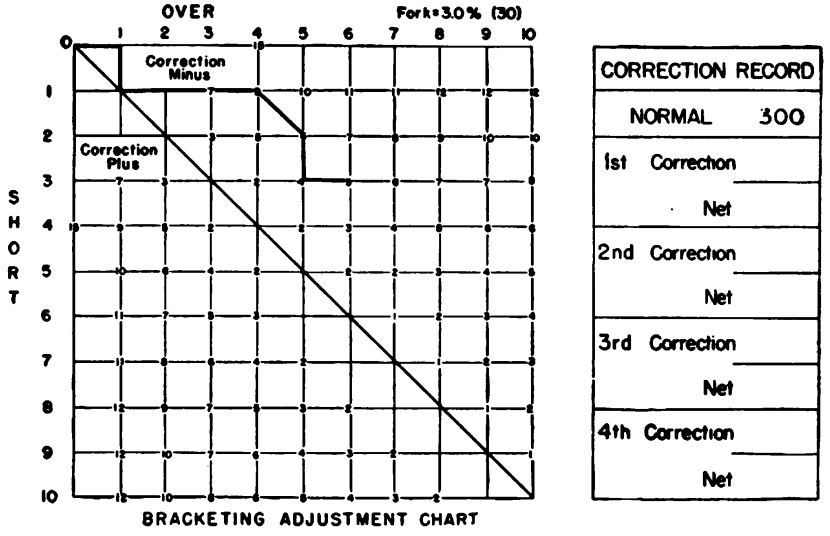


FIGURE 46.—Bracketing adjustment chart, grid type.

Q. What indicates the stripped deviation? *A.* The distance from any plotted deviation (X) to the 300 line of the chart measures the stripped deviation of the impact, short if the cross is to the right of this line, and over if to the left.

Q. What is the over-short adjustment rule? *A.* It is the rule followed in adjusting fire by the bracketing method. The correction applied is found by taking the difference between the "overs" and "shorts" divided by twice the number of shots, times one fork.

$$\frac{S-O}{2(S+O)} \times \text{fork} = \text{correction.}$$

Q. How can this rule be applied rapidly and accurately? *A.* By using a bracketing adjustment chart.

Q. Explain the use of the bracketing adjustment chart, grid type. *A.* The operator using the chart starts with a heavy or colored pencil

Digitized by Google
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

at the upper left-hand corner. The first sensing being an "over," he draws the line horizontally one square. The next being a "short," he continues downward one division. The next three being sensed as "over," the line is continued three divisions to the right. The next shot was a "hit" and the line is drawn diagonally across the next square because a hit is counted as both an "over" and a "short." A "short" and an "over" bring the line to the intersection of "over" 6 and "short" 3, and the correction "minus" 5 (5 percent) is indicated. If this correction is to be sent to the percentage corrector, it must be

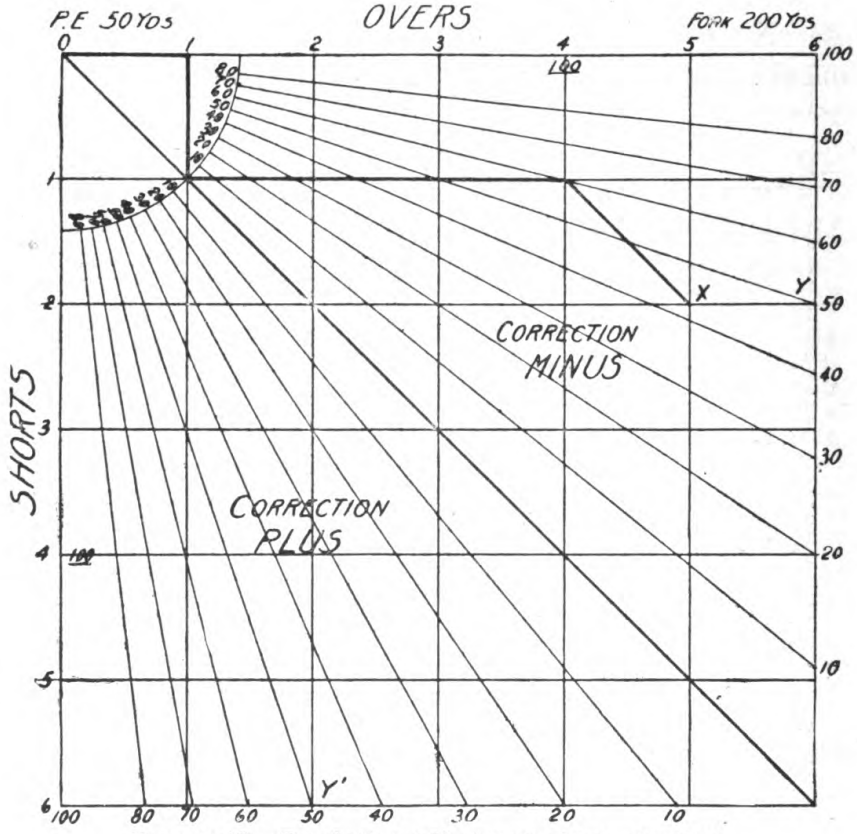


FIGURE 47.—Bracketing adjustment chart, ray type.

converted to reference numbers by adding algebraically to 300. This computation is made and the record of corrections is kept conveniently on the correction record at the right of the chart. The correction would thus be 300−5=295, which would be set on the adjustment correction scale of the percentage corrector. The operator waits until he is certain that shots are falling carrying the ordered correction and then starts a new graph with a new chart or with a pencil of another color. The next correction indicated would be added algebraically to 295, the previous correction.

Q. Explain the use of the ray type of bracketing adjustment chart.

A. This chart is operated in a similar manner to that used to operate

Digitized by Google
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

the grid type chart. Instead of numbered intersections (as in the grid type), rays are used to indicate the corrections in yards in the desired amounts. The value of the correction corresponding to a particular intersection is determined by noting the ray that presses closest to the intersection (or by interpolating between the two closest rays).

SECTION II

SPOTTING BOARDS

Paragraph
General 57
Spotting board M2 58

57. General.—*Q.* What is the purpose of a spotting board? *A.* To determine the amount the splash is over or short and right or left of the target.

Q. What use is made of the data determined on a spotting board? *A.* It is used as a basis for adjustment of fire.

Q. What spotting boards may be found in service? *A.* M2, M3 (recently adopted but not yet extensively issued), Gray, and Cole spotting boards.

NOTE.—In addition to the general questions contained in this paragraph, the candidate will be instructed in the use of the particular spotting board in use in the battery. If the board used is the M2 board described in paragraph 58, that paragraph will be used; if not, questions of a similar scope will be used to cover the particular board in use.

58. Spotting board M2.—*Q.* Describe the orientation of the spotting board M2. *A.*

(1) See that the proper scales are inserted in the target range scale (C) and the spotting platens (J).

(2) See that the proper sides of the deviation grid (B) and deviation disks (L) are up. (The proper side of the deviation grid is the one marked "range deviation percent." The proper side of each deviation disk is the side marked "degrees." The other side of the grid and the other sides of the two disks are no longer used, they having been graduated for use with a method of fire adjustment now obsolete.

(3) See that the scales on the deviation grid are properly graduated. The numbers on the longitudinal scale should increase from the normal toward the lower end (orienting disk end) of the board and decrease from the normal toward the upper end. The numbers on the lateral scale should increase to the left (as seen by a person facing the board at the lower end) and decrease to the right of the normal. If the numbers engraved on the grid are contrary to this,

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

they should be covered with adhesive tape or paper and the scales should be remarked. Further, the words "range deviation" appearing on the longitudinal scale of the grid should be changed to "range correction"; and the words "left" and "right" appearing on the lateral

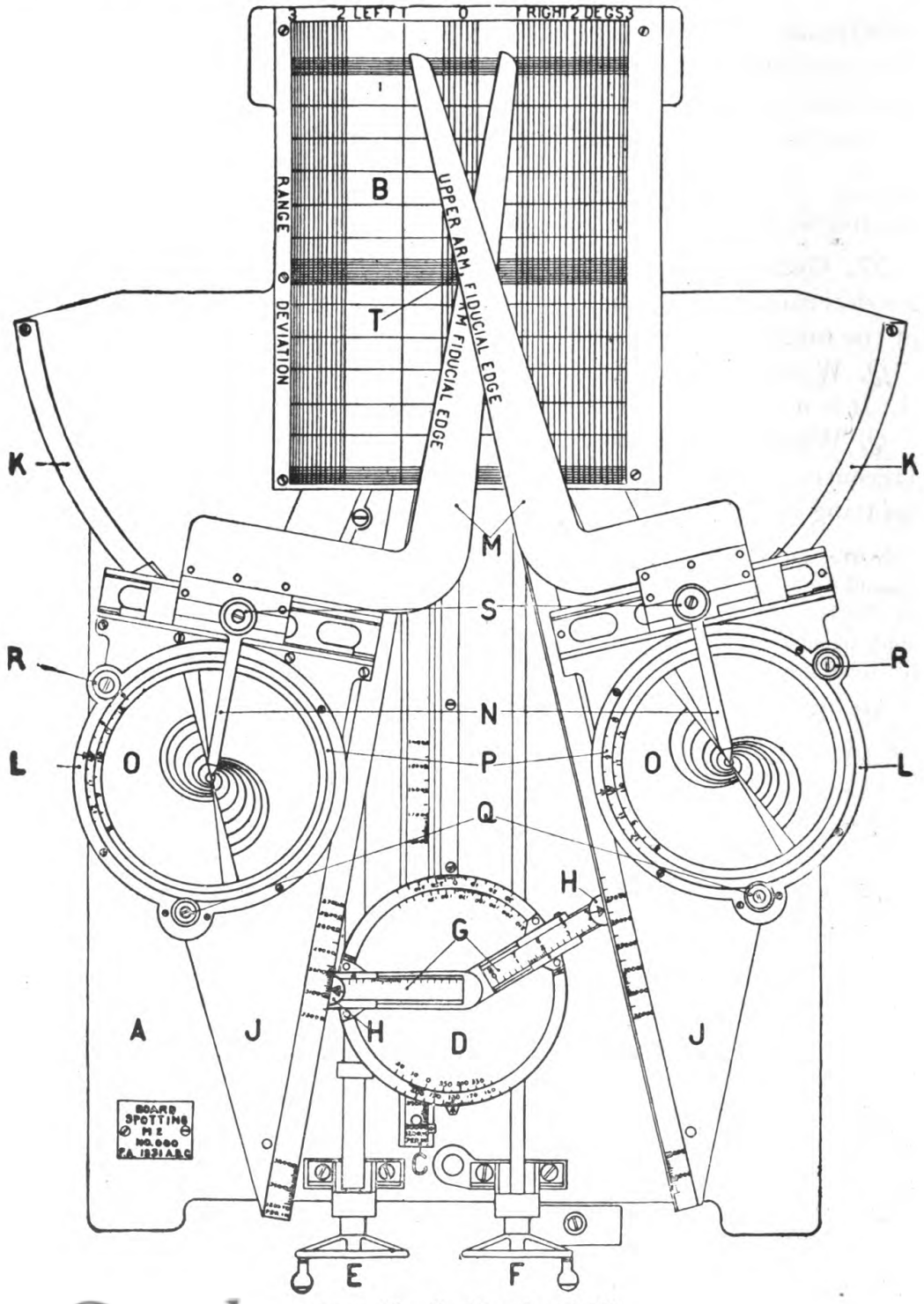


FIGURE 48.—Spotting board M2.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

scale should be covered and that scale should be marked "lateral corrections."

(4) Convert the distances from the directing point of the battery to each spotting station into inches at the scale of the board. (The graduations on the station arms are in inches.)

(5) Loosen the clamp screws holding the station arms (G) in position and set each station to its proper distance in inches from the directing point.

(6) Turn each station arm until its index reads (on the inner azimuth circle of the orienting disk (D)) the azimuth from the directing point to that spotting station. Tighten clamp screws.

(7) By turning the range and azimuth handwheels (E) and (F), the indices of the orienting disk are made to read the range and azimuth of any target in the field of fire. The board then represents, to scale in their proper relative positions, the target, the directing point, and each spotting station. The index on each station targ (H) indicates on the range scale of each spotting platen (J) the range from that station to the target.

Q. How many operators are required to operate the spotting board M2? What are their duties? *A.* Two operators. One operator sets the uncorrected range to the set-forward point and operates the left-hand deviation disk. He is connected by telephone to the corresponding spotting station. The other operator sets the azimuth to the set-forward point, operates the right-hand deviation disk, and reads the corrections. He is connected to the other spotting station by telephone.

Q. In what units are readings made? *A.* Range corrections are read in percent (by reference numbers) and direction corrections in degrees and hundredths (by reference numbers).

Q. Explain in detail the operation of the spotting board M2. *A.*

(1) See that the deviation grid (B) and the deviation disks (L) are set with the proper faces up.

(2) Keep the orienting disk (D) set to the uncorrected range and azimuth to the set-forward point as determined on the plotting board.

(3) Set the gun range ring (P) on each deviation disk (L) to read the range from the directing point to the target.

(4) Set the range scale on the inner plate (O) of each deviation disk (L) to the range from that station to the target as shown by the reading of each station targ (H) on the spotting platen range scales.

(5) Set each deviation pointer (N) to the curve corresponding to the splash reading reported by the spotting observer at that station.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(6) On the grid (B) read the range and lateral correction indicated by the intersection of the deviation arms (M).

Q. How may the "zero" of the deviation pointers (N) be checked? *A.* Set the deviation arms (M) to indicate the zero range and lateral correction on the grid (B). The deviation pointers (N) should be at the center, or zero, of the curves on the inner plate (O).

Q. When the spotting board M2 has been oriented, how may it be checked to assure that it is functioning properly? *A.* Make a check with previously computed data as follows:

(1) Set the orienting disk (D) to the range and azimuth of the selected check point.

(2) Set the gun range ring (P) on each deviation disk (L) to read the range from the directing point to the check point.

(3) Set the range scale on the inner plate (O) of each deviation disk (L) to the range from the station to the check point as shown by the reading of each station targ (H) on the spotting platen range scales.

(4) Set each deviation pointer (N) to the curve corresponding to the splash readings selected.

(5) The deviation arms (M) should indicate on the grid (B) the correct range and lateral corrections for the selected conditions as computed arithmetically.

SECTION III

GENERAL DUTIES OF OBSERVERS IN OBSERVATION POSTS

Paragraph
Duties of observers 59

59. Duties of observers.—*Q.* What is the purpose of an observer? *A.* To observe and report all enemy activity.

Q. When is a report made concerning enemy activity? *A.* As soon as observed.

Q. What record is kept in an observation post? *A.* Observer's report.

Q. What is done with this report? *A.* It is sent to the unit commander at times specified.

Q. What are the general duties of an observer in seacoast artillery? *A.*

(1) Obtains definite information as to the location of the observation post, and at least one reference point, in order to orient the instruments.

(2) Has charge of his observation post, all apparatus therein,

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

readers and all other personnel assigned, and is responsible for the condition of all apparatus, and that the readers are proficient in their duties.

(3) Reports promptly any enemy activity observed.

(4) During drill or action, observes the location of any target indicated to him and sees that information as to the azimuth and movements of the target is promptly transmitted to the plotting room, and when necessary, to the battery commander's station.

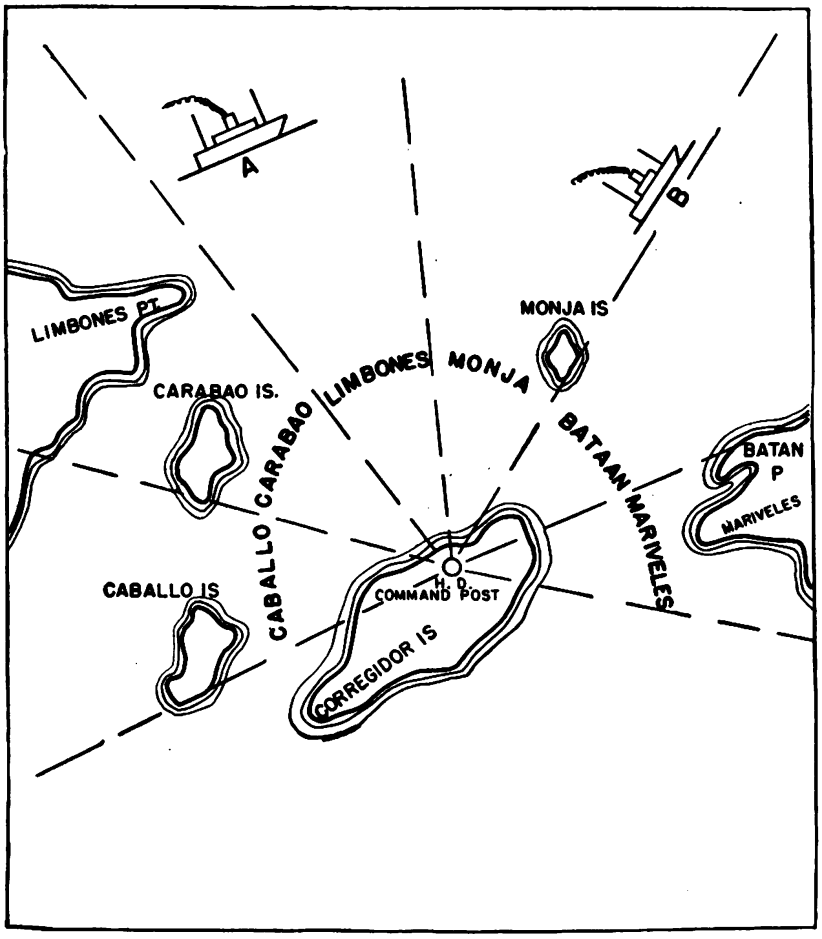


FIGURE 49.—Subdivision of harbor defense water area.

(5) When it is necessary to maintain a continuous watch for the enemy, he sees that the man on watch is properly instructed as to his duties, that reliefs are made at stated intervals, and that suitable provision is made for meals and rest.

Q. What should the man on watch at an observation post report? *A.* Any indication of enemy activity, whether sounds, lights, a smoke screen, or movements of vessels. Any vessel seen should be reported, with its location, its apparent course and speed, any description which will aid in identifying it, and the time of the

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

observation. As far as possible, the same information will be given as to aircraft over the area of observation from that post.

Q. Why is it necessary to identify approaching aircraft? *A.* So that friendly troops will not be needlessly disturbed if the aircraft is friendly, and so that if hostile aircraft is approaching, warning can be given by means of a flash message.

Q. How may the general position of a naval or aerial target be indicated? *A.* In the case of a naval target, the water area adjacent to a harbor defense is organized into subdivisions and each subdivision given a name. In the case of an aerial target, the entire area (360°) is divided into sectors.

Q. How does an observer indicate the location of a target? *A.* He may locate it according to the water area or sector as seen from his post, giving direction of movement, and in the case of an aerial target, the altitude (high, medium, or low); by giving the azimuth and range to the target; or, when a grid system is used, by designating the grid square in which the target is operating.

Q. Where does the observer get the information as to the division of the areas which he is required to observe? *A.* Each observation station should be furnished with a map or chart showing the subdivisions of the area. The chart should be kept oriented.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 11

TARGET PRACTICE

Paragraphs
SECTION I. Preparation for subcaliber and service practice--- 60-61
II. Preparation of records and reports; analysis of drill and target practice---------- 62

SECTION I

PREPARATION FOR SUBCALIBER AND SERVICE PRACTICE

Paragraph
Preliminary preparation---------- 60
Safety precautions---------- 61

60. Preliminary preparation.—*Q.* What preparations are made for subcaliber firing? *A.*

(1) Clean and adjust the breech mechanism.
(2) Test the firing mechanism.
(3) Test the firing circuit.
(4) Examine and test all primers to be used.
(5) Install and adjust the subcaliber tube.
(6) Have the hand extractor and short lanyard ready for use.
(7) Attach the subcaliber platform if necessary.
(8) Oil and check the elevating and traversing mechanism.
(9) Check and adjust the sight (or azimuth circle) and quadrant (or range drum).
(10) Prepare the subcaliber ammunition.
(11) Prepare the sponging solution.

Q. What preparations are made for service firing? *A.*

(1) Clean and adjust the breech mechanism.
(2) Test the firing mechanism and all safety features on the gun.
(3) Test the electric firing circuit.
(4) Examine and test all primers to be used.
(5) Clean and examine the bore and powder chamber.
(6) Oil and check the elevating and traversing mechanisms and all gears and bearing surfaces.
(7) Check the recoil and recuperator mechanisms, filling them if necessary. Check all valve settings.
(8) Prepare and check all equipment used in the service of ammunition. If shot trucks are used, see that the buffers are adjusted and that all wheels have tires.
(9) Check and adjust the sight (or azimuth circle) and quadrant (or range drum).
(10) Prepare the service ammunition.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(11) Prepare the sponging solution.

(12) Have an extra lanyard ready for use.

Q. How are the safety features of the firing mechanism tested? *A.*

(1) Translate the breechblock into the breech recess.

(2) Insert a service primer into the primer seat and lower the leaf.

(3) Attach a lanyard and put a steady pull of about 40 pounds on it.

(4) Slowly rotate the breechblock until it is closed. The primer should not fire until the block is completely rotated, or until the rotating crank passes a previously located mark indicating that the block is just short of the closed position.

Q. How is the electric firing circuit tested? *A.* By inserting a test light in the primer seat and operating the firing magneto.

Q. What test of the electric firing circuit of a primer should be made? *A.* None by the battery personnel. When primers are drawn from the ordnance officer it should be ascertained that they have been tested by ordnance personnel for continuity of circuit and for resistance.

Q. How is the primer tested by battery personnel? *A.*

(1) See that the primer is clean and not corroded. Put a thin film of oil on the outside of the primer body.

(2) Insert the primer into the primer seat. Rotate it to see that it turns easily. It should fit snugly without looseness or binding.

(3) Lower the leaf.

(4) Raise the leaf and catch the extracted primer. It should come out easily.

Q. What is wrong if all primers fit loosely? *A.* The primer seat is worn and should be replaced.

Q. What must be done before tripping a gun on a disappearing carriage? *A.*

(1) Remove the drip pans and covers.

(2) See that the recoil cylinders are full and plugs are tightened.

(3) See that retracting cables are not hooked to the gun.

61. Safety precautions.—*Q.* What safety precautions must be taken in handling powder charges? *A.*

(1) On cannon not equipped with gas ejectors the powder chamber will be sponged with a wet sponge after each shot.

(2) On cannon equipped with gas ejectors the use of a wet sponge is not required, but a new projectile will not be inserted until the bore has been inspected and announced clear. The bore will not be announced clear unless the chamber is clear of smouldering fragments, and in addition—

(*a*) By day, until daylight can be seen through the bore.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(*b*) By night, until the bore is clear of flame or luminous gases.

(3) The powder charge for any given round will not be brought near the breech until the preceding round has been fired, and—

(*a*) On cannon not equipped with gas ejectors, until the wet chamber sponge has been withdrawn from the breech.

(*b*) On cannon equipped with gas ejectors, until the bore has been announced clear.

(4) The powder charge will be inserted into the powder chamber so that it will be pushed into place by the mushroom head when the breech is closed.

Q. What safety precautions must be taken regarding handling primers? Lanyards? Pointing? *A*.

(1) Primers must not be inserted until after the breechblock is completely closed and locked in its recess.

(2) The lanyard will not be hooked until the piece has been given sufficient elevation to clear any mask in front of it, except on a disappearing carriage.

(3) For target practices, a safety pointing observer is required at each gun. No firing should be permitted unless he is at his post.

Q. If, during a target practice, the command "Cease firing" is given after a piece is loaded and ready to fire, what action is taken? *A*. Except when a misfire has occurred, the primer and powder charge should be removed from the gun. If this is not done, the piece should be kept pointed at a safe part of the field of fire.

Q. When firing high explosive shell in time of peace, what safety precautions are required? *A*. All persons at the emplacement must take cover in the place designated, before the piece is fired, unless the ammunition is equipped with bore-safe features.

Q. If firing becomes unsafe, who may stop it? *A*. Any person in the military service who observes the danger.

Section II

PREPARATION OF RECORDS AND REPORTS; ANALYSIS OF DRILL AND TARGET PRACTICE

Paragraph
Records, reports, and analysis 62

62. Records, reports, and analysis.—*Q*. What is meant by analysis of drill? *A*. It is the process of making a check of all records kept during drill, a replot of the course of the target, and a check of operation of all plotting room instruments.

Q. Why is analysis of drill conducted? *A*. To find personnel errors and to eliminate them.

Q. What is the purpose of record firing? *A*. To train the battery

Digitized by Google
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

for battle, and to determine the proficiency of the battery and performance of the matériel.

Q. What is a target practice report? *A.* It is a complete report of the practice, containing records of all data used, records of all spotters, corrections applied, and deviation of all shots.

Q. How are records of the data kept in step during a practice? *A.* By periodic announcements from the plotter, "Next bell time ———," and by making a check opposite data on which a shot is fired.

Q. Show in detail how to keep the record of the work in the plotting room, explaining the use of all forms. *A.* ———.

Q. What is the first step in analysis of record practice? *A.* Collect all records from data-board recorders and recorders in the range section, and cross-check them.

Q. What is next done? *A.* Replot the course on the plotting board, using a clean sheet of paper or covering the original plot with tracing cloth.

Q. What record kept by an official is necessary to complete the replot, and how is it used? *A.* The report of "Azimuth of Target at Instant of Splash." It is kept by an officer stationed at or near the directing point of the battery. The azimuths shown are laid off so that they intersect the course. These intersections represent the true positions of the target at the instants of splash.

Q. What data are obtained from the replot? *A.* The uncorrected range to the target and the angle gun-target-tug for each shot or salvo.

Q. What is a tabular analysis? *A.* A form which includes data and computations pertaining to the practice, consisting of uncorrected range for each shot, ballistic corrections which should have been applied, BC corrections, true and spotted deviations, total battery errors, spotting errors, and DAPE of the guns for the practice.

Q. From what sources are the various data for the tabular analysis obtained? *A.*

(1) *Line 2.*—Ranges obtained from the replot.

(2) *Line 3.*—Ballistic corrections which should have been applied by reoperation of the range correction board using ranges of line 2.

(3) *Line 5.*—BC correction actually ordered from record of adjustment board.

(4) *Line 7.*—Range at which piece was actualy laid from display-board record, as checked by pointing checker.

(5) *Line 9.*—Range deviation of splash. (Line 14 of Form No. 26.)

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(6) *Line 16.*—Spotted deviations from spotting board record.

(7) *Other lines.*—Filled in by computations on the form.

Q. How are the actual range deviations of the splash from the target determined? *A.* From computations made on Target Practice Form No. 26.

Q. What data are necessary for computations on Form No. 26, and where are they obtained? *A.*

(1) Record of lateral deviations from officer detailed as lateral observer.

(2) Record of range deviations from the tug officer.

(3) Record of gun-target-tug angles as read from the replot.

(4) The length of towline, from the tug officer.

(5) Certain tabular values from regulations governing target practices, as required by Form No. 26.

Q. How is the record of range deviations obtained? *A.* By photographing each shot from the tug, then measuring on the film and computing the deviation; or by using the range rake readings and computing the deviations in case no photograph is obtained.

Q. When it is not possible to distinguish the separate shots in a salvo, how are the range and lateral deviations matched? *A.* The greatest range deviation is matched with the greatest lateral deviation, the next greatest range deviation with the next greatest lateral deviation, and so on.

Q. What is a graphical analysis? *A.* A drawing showing in detail the important features of the practice. In addition, the graphical analysis form contains spaces at the top for data which are required by the Chief of Coast Artillery, and for recording the score. The back of the form contains spaces for computing the score, and for recording comparisons of spotting when both air and terrestrial spotting are used.

Q. How are target-practice forms disposed of? *A.* All data sheets, the replot, plot of impacts, forms furnished by officials, camera records, and tabular analysis are retained in the battery for 1 year and then destroyed. The retained copies of graphical analysis, matériel and powder report, indorsements concerning the target-practice report, and record of subcaliber firings, are kept as a permanent record in the emplacement book.

Q. What is a matériel and powder report? When is one made? *A.* A record of performance of the guns for a practice; record of powder, projectiles, fuzes, and primers used; meteorological message; and number of rounds fired from each gun. It is rendered for each practice fired.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 12

SEARCHLIGHTS

Paragraphs
SECTION I. Fixed searchlight apparatus (seacoast)---------- 63–66
II. Mobile searchlight apparatus (AA and seacoast)-- 67–74
III. Troubles and remedies---------- 75–79
IV. Sound-locator apparatus---------- 80–84
V. Tactical employment of AA searchlight section---- 85–86

SECTION I

FIXED SEARCHLIGHT APPARATUS (SEACOAST)

Paragraph
General---------- 63
Lamp mechanism---------- 64
Distant electric control---------- 65
Power supply unit---------- 66

63. General.—*Q.* What are the four general parts of a harbor defense fixed searchlight unit? *A.* The searchlight unit consists of—

(1) Searchlight barrel (or projector).
(2) Lamp mechanism.
(3) Distant electric control.
(4) Power supply unit.

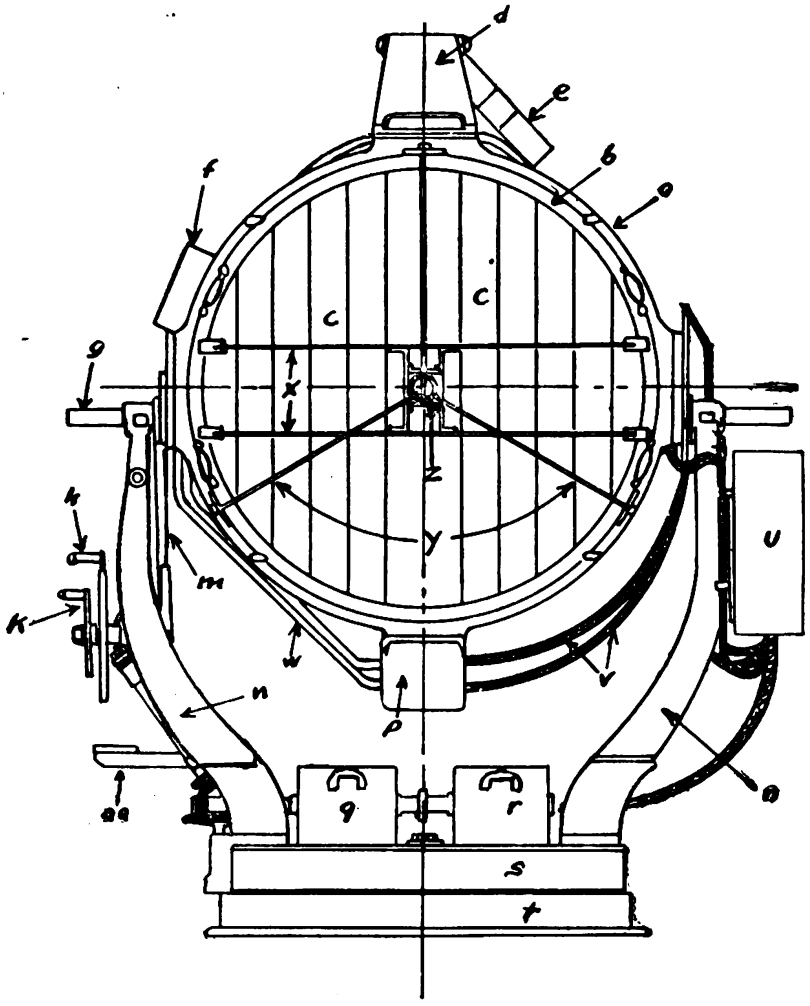
Q. Describe the characteristics of the fixed searchlight. *A.* This is a 60-inch light possessing the following characteristics:

(1) High-intensity arc.
(2) Class parabolic mirror.
(3) Ventilating system which exhausts the gases formed by the burning of the carbons.
(4) A base which allows the light to be mounted on a fixed foundation, on an elevator platform, in a tower, or on a railroad car. (The last three allow the light to be given daytime protection.)

Q. How does the high-intensity arc function in this light? *A.* The incandescent ball of vapor, which forms the source of light in a high-intensity arc, is derived from the rare earths, cerium and lanthanum, which are mixed in the soft core of the positive carbon. When these rare earths are fused in the arc by the high current through the carbons, they provide a globule of incandescent gas which is at a much higher temperature than that provided by the old-style carbon arc, and therefore a more intense source of light results. Electrons flowing from the negative to the positive carbon tend to keep the burning gases in the crater of the positive carbon.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

64. Lamp mechanism.—*Q.* Describe briefly the lamp-control mechanism. *A.* The lamp-control mechanism contains all the mechanism for feeding the carbons so as to maintain the light source at the focal point of the mirror (focal length of mirror is $25\frac{19}{32}$ inches) and to maintain the arc voltage at a constant of 75 volts. The motor that furnishes the power for these operations also drives a small fan that cools the negative and positive heads.



a. Drum.
b. Door.
c. Glass strips.
d. Ventilating hood and motor.
e. Muffler.
f. Thermostat instrument box.
g. Drum trunnions.
h. Traversing handwheel.
k. Elevating handwheel.
m. Elevating rack.
n. Right and left arms.
p. Lamp trough.
q and *r.* Training mechanism boxes.
s. Turntable.
t. Base.
u. Contactor panel box.
v. Power leads.
w. Conduits.
x. Reinforcing strips.
y. Braces.
z. Carbon tube.
aa. Operator's platform.

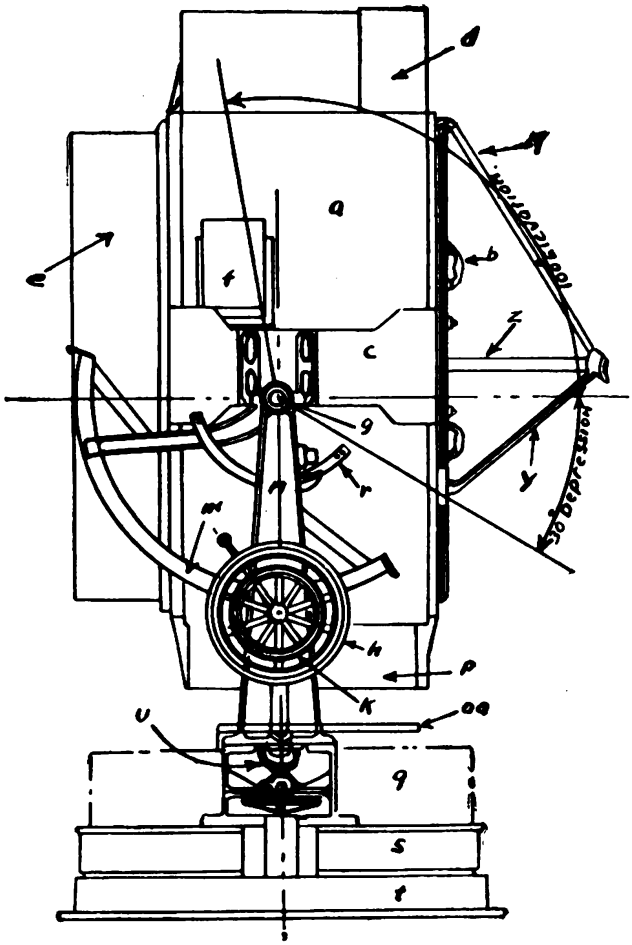
FIGURE 50.—Front view, 60-inch fixed light.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. Briefly describe the functioning of the feed mechanisms for the positive and negative carbons. *A.*

(1) The feed motor is a small, d-c motor shunted across the arc. The motor is connected to the positive head through a vertical shaft and a train of gears. The rotating member of the positive head carries two knurled feed rollers which grip the carbon and rotate it at about 14 rpm without feeding it forward.

(2) One of the rollers is connected through a gear train to a star wheel which is adapted to be engaged by a feed rod extending upward from the control box. The movement of this feed rod is



a. Drum.
b. Door handles.
c. Side plate.
d. Ventilating hood.
e. Mirror frame and dome.
f. Thermostat instrument box.
g. Drum trunnion.
h. Traversing handwheel.
k. Elevating handwheel.
m. Elevating rack.
n. Right arm.
p. Lamp trough.
q. Training mechanism box.
r. Elevating scale arm.
s. Turntable.
t. Base.
u. Training gears.
y. Braces.
z. Carbon tube.
aa. Operator's platform.

FIGURE 51.—Side view, 60-inch harbor defense searchlight.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

controlled by an electromagnet. Normally the rod is held out of engagement with the star wheel by a spring, but when the electromagnet is energized the rod is raised. The star wheel then hits the rod once during each revolution of the rotating head and is turned.

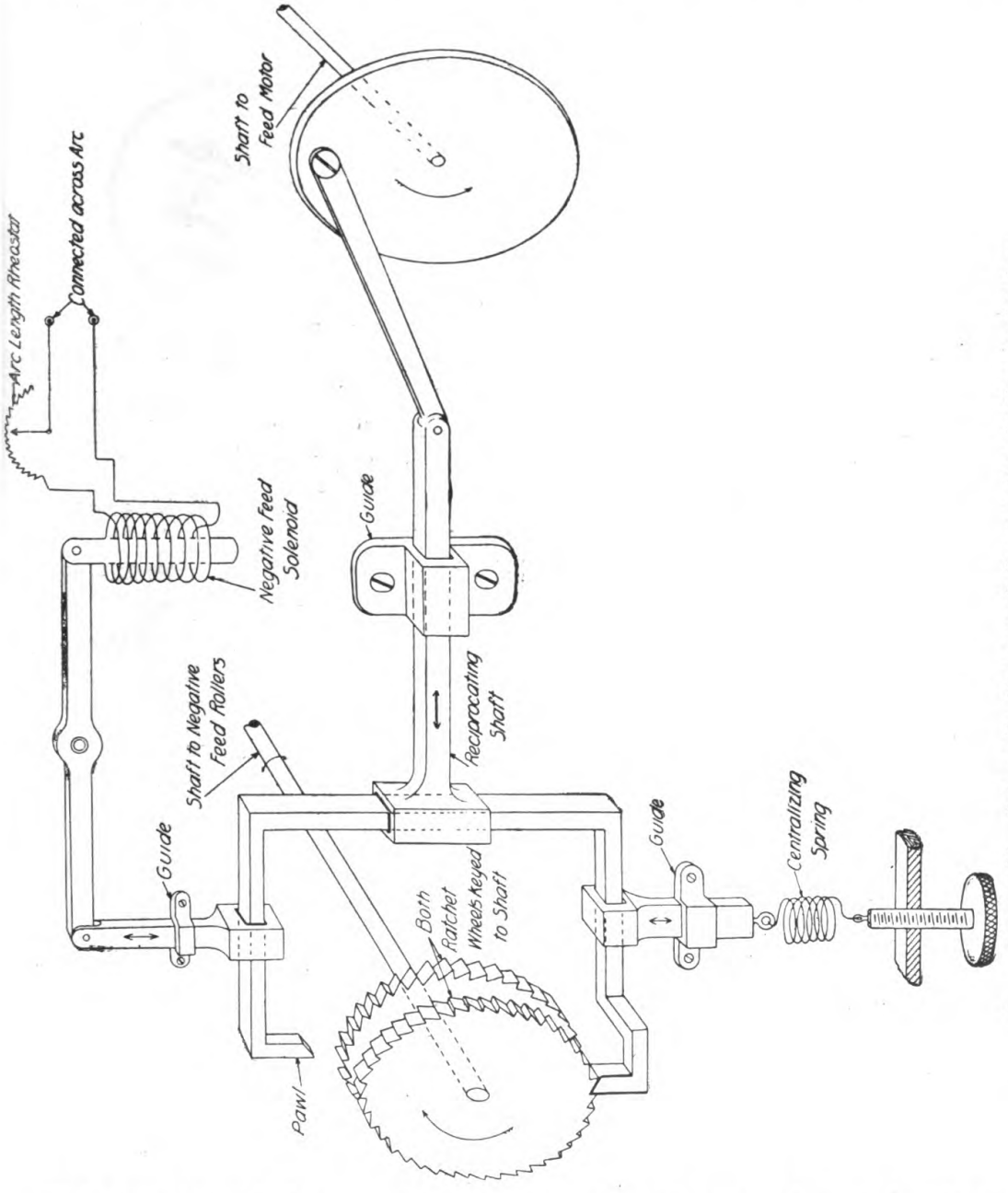


FIGURE 52.—Schematic diagram of the negative feeding mechanism.

This turning of the star wheel is transmitted to the knurled rollers holding the carbon, which in turn rotate and drive the carbon forward about one-fiftieth inch for each turn of the star wheel. The energizing of the electromagnet is automatically controlled by a thermostat (a hand control is also provided).

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(3) The feed motor also furnishes the power for feeding the negative carbon by driving the reciprocating shaft through an eccentric. (See fig. 52.) Depending upon the arc voltage which energizes the negative feed solenoid, the proper pawl will operate to drive the negative feed shaft in the direction necessary to feed the negative carbon forward, or to retract it.

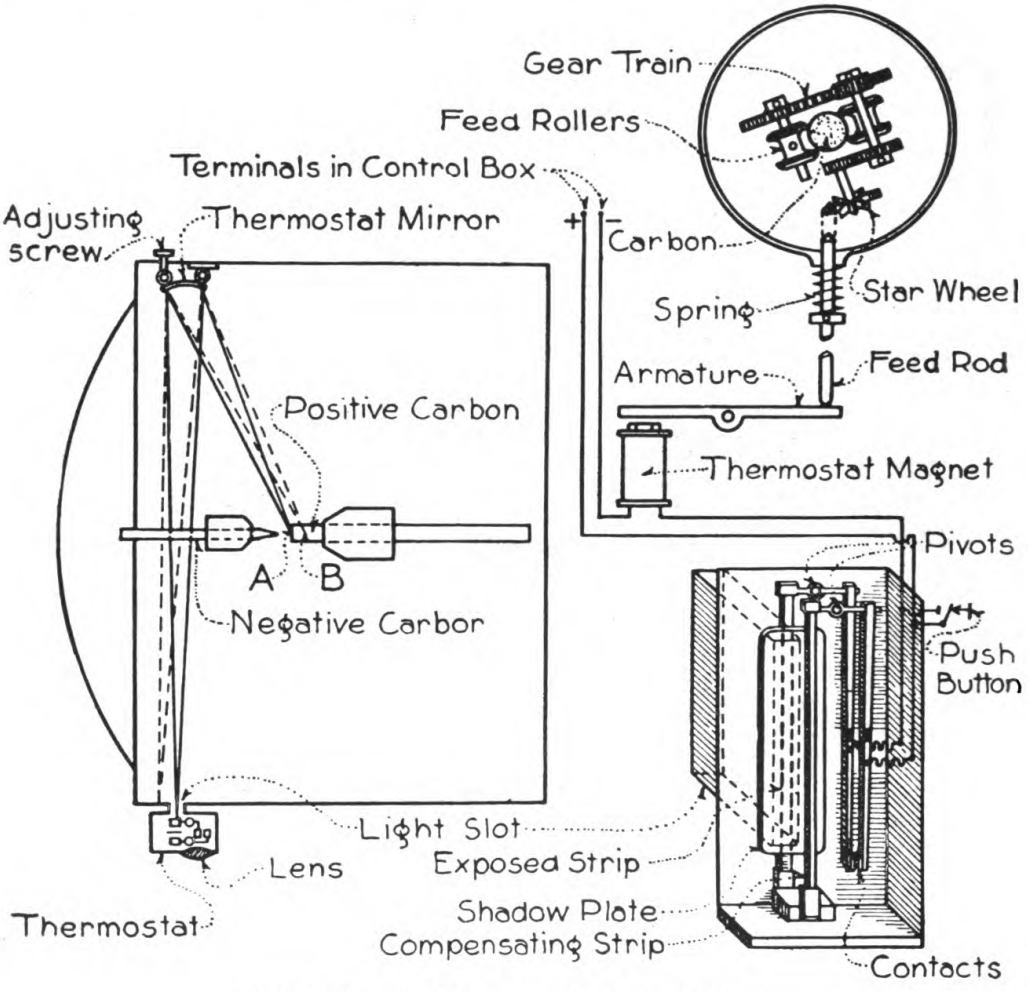


FIGURE 53.—Diagram of thermostat operation.

Q. What is the function of the thermostat, and how does it control the rate of feed of the positive carbon? *A*. The thermostat in conjunction with the positive feed mechanism causes the positive crater (and therefore the source of light) to remain at the focal point of the mirror.

(1) When the crater is at the focal point, its rays are reflected by means of the thermostat mirror onto the exposed zinc strip of the thermostat. This causes the strip to expand and break contact, opening the electromagnet circuit, and allows the positive feed rod to

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

disengage the star wheel of the positive head. The positive carbon merely rotates at this time.

(2) When the crater burns back sufficiently so that its rays are not reflected on the zinc strip, this strip will cool and close the electromagnet circuit. When the circuit is closed the positive feed rod will engage the star wheel on the rotating member of the positive head, thus feeding the carbon forward until the rays are reflected onto the exposed zinc strip which will expand and open the circuit energizing the electromagnet. When the magnet is not energized the spring of the positive feed rod will disengage the rod from the star wheel and the positive carbon will again merely rotate and not feed forward.

Q. Can the positive carbon be fed backward as well as forward? *A.* No. The feed mechanism allows for a forward feeding only.

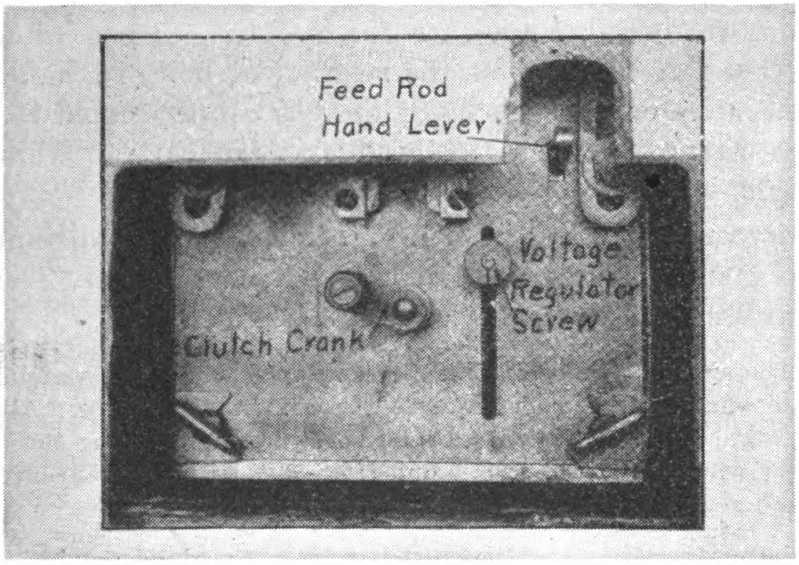


FIGURE 54.—Hand operation.

Q. Can the negative carbon be fed backward as well as forward? *A.* Yes. The negative carbon is the sensitive electrode of the arc. Its movement is regulated by the arc voltage which energizes the negative feed solenoid. When the voltage across the arc is not 75 volts the tension of the centralizing spring (see fig. 53) and the pull of the solenoid are unequal, therefore one of the pawls will engage with its ratchet. This causes the feed shaft to rotate and either feed the negative carbon forward or backward, until the arc voltage reaches 75 volts, at which time the pull of the solenoid and the tension of the spring will be equal and the feed mechanism will be in balance, and no further feeding of the carbon will result until the arc voltage again changes.

Q. Can the positive and negative carbons be fed other than by

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

"automatic feed?" *A.* Yes. Open door at rear of lamp compartment. To feed the negative carbon by hand, push in clutch crank and turn right to feed forward and left to feed backward. To feed the positive carbon, push in hand lever and pull down until it catches. Maintain lever in this position until desired feed is obtained (see fig. 54). The positive carbon may also be fed forward by pressing in push button on thermostat box.

Q. What is the effect of improper focus? *A.* Loss of beam intensity. A loss of approximately 40 percent of the light will result if the positive crater is allowed to become one-eighth inch out of focus.

Q. What are some other causes of losses of light? *A.* If excessive current (over 150 amperes) is allowed to flow across the arc, the beam will flicker due to the sputtering of the arc. If the current is too low (less than 145 amperes) the beam will tend to be blue.

Q. What feature distinguishes the negative carbon of a harbor defense fixed searchlight from the negative carbon of a mobile light? *A.* The negative carbon of a fixed light is copper-coated to decrease contact resistance between the head and the carbon, while in the mobile light it is not copper-coated.

65. Distant electric control.—*Q.* What type of distant electric control is generally used with a fixed searchlight? *A.* The control in general use is of the synchronous-relay type.

NOTE.—The synchronous type controller employed with some searchlights now installed in various harbor defenses is the old standard type. Although no longer standard, these units will be continued in service during the life of the searchlights with which they are employed. This type of controller operates on the same general principle as the synchronous-relay type.

Q. Briefly describe the distant electric control system. *A.* At the distant station is located the device known as the controller. It is used for traversing and elevating the light, for turning the light on and off, and for operating the magnetic clutch. A separate system of control apparatus for each direction of motion (traversing and elevating) is located on the light itself, and each system consists of: a pilot motor, the motion of which is controlled by the controller at the distant station; a contactor panel, operated by the pilot motor, which governs the speed, direction of rotation, and the starting and stopping of the training motor; a training motor which furnishes the mechanical power for moving the projector barrel. A magnetic clutch (operated from the distant station) is included in the gear train between the training motor and the projector barrel. The clutch changes the gear ratio, giving a fast or slow motion to the projector. The ratio of the slow to the fast motion is 1 to 7½.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

66. Power supply unit.—*Q.* What are the characteristics of the training motor? *A.* The training motor is a one-sixth horsepower, shunt wound, d-c motor, designed to operate at 110 volts and 1,700 revolutions per minute.

Q. Can the searchlight be used if the distant electric control apparatus fails? *A.* Yes, hand elevating, traversing, and main switch mechanisms are provided at the searchlight for emergency use.

Q. What power plant is standard for harbor defense fixed searchlights? *A.* Type GM 12, which consists of a gasoline engine driving a 25-kw generator.

Q. What are the more important features of the gasoline engine? *A.* The gasoline engine is a four-cylinder, four-stroke cycle engine with the following more important accessories:

(1) A governor of the centrifugal weight type, which holds the engine at a full load speed of 560 revolutions per minute with a 3 percent variation from full load to no load. (No-load speed varies from 570 to 575 revolutions per minute.)

(2) A double-plunger fuel pump (one plunger is provided with a lever for hand operation, the other is mechanically driven).

(3) A high-tension magneto ignition system.

(4) A combination pressure and splash lubricating system.

(5) A separate cooling system, consisting of a radiator, fan, and fan motor.

Q. What items should be checked before the engine is started? *A.*

(1) The oil level by means of the sight gage on the exhaust side of the engine should be checked before the engine is started as it gives the true level only when the engine is not in operation.

(2) The cooling water supply should be checked before starting the engine to insure a sufficient amount to keep the engine at the proper temperature (not to exceed 90° or 194°) during operation.

(3) The gasoline supply should be checked to insure against enforced shut-down due to lack of fuel.

Q. Describe the generator usually furnished with the GM 12 power plant. *A.* The usual type of generator furnished with each unit is a 115-volt d-c, compound wound, commutating pole, General Electric generator, designed to run at 560 rpm.

The candidate should be familiar with all phases of the operation and care of the power unit as set forth in the instruction book furnished with the equipment.

The candidate should prove his ability to instruct each member of the searchlight squad in his respective duties by practical demonstration.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

SECTION II

MOBILE SEARCHLIGHT APPARATUS (AA AND SEACOAST)

	Paragraph
Types and general characteristics	67
Sperry searchlights	68
General Electric searchlight	69
Control stations (Sperry)	70
Control station (General Electric)	71
Power plants	72
Orientation and synchronization	73
Maintenance, care, and adjustment of parts	74

67. Types and general characteristics.—The following tables present a general view of mobile searchlight equipment. This equipment was designed for and is provided as AA searchlight equipment but is provided also, without sound locators, for use as mobile seacoast searchlight equipment.

TABLE I.—*Older equipment*

Model of light	Type of distant electric controller	Model of control station	Power unit
36-inch Mack	None	None	Mack, 5½-ton.
60-inch open (1918)	None	None	Cadillac M57.
MI	Impulse	MI (d-c)	Cadillac V-63.
MII	Impulse	MI (d-c)	Cadillac M341.
MIII (experimental)			
MIV	Brush shifting	MIII (a-c)	Cadillac.
MV (experimental)			

NOTE.—Very few lights of the models listed above are still in use. Further details concerning them are not included in the subject matter in this manual.

TABLE II.—*Newer equipment*

Model of light	Type of distant electric controller	Model of control station	Power unit
MVI	Brush shifting	MIII (a-c)	Duplex.
M1934	D-c step-by-step	1934 Binocular (Sperry).	General Motors.
M1937	D-c step-by-step	1937 Binocular (Sperry).	Duplex.
M1939	D-c step-by-step	1939 Binocular (Sperry)	U. S. Motors.
M1940 (Sperry)	D-c step-by-step	1940 Binocular (Sperry).	U. S. Motors.
M1940 (G. E.)	A-c self-synchronous.	1940 Binocular (G. E.).	General Electric.
M1941 (Sperry)	D-c step-by-step	1941 Binocular (Sperry).	Duplex.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

68. Sperry searchlights.—*Q.* Describe the characteristics of the Sperry 1941 searchlight. *A.* This is a 60-inch, 150-ampere light. It possesses the following characteristics:

(1) A high-intensity arc as a source of light.

(2) A current through the arc of 150 amperes with an arc voltage of 78 volts.

(3) Automatic focusing of the positive crater, and continuous rotation of the positive carbon.

(4) A ventilating system which exhausts the gases formed by the burning of the carbons.

(5) Metal mirror.

Q. Is the 1941 Sperry searchlight much different in its characteristics from previous Sperry models? What are the differences? *A.* No. The characteristics and operation of the MVI, M1934, M1937, M1939, and M1940 searchlights are practically identical with the M1941 searchlight. The MVI is equipped with a glass mirror. However, only M1941 provides for continuous rotation of the positive carbon, and has a time delay mechanism and thermal circuit breaker in the arc switches.

Q. How does the high-intensity arc function in the Sperry searchlight? *A.* The incandescent ball of vapor which forms the source of light in the high-intensity arc is derived from the rare earths, cerium and lanthanum. By mixing these rare earths in the soft core of the positive carbon, and by forcing a high current through the carbon, the earths are volatilized and projected in to the positive crater. Electrons flow from the negative to the positive carbon and tend to keep the burning gases in the positive crater.

Q. Briefly describe how the Sperry automatic feed mechanism causes the positive and negative carbons to feed in the 1941 model. *A.* The feed motor operates at "arc" or "listening" load voltages. The feed motor drives the positive rod through a train of gears. A miter gear on the end of this rod drives another miter gear which is shafted to a yoke carrying a set of gears and a ratchet. The yoke also carries the positive carbon which rotates with it. When the feed plunger prevents rotation of a ratchet, which uses the yoke as a shaft, a planetary gear travels around a spur gear which is rigidly fastened to the ratchet, thereby causing the feed rollers to drive the positive carbon forward. On feeding sufficiently far forward, the plunger is disengaged, and the large spur gear rotates freely with the yoke without there being any relative movement between this gear and the planetary gear. The feed motor also drives through an eccentric gear which causes the negative reciprocating feed member and the feed pawls to oscillate. Depending on the position of the negative

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

feed-control guard, the proper pawl will operate to drive the negative control rod in the direction necessary to feed the negative carbon forward, or to retract it.

Q. Describe how the positive carbon is fed forward on the M1941 searchlight. *A.* A positive feed-control electromagnet is mounted on the positive head. When this electromagnet has current flowing through it, it attracts a feed plunger, causing the feed plunger to move into one of a series of holes machined in the side of the ratchet, thereby preventing the ratchet from rotating. Attached to the ratchet is a spur gear. Both the ratchet and the spur gear are mounted on, and can rotate with respect to, the yoke. The exterior surface of the yoke serves as a shaft and bearing surface for the bearing of the ratchet and spur gear. When the ratchet stops, the spur gear stops. A planetary gear is mounted on, and rotates continuously with, the yoke. This planetary gear meshes with the spur gear which is attached to the ratchet. When the ratchet and spur gear are stopped from rotating by the feed plunger the planetary gear "walks around" the spur gear which, through shafting and gearing, causes the positive carbon feed rollers to drive the positive carbon forward. The length of time the positive carbon feed contacts are closed may be controlled by means of a positive carbon feed-rate adjustment screw, thereby allowing the positive carbon to feed forward at the desired rate of feed. When the positive feed-control electromagnet has no current flowing through it the feed plunger is held away from the ratchet by a spring.

Q. There are two methods of causing current to flow through the positive-feed electromagnet. What are these two methods? *A.*

(1) *Normal automatic positive carbon feed.*—The feed motor, through gearing, rotates a positive control rod. Mounted on and rotating with this control rod is an eccentric cam. During each revolution of the cam its high surface closes electric contacts which allow current to flow through the positive feed-control electromagnet, thereby causing the positive carbon to feed forward at a rate equal to one-half the rate of burning of the positive carbon.

(2) *By action of thermostat.*—When the positive carbon burns back one sixty-fourth of an inch, rays of light coming from the positive crater are concentrated by the thermostat lens on the thermostat bimetallic strip. The bimetallic strip heats and bends so as to close the thermostat electric contacts before the positive crater burns back from the focal point more than one thirty-second of an inch. This allows current to flow through the positive feed-control electromagnet, thereby feeding the positive carbon forward to the focal point of the mirror.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. How does the automatic feed mechanism function in the M1940 and prior models? *A*. The feed motor drives a disk, which in turn drives an oscillating feed member forward (toward front of light) and rearward. On this oscillating feed member are mounted three pawls, one positive and two negative. The positive feed pawl engages a positive feed ratchet during the forward movement only of the oscillating member, thereby causing the positive carbon to feed forward and to rotate. The two negative feed pawls, one to drive the negative carbon forward, the other to retract it, engage with corresponding negative feed ratchets. The correct negative feed pawl engages with its corresponding feed ratchet during the rearward movement only of the oscillating feed member.

Q. How is the positive carbon on the M1940 and prior models fed forward? *A*. The feed mechanism feeds the carbon forward so that the normal rate of feed is slightly less than the rate of burning of the carbons. The positive carbon is also rotated during this forward movement so as to cause the positive crater to burn evenly.

Q. What device keeps the incandescent ball of vapor at the focal point of the mirror? *A*. A thermostat, in conjunction with the feed mechanism.

Q. How does the thermostat keep the positive carbon at the focal point of the mirror in the M1940 and prior models? *A*. The thermostat control increases the rate of feed when the crater burns back. When the crater is out of focus to the extent of $\frac{1}{64}$ inch, a pencil of light focused by means of a lens falls through a slit in the thermostat housing and strikes a bimetallic strip. Heat causes this strip to warp and close a circuit to an electromagnet which draws a guard away from the positive feed pawl, thus increasing the rate of positive feed. The positive crater is thus restored to the focal point before it can get more than $\frac{1}{32}$ inch out of focus. The rate of feed of the positive carbon can be regulated by the positive feed-rate adjusting knob.

Q. Can the positive carbon be fed backward as well as forward? *A*. No. The feed mechanism allows the positive carbon to be fed forward only.

Q. Can the negative carbon be fed backward as well as forward? *A*. Yes.

Q. How does the negative feed control function? *A*. It is governed by the arc voltage coil. This coil is connected directly across the arc and acts as a magnet. As the arc voltage increases or decreases, the magnetic strength of the coil increases or decreases. The magnetic field exerts a pull on an armature which controls the position of the negative feed guard. As long as the voltage drop across the arc is

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

normal, the negative guard holds the negative feed pawls out of engagement with the ratchet wheels which rotate the negative feed rod. As the carbons burn back, the arc lengthens and the voltage across the coil increases, thereby increasing the strength of its magnetic field. The magnetic field of the arc voltage coil attracts the armature toward it against the action of a spring which pulls on the opposite side of the armature, allowing the lower negative feed pawl to become engaged. The negative carbon is fed forward and the arc length is shortened to the proper value. If the arc length becomes too short, the arc length decreases and the voltage across the coil decreases. This allows the spring to pull the armature farther away from the coil allowing the upper negative feed pawl to engage, thereby making the negative carbon draw back and lengthen the arc to the proper value. The arc length can be regulated by varying the tension of a spring attached to the armature of the voltage-regulating coil. The arc is struck automatically by the negative feed mechanism. When the switch is closed, the voltage coil receives full-line voltage and the rate of feed is maximum, bringing the two carbons in contact.

Q. Can the positive and negative carbons be fed other than by automatic feed control? Explain. *A*. Yes. They can be fed by "semiautomatic feed control" or by "hand control."

(1) If the positive carbon feed develops trouble, the positive carbon may be fed by hand while the negative carbon continues to feed automatically.

(2) In a like manner, if the negative carbon feed develops trouble, the negative carbon may be fed by hand while the positive carbon continues to feed automatically. The above two cases are "semiautomatic feed control."

(3) In case the automatic feeds for both the positive and negative carbons develop trouble, full "hand control" is used to feed the positive and negative carbons. A ground glass finder is used so that the source of light may be kept at the focal point of the mirror. When using the negative hand feed, the arc voltage must be kept at 78 volts by referring to the voltmeter.

Q. Why is a ventilating system necessary in drum type lights? *A*. The purpose of the ventilating system is to prevent the deposit of light-absorbing film on the interior surfaces, to cool the lamp head, and to exhaust gases and soot from the drum. One of the byproducts of the combustion has a corrosive action on the mirror so that a check should be made to insure the proper functioning of the ventilating system.

NOTE.—Always clean mirror and interior surfaces of drum *immediately* after use.

Q. What is the effect of improper focus? *A*. Loss of beam intensity.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What percentage of light is lost by allowing the positive crater to become one-eighth inch out of focus? *A*. Approximately 40 percent.

Q. What are some other causes of loss of light? *A*. Sputtering or unsteadiness of the arc, and deposits of vapor on the mirror and front door, both caused by excessive current across the arc.

69. General Electric searchlight.—*Q*. Describe the characteristics of the General Electric M1940 searchlight. *A*. The searchlight is a 60-inch, 150-ampere light. It has—

(1) A high-intensity arc as a source of light.

(2) A current through the arc of 150 amperes with an arc voltage drop of 78 volts.

(3) Automatic focusing of the positive crater.

(4) A ventilating system to exhaust gases formed by the burning of the carbons.

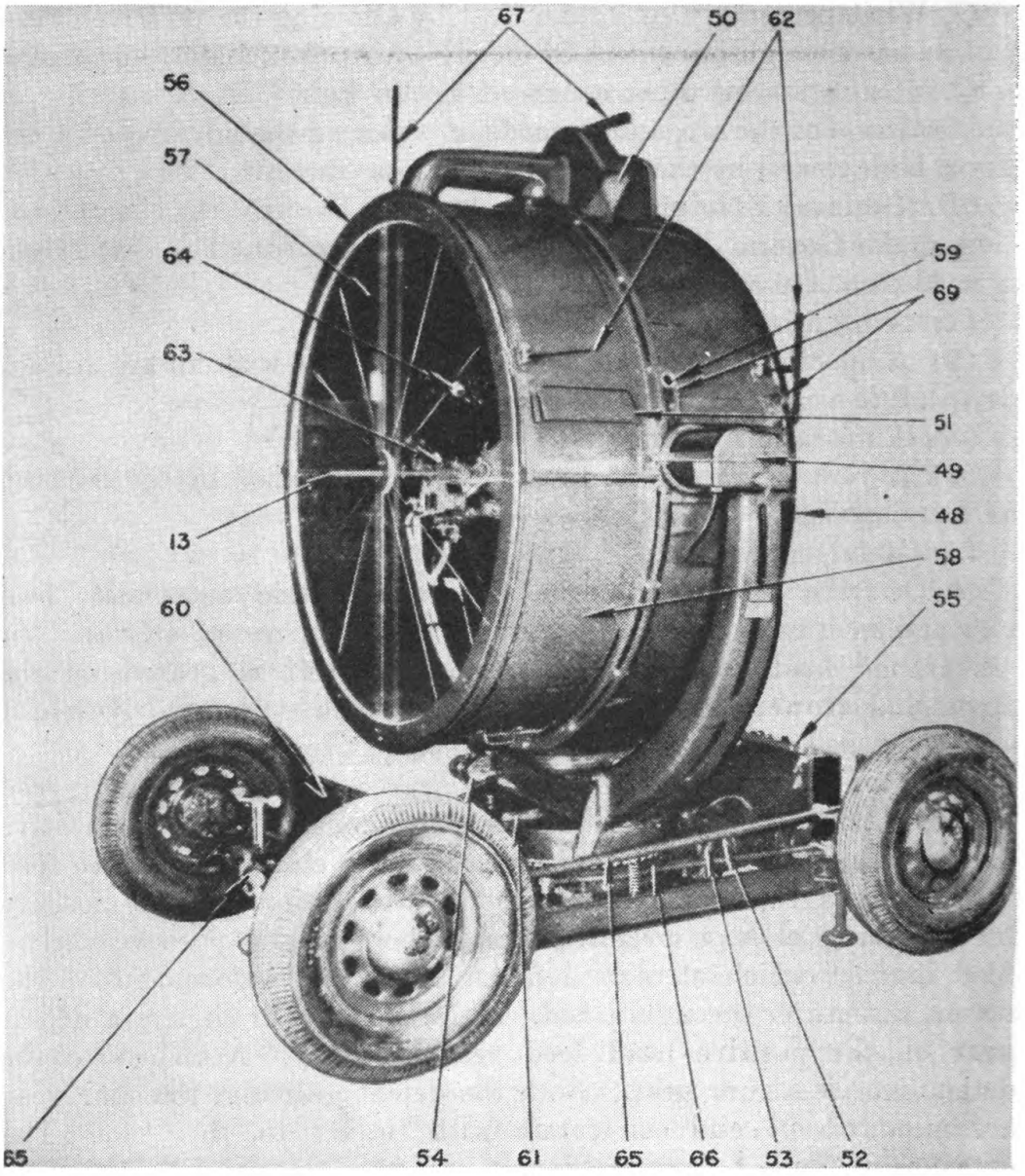
(5) Metal mirror.

Q. Describe briefly how the General Electric automatic feed mechanism functions. *A*. The feed motor operates at "arc" or "listening" load voltages. The armature shaft is geared on the front end (toward front of searchlight) to a positive drive shaft and is geared on the rear end to the negative drive shaft.

(1) The positive drive shafting is geared to a positive drive rod which rotates the positive carbon continuously. On the positive drive shaft is a cam which is shaped so as to close the positive feed rate contacts each time it makes one revolution. These positive feed contacts close a circuit, thereby energizing a positive carbon feed magnet which attracts a detent armature. Movement of the detent armature, through a rod, causes a detent to engage a detent gear on the positive head feed gear assembly. Attached to the detent gear is a spur gear. Both the detent gear and the spur gear are mounted on, and can rotate with respect to, the yoke. The exterior surface of the yoke serves as a shaft and bearing surface for the bearing of the detent gear and spur gear. When the detent gear stops, the spur gear stops. A planetary gear is mounted on and rotates continuously with, the yoke. This planetary gear meshes with the spur gear which is attached to the detent gear. When the detent and spur gears are stopped from rotating by the detent, the planetary gear "walks around" the spur gear, which causes, through shafting and gearing, the positive carbon feed rollers to drive the positive carbon forward. The length of time the positive carbon feed-rate contacts are closed may be controlled by means of a positive carbon feed-rate adjustment knob, thereby allowing the positive carbon to feed forward at the desired rate of feed.

(2) The negative drive shaft has a collar mounted on it. This

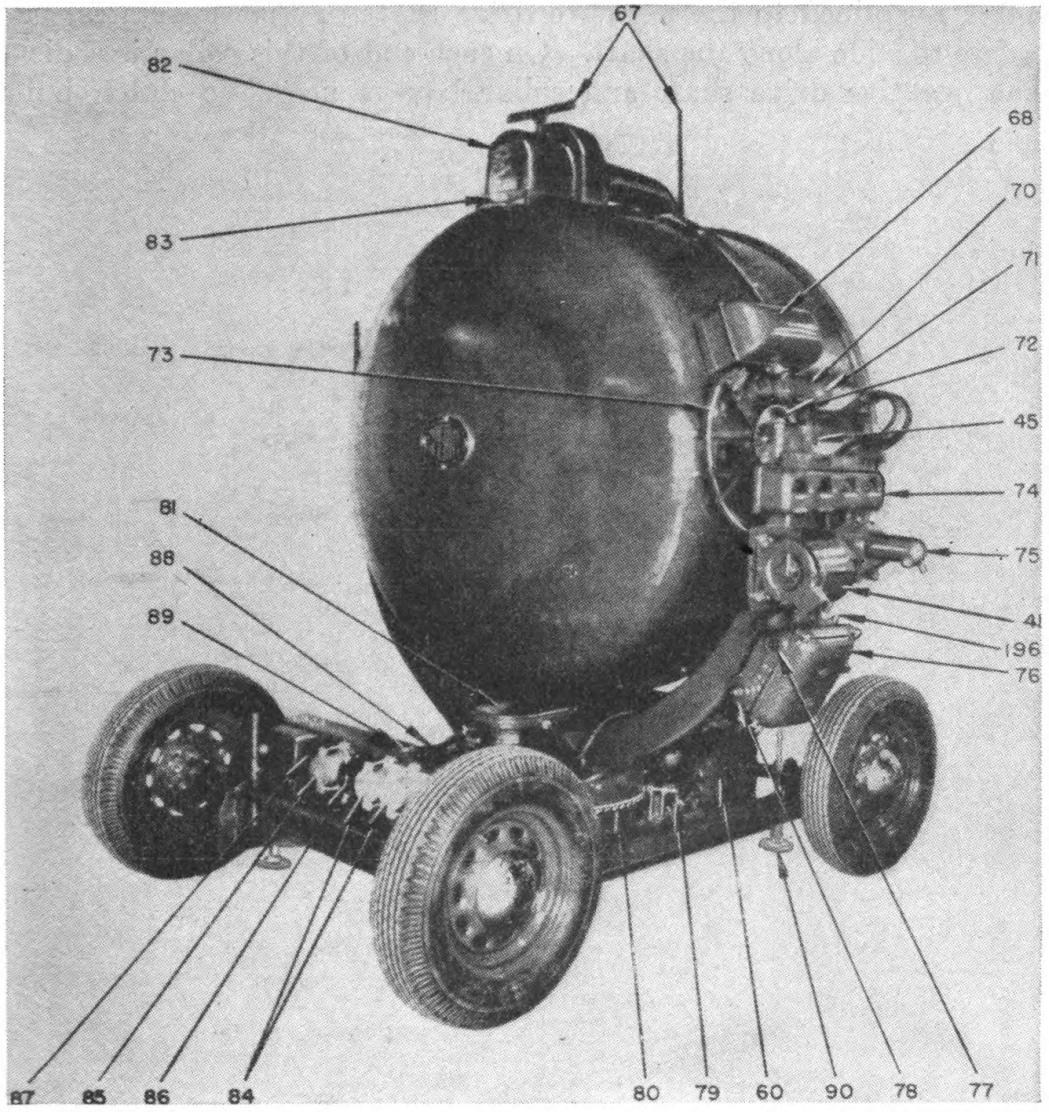
Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



13. Positive carbon.
48. Rear drum.
49. Elevation data receiver housing. (Not part of M1934 and MVI lights. MVI light has a transmiter intsead of a receiver at this location.)
50. Ventilating motor and exhaust vent.
51. Ventilating fan intake vents.
52. Azimuth control motor.
53. Azimuth motor clutch lever.
54. Azimuth scale lamp.
55. Junction box.
56. Front drum.
57. Glass door.
58. Sliding panel.
59. Arc view peep sight.
60. Ballast resistor.
61. Handhold plate.
62. Elevation daylight sights.
63. Lamp unit.
64. Recarboning lamp.
65. Steering tongue and lug.
66. Transportation bar.
67. Azimuth daylight sights.
69. Orienting sights.

FIGURE 55.—Sperry M1941 AA searchlight (front quarter view).

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

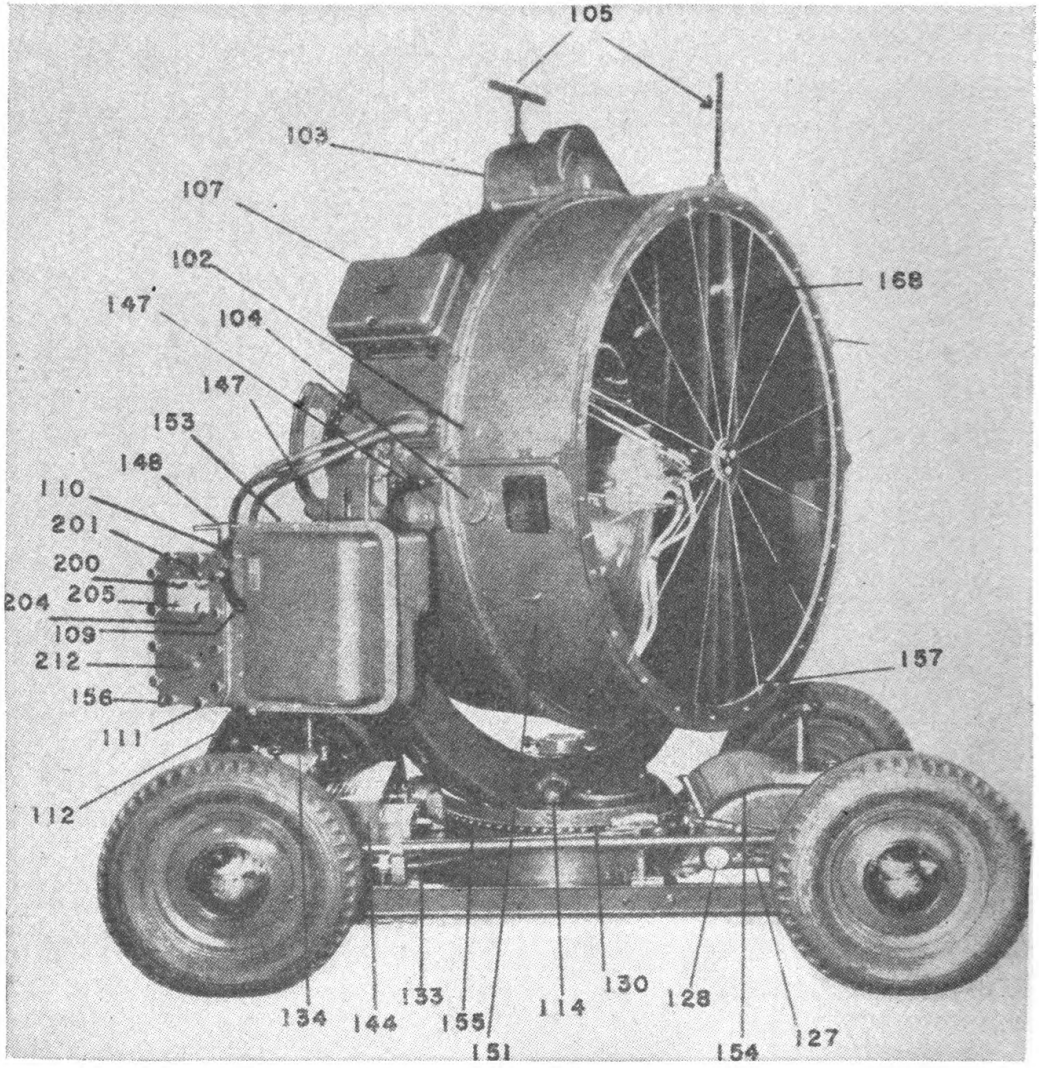


41. Elevation control motor.
45. Arc view peep sight.
60. Ballast resistor.
67. Azimuth daylight sights.
68. Lamp control mechanism box.
70. Recarboning lamp switch.
71. Elevation scale lamp.
72. Elevation scale.
73. Elevation gear sector.
74. Meter box.
75. Hand controller socket.
76. Arc switch box.
77. Extension lamp receptacle.
78. Scale and meter light switch.
79. Azimuth lock.
80. Azimuth scale.
81. Azimuth data receiver housing. (Not part of M1934 and MVI lights. MVI light has a transmitter instead of a receiver at this location.)
82. Ventilating motor housing.
83. Transportation lock bar lug.
84. Power cable receptacles.
85. Control station cable receptacle.
86. Sound locator cable receptacle. (Not part of the MVI and M1934 lights since this cable goes to comparator directly on these models. The MVI light has a white receptacle and a green receptacle at this location.
87. Signal buzzer. (Not part of the MVI or M1934 lights.)
88. Dynamotor (behind wheel). (For the MVI light it is located at the power plant. For the M1934 unit it is located at the control station.)
89. Dynamotor pilot light.
90. Leveling jacks.
196. Recarboning safety switch. (Found only on the M1941 light.)

FIGURE 56.—Sperry M1941 AA searchlight (rear quarter view).

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

collar is splined to the negative drive shaft so that it rotates, but is free to slide along the shaft. On each end of this collar is a disk. The negative drive shaft and collar have a magnetic clutch built

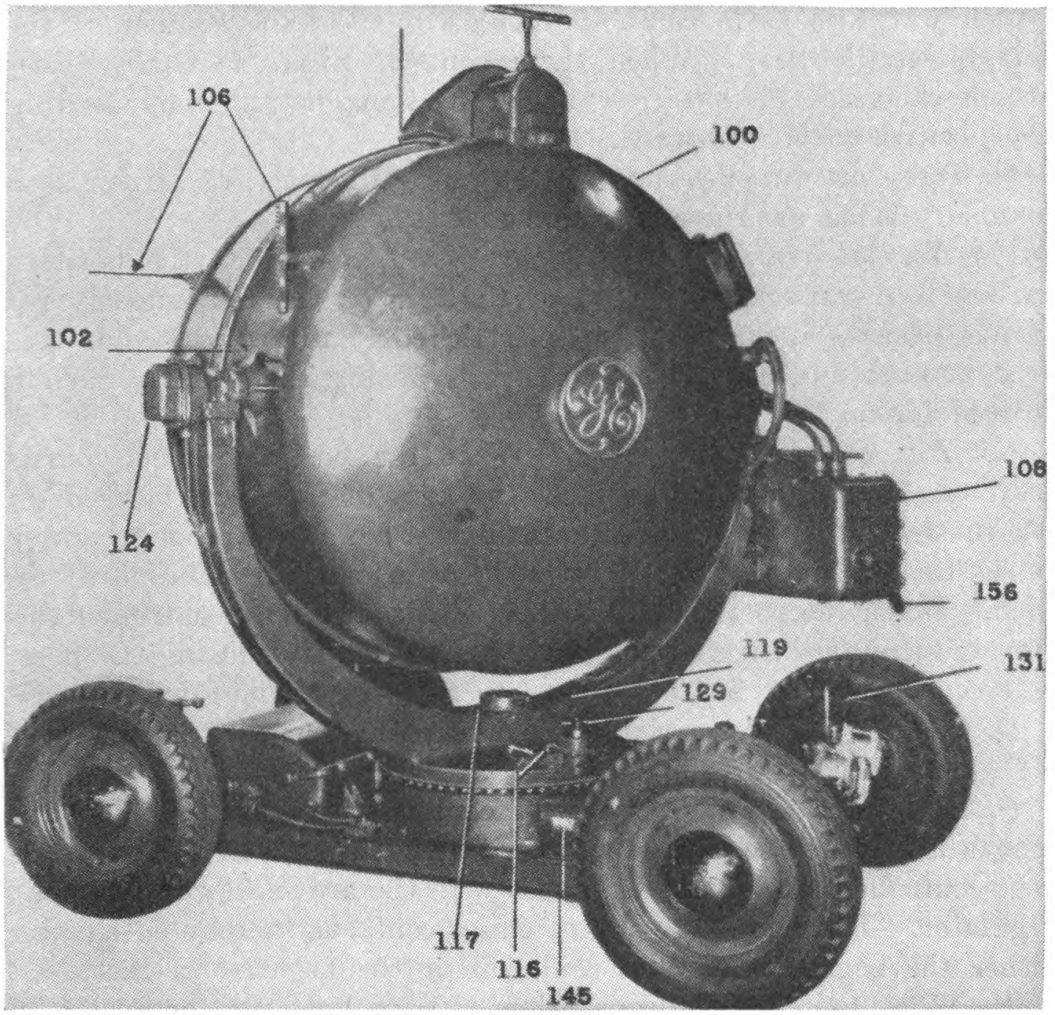


102. Arc viewing window.
103. Ventilating fan and motor housing.
104. Arc image screen.
105. Daylight sights.
107. Lamp control mechanism box.
109. Elevation brake handle.
110. Extended hand control bar socket cover.
111. Recarboning lamp switch.
112. Scale lamp switch.
114. Azimuth scale lamp.
127. Azimuth clutch switch.
128. Dynamotor switch.
130. Elevation stowing rod.
133. Towing bar.
134. Junction box.
144. Ballast resistor.
147. Focusing knob.
148. Extended hand control bar clamp.
149. Elevation scale lamp.
151. Drum access door.
153. Elevation control box.
154. Azimuth control box.
155. Azimuth scale.
156. Arc switch handle.
157. Counterweight.
168. Glass.
200. Azimuth zero indicator.
201. Elevation zero indicator.
204. Arc ammeter.
205. Arc voltmeter.
212. Dynamotor a-c indicating lamp.

FIGURE 57.—60-inch M1940 General Electric AA searchlight (front quarter view).

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

around them. This magnetic clutch has a forward feed coil around one end of the collar and a retract feed coil around the other end of the collar. When the forward feed coil is energized, the collar is moved so that the lower disk drives a friction-driven disk. This friction-driven disk rotates the negative drive rod and moves the



100. Drum.
102. Arc viewing window.
106. Elevation daylight sights.
108. Elevation clutch switch.
116. Levels.
117. Spindle cover.
119. Azimuth correction handle.
124. Elevation data receiver cover.
129. Azimuth stowing lock.
131. Leveling jacks.
145. Dynamotor.
156. Arc switch handle.

FIGURE 58.—60-inch M1940 General Electric AA searchlight (rear quarter view).

negative carbon forward. When the retract coil is energized the upper collar disk engages and causes the negative carbon to retract.

Q. Explain how the thermostat functions. *A.* The thermostat, together with the regular positive feed, causes the positive crater to remain at the focal point of the mirror. It is mounted on the posi-

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

tive head. By means of a concave mirror, rays of light from the positive crater are focused on the thermostat. Within the thermostat are two bimetallic strips, each with contacts on its free end. When the light rays fall between the two, both are heated equally, and neither moves with respect to the other. When the positive crater burns back, the light rays fall on the right bimetallic strip which warps so as to cause its contact to meet the contact of the left bimetallic strip. When these contacts meet, a circuit closes which energizes the positive carbon feed magnet, thereby feeding the positive carbon forward.

Q. There are two methods of energizing the positive carbon feed magnet. What are these two methods? *A.*

(1) *Normal automatic positive carbon feed.*—When the positive carbon feed contacts are closed by the cam on the continuously rotating positive drive shaft, an electric current flows through this feed magnet and energizes it, thereby causing the positive carbon to feed forward.

(2) *By action of thermostat.*—When the positive carbon burns back one sixty-fourth of an inch, the rays of light are focused on the thermostat causing its contacts to close before the positive crater burns back from the focal point more than one thirty-second of an inch. When the thermostat contacts close, an electric current flows through this feed magnet and energizes it, thereby causing the positive carbon to feed forward to the focal point of the mirror.

Q. Can the positive carbon be fed backward as well as forward? *A.* No. It feeds forward only.

Q. How does the negative feed control function? *A.* The arc length is adjusted so that 150 amperes flow through it. It is a current-controlled arc. A coil in series with the arc energizes a current regulator. The current regulator closes contacts, thereby energizing either the negative forward feed coil or the negative retract feed coil. When the current drops below 150 amperes, the forward feed coil is energized, thereby causing the arc to shorten and increase the current to 150 amperes. When the current increases above 150 amperes, the retract feed coil is energized and the arc is lengthened, the current decreasing to 150 amperes.

Q. Can the positive and negative carbons be fed other than by automatic feed control? Explain. *A.* Yes. Either the positive or negative carbon may be operated manually. The positive carbon may be fed manually by means of the positive carbon manual drive crank by pushing it in and turning it clockwise. If it is necessary to feed the positive carbon forward rapidly, push in the positive

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

carbon feed button in order to cause the detent to engage the positive head feed gearing. Manual feed of the positive carbon may be used whether the feed motor is running or not. The negative carbon may be fed or retracted manually by pushing in the negative carbon manual drive crank. Pushing the drive crank in opens the circuit of the magnetic clutch.

70. Control stations (Sperry).—*Q.* For what purpose is a control station used? *A.*

(1) *AA searchlight.*—To train the searchlight from a remote point in accordance with data sent from the sound locator.

(2) *S. C. mobile searchlight.*—To train the searchlight from a remote point.

Q. Of what does the control station consist? *A.* The control station consists of a control unit and a tripod.

Q. Of what does the control unit consist on the M1937 to M1941 models? *A.* It consists of the elevation control mechanism, the azimuth control mechanism, the binocular mount, and the azimuth and elevation zero reader indicators (the zero readers being used for AA searchlights only).

Q.[1] Of what does the control unit consist on the M1934 unit? *A.*[1] It consists of the elevation control mechanism, the azimuth control mechanism, the binocular mount, a comparator for comparing sound locator data with the actual data set on the searchlight, and a mechanical oscillating mechanism for searching in a 5° spiral around sound locator data.

Q.[1] Of what does the control unit consist on the MVI model? *A.*[1] It consists of the controller, which houses the azimuth and elevation control mechanisms, and the comparator, which allows a comparison of sound locator data with the data set on the searchlight.

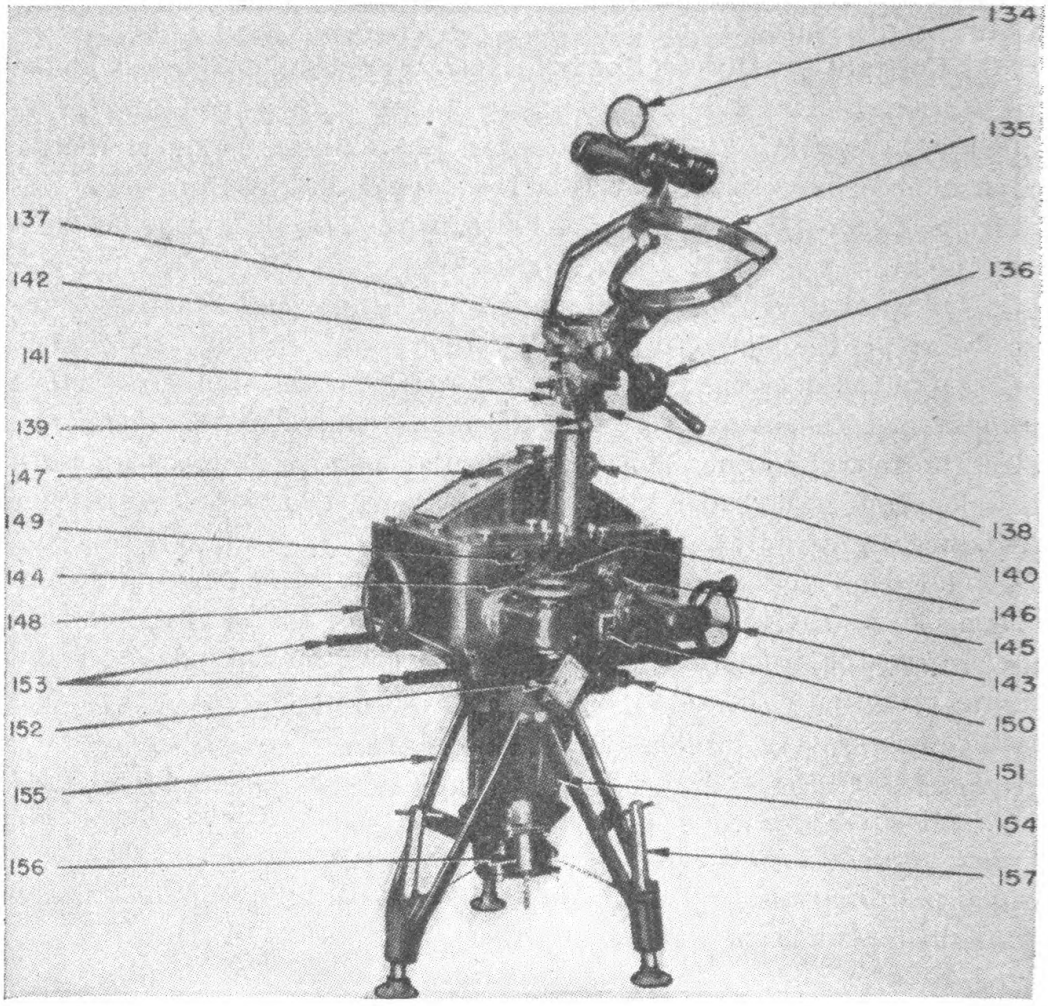
Q.[1] How is the searchlight synchronized with the sound locator data? *A.*[1] Self-synchronous transmitters on the sound locator transmit electrically the angular movements of the sound locator to self-synchronous receivers. These are mounted and geared to the searchlight. The electrical output of the receivers goes to a phase-detecting circuit and from there to d-c. double throw, zero-reading voltmeters. When the indicator on the zero-reading voltmeter is at the zero position, the searchlight is pointed or synchronized with the sound locator data. There are four zero-reading voltmeters, two for azimuth and two for elevation. One of each is mounted on the searchlight drum and the other set is mounted in the control unit.

[1] Omit for all except AA platoon of searchlight battery.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q.[1] How does the zero-reader follow-up system operate? *A.*[1] Elevation and azimuth transmitters at the sound locator send data to corresponding receivers mounted on the searchlight. The rotor of the elevation receiver (mounted on the left trunnion) is geared to the



134. Open sight.
135. Binocular mount.
136. Binocular mount counterweights.
137. Binocular elevation zero marker.
138. Binocular azimuth zero marker.
139. Binocular mount adjustment handles.
140. Binocular height adjusting knob.
141. Binocular mount azimuth adjustment.
142. Binocular mount clutch adjustment.
143. Observer's elevation handwheel.
144. Observer's azimuth handwheel.
145. Elevation drive slip clutch.
146. Azimuth drive slip clutch.
147. Azimuth zero reader.
148. Azimuth zero reader handwheel.
149. Signal buzzer push button.
150. Zero reader light switch.
151. D-c switch.
152. Alinement lug.
153. Carrying handles.
154. Handhold cover plate.
155. Tripod.
156. Fifteen-point receptacle.
157. Leveling jack.

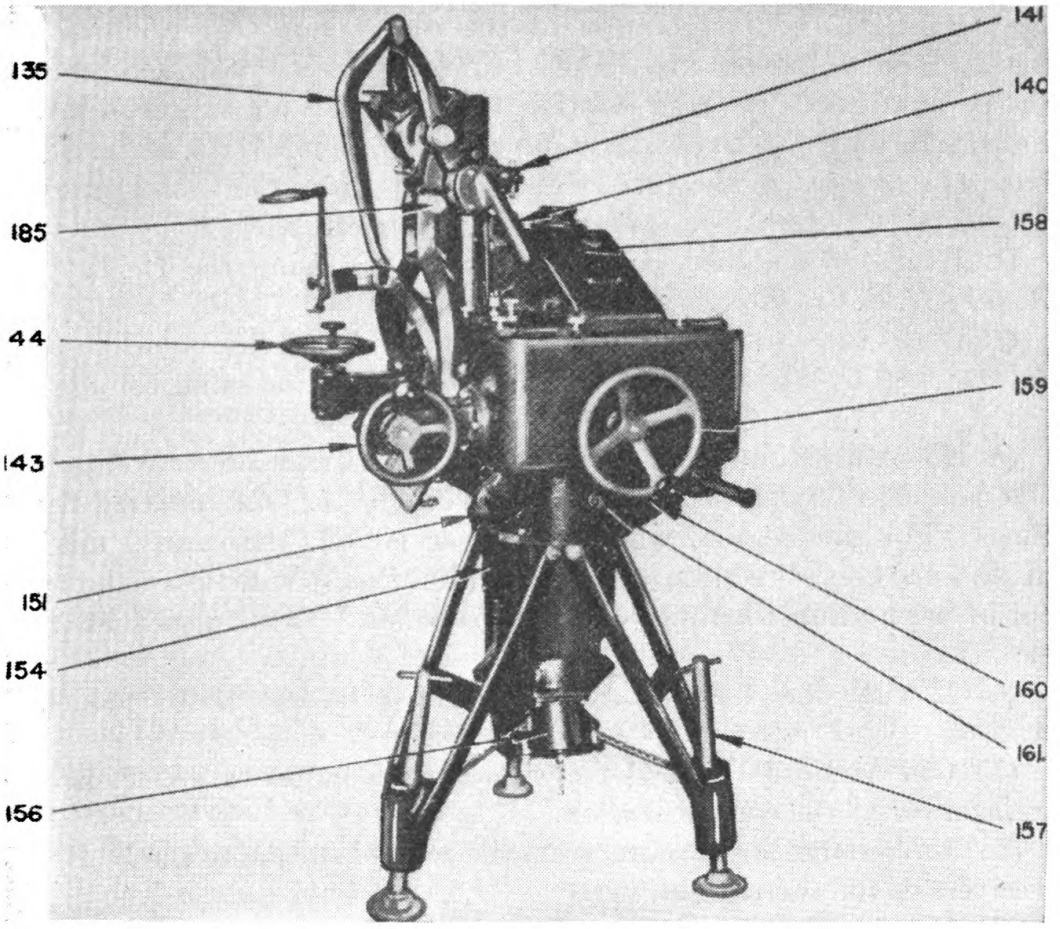
NOTE.—The nomenclature of the M1937, M1939, and M1940 Sperry control stations is the same as the M1941 control station.

FIGURE 59.—Sperry M1941 control station (binocular mount in position).

[1] Omit for all except AA platoon of searchlight battery.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

searchlight, so that when the light elevates or depresses, it causes the rotor to turn. The rotor of the azimuth receiver (mounted on the base of the trunnion arms casting) is geared to the searchlight so that when the light traverses right or left it causes the rotor to turn. When data are sent by the sound locator elevation (or azimuth) transmitter, a zero-reader follow-up system electrically moves a pointer



135. Binocular mount.
140. Binocular height adjusting knob.
141. Binocular mount azimuth slip clutch.
143. Observer's elevation handwheel.
144. Observer's azimuth handwheel.
151. D-c switch.
154. Handhold cover plate.
156. Fifteen-point cable receptacle.
157. Leveling jacks.
158. Elevation zero reader.
159. Elevation zero reader handwheel.
160. Spirit levels.
161. Clamp knob.
185. Binocular mount locking pin.

NOTE.—The nomenclature of the M1937, M1939, and M1940 control stations is the same as the M1941 control station.

FIGURE 60.—The Sperry M1941 control station (binocular mount folded down).

on a zero-reading d-c voltmeter. There are two zero-reading voltmeters for elevation, one mounted on the searchlight and the other on the control station. There are also two azimuth zero-reading voltmeters, one at the searchlight, the other at the control station. When,

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

for example, new elevation data have been sent from the sound locator so as to increase elevation, the elevation zero-reading voltmeter pointers are deflected to the right of their zero (or center) positions. To cause these elevation pointers to go back to the zero position, the elevation distant electric control "zero-reader" handwheel must be turned counterclockwise so as to elevate the searchlight. As the searchlight is elevated it rotates the elevation receiver rotor, which is geared to the searchlight. This rotation of the rotor causes the pointers of the elevation voltmeters to be moved toward the zero position. When the pointers reach the zero position (assuming sound locator, searchlight, and control station have been properly oriented), the searchlight has been elevated to the correct data as sent from the sound locator. The azimuth system operates in a similar manner.

Q. What switch must be turned on before using the D. E. C.? *A*. The D. E. C. switch on the control unit.

Q. What type of distant electric control transmitters are used? *A*. D–c step-by-step transmitters that operate on the same voltage as the arc.

Q. How many times does the azimuth D. E. C. transmitter rotate for one complete revolution of the control unit? *A*. One hundred fifty times. For this reason, when the power is "off," be careful not to disturb the control station or the searchlight as it will throw the two out of orientation when power is put back "on." This also holds for elevation.

Q. Of what does the D. E. C. consist on M1934 to M1941 models? *A*.

(1) One azimuth D. E. C. transmitter and one elevation D. E. C. transmitter at the control station.

(2) Interconnecting circuits from the control station to the D. E. C. receivers at the searchlight.

(3) One azimuth receiver and one elevation receiver are located at the searchlight. These receivers are positioned by movement of their corresponding transmitters. The receivers are powerful enough to cause the searchlight, through shafting and gearing, to move in azimuth or elevation, thereby pointing the searchlight in the desired direction.

Q. Of what does the D. E. C. consist on the MVI control station? *A*.

(1) One azimuth D. E. C. transmitter and one elevation D. E. C. transmitter at the control station.

(2) Interconnecting circuits from the control station to the D. E. C. receivers at the searchlight.

(3) One azimuth receiver and one elevation receiver are located at the searchlight. Each receiver controls its respective training

Digitized by Google
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

motor, so that when the receiver moves it causes the training motor to turn the light.

Q. How is the parallax between the searchlight and control station compensated for? *A.* On control stations equipped with the binocular mount, the binocular mount may be adjusted in azimuth and elevation with reference to the control unit. The observer points on the desired part of the beam by manipulating the binocular mount adjustment handles.

71. Control station (General Electric).—*Q.* Does the General Electric control station differ greatly in appearance from the Sperry M1940 control station? *A.* No. Outwardly, both are similar.

Q. For what purposes is the control station used? *A.*

(1) To control the searchlight movements electrically from a remote point.

(2)[1] To keep the searchlight in synchronization with sound locator data.

(3)[1] To make the searchlight and binoculars search an area about the moving point established by sound locator data.

Q.[1] What type zero-reading voltmeters are used for azimuth and elevation indicators? *A.*[1] These voltmeters are zero-reading a-c voltmeters.

Q.[1] To what are these voltmeters electrically connected? *A.*[1] Through leads in a cable, the azimuth zero-reading voltmeter is connected directly to the "sound locator data" receiver rotor. This receiver is mounted in the base of the searchlight. In a similar manner, the elevation zero-reading voltmeter is connected to the elevation receiver rotor, which is mounted on the left trunnion of the searchlight trunnion arms.

Q.[1] Describe briefly how the zero-reader indicator system functions. *A.*[1] This system is powered by 110-volt alternating current furnished by a rotary converter located on the searchlight. This indicator system has two a-c selsyn transmitters (azimuth and elevation) at the sound locator connected by cable circuits to their respective receivers located on the searchlight. Azimuth and elevation receiver rotors are geared to the searchlight so as to be moved in azimuth and elevation, respectively, as the searchlight is trained. Electrically, the azimuth rotor is connected directly to two a-c zero-reading voltmeters, one mounted on the searchlight and the other on the control station. Similarly, the elevation receiver rotor is connected to two voltmeters, one at the searchlight and the other at the control station. Data sent from the sound locator causes the zero-reading voltmeter

[1] Omit for all except AA platoon of searchlight battery.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

pointers to be deflected from their respective zero positions. By means of the distant electric control, the searchlight is traversed and moved in elevation. By moving the searchlight, so as to agree with sound locator data, the receiver rotors move, thereby causing the pointers of the zero-reading voltmeters to move to their zero positions.

Q. What switches must be turned "on" before using the D. E. C.? *A*. With the power plant delivering power to the searchlight, turn on: the dynamotor switch at the searchlight and the D. E. C. switch at the control station.

Q. What must be done in order to turn the control station in azimuth without disturbing the azimuth D. E. C. transmitter? *A*. The azimuth clutch knob must be in the "release" position.

Q. How many synchronous positions may be had between the control station and the searchlight in azimuth? What precautions should be taken after orientation and synchronization? *A*. Thirty-six. For this reason care must be exercised so that the control station, once oriented and synchronized with the searchlight, is not traversed when the D. E. C. power is "off." For a similar reason, the control station should not be elevated or depressed when the D. E. C. power is "off."

Q. Of what does the distant electric control consist? *A*. It consists of the following main parts:

(1) One selsyn a-c azimuth transmitter and one selsyn a-c elevation transmitter at the control station.

(2) Interconnecting circuits from the control station to the D. E. C. receivers at the searchlight.

(3) Two selsyn a-c receivers, one azimuth and one elevation, located on the searchlight. A heart-shaped cam is mounted on each receiver rotor shaft. Each heart-shaped cam controls a series of resistances in a Wheatstone bridge. Each bridge is connected to the armature of its corresponding training motor.

(4) Training motors are geared to the searchlight in azimuth and elevation.

(5) An electric antihunting device is a part of this system. It prevents the searchlight from "hunting."

Q. Explain briefly how the D. E. C. operates. *A*. When the D. E. C. azimuth and elevation controllers rotate their respective handwheels, the D. E. C. azimuth selsyn transmitter rotors are turned accordingly. Since the transmitters are connected to the receivers, the receiver rotors will be moved correspondingly. This

[1] Omit for all except AA platoon of searchlight battery.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

causes the heart-shaped cam to rotate, shorting out resistances in the Wheatstone bridge. This bridge is powered in such a manner that as resistances are shorted out, the training motor armature (also connected across the bridge) has a current delivered to it. This causes the armature to rotate. By reversing the current through the armature, the direction of rotation of the armature is changed. The direction of the flow of the current is controlled by the direction of rotation of the heart-shaped cam which shorts out the proper resistances.

Q.[1] How is searching accomplished? *A.*[1] The zero-reader voltmeters are used to accomplish oscillation in both elevation and azimuth. This is done by using the distant electric control handwheels so as to cause the pointers of the zero readers to move slowly right or left of the zero position. Limiting graduation marks to the right and left of the zero index have been placed on each zero reader. Moving the pointer of the zero reader so as to stay within these limiting graduations allows a search of 5° in any direction from the moving position of the target as given by sound locator data. The elevation distant electric control handwheel is geared to the binoculars so that the oscillating movement is applied directly to the binoculars in elevation. Turning the azimuth distant electric control handwheel moves the whole control unit in azimuth, and consequently the oscillation is applied in azimuth to both binoculars and the control unit upon which it is mounted.

72. Power plants.—*Q.* What is a rheostat? *A.* It is a variable resistance, which, when inserted in an electric circuit, can control the amount of current which will flow.

Q. Explain how a rheostat is used on the searchlight power plants. *A.* By placing a rheostat in the field circuit of the generator, the amount of exciting current flowing in this circuit can be controlled. This exciting current energizes the electromagnets of the generator field. The more current that flows, the stronger the electromagnets, thereby causing an increase of generated voltage. Decreasing the exciting current decreases the generated voltage. By varying the resistance of the rheostat, the voltage of the generator may be regulated.

Q. What is the purpose of placing fuses in an electric circuit? *A.* Fuses are made of wire which will conduct currents of a given amount through them but which will immediately heat and melt, breaking the circuit, when the current increases beyond its rated

[1] Omit for all except AA platoon of searchlight battery.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

current-carrying capacity. Fuses are used to protect delicate electrical instruments or expensive parts of an electrical system.

Q. What other type of interrupter is used by the searchlight unit? *A.* Circuit breaker.

Q. Briefly explain how a circuit breaker operates. *A.* There are many kinds of circuit breakers. Some are controlled magnetically, some by heat, and others by a combination of heat and a magnetic field. Some are adjustable for different current ratings; others are built for but one current rating. When a current larger than the current rating for that particular circuit breaker flows through it, the breaker opens the circuit so as to prevent damage to the equipment.

Q. Can a person be injured by improper maintenance or operation of searchlight equipment? *A.* Yes. A person can be killed.

Q. What precautions should be taken to prevent injury? *A.* Always be certain that the power plant main switch is "off" when maintenance work is done on the searchlight. Always be certain the power plant is not running when performing the normal power plant maintenance work. Repairs of an electrical nature should be made by the electrical sergeant attached to the platoon. An operator should know where his current comes from and where it goes—in other words he should know how to trace the electrical circuits on the equipment. This will not only make him more efficient but will prevent his sustaining injuries or burns by touching a live lead at some exposed point.

Q. Describe the power plant with which your searchlight is powered. *A.*

(1) *M1941, M1940, M1939, and M1937 power plants (Sperry).*—Each unit is a complete power plant consisting of a gasoline engine directly connected to a d-c generator, control equipment and power panel, and the chassis and housing.

(*a*) The power plant is equipped with standard automobile wheels and tires and can be towed by a truck for short distances over good roads. On long hauls it is transported in a truck or trailer.

(*b*) The engines are Hercules JXD, six-cylinder, with one spark plug per cylinder. They are equipped with engine accessories found commonly on all gasoline engines, including radiator, distributor, generator, ignition coil, starting motor, and battery. Engines are equipped with governors to control engine speed as follows:

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Model	Arc load on	Arc load off
	(*Rpm*)	(*Rpm*)
M1941	1, 100	1, 150
M1940	1, 000	1, 050
M1939	1, 200	875–900
M1937	1, 200	875–900

(*c*) The d-c generators are rated as follows:

Model	M1941	M1940	M1939	M1937
Make	Westinghouse SK 90 Special	Westinghouse SK 93 Special	Westinghouse SK 93 Special	G. E. Type GT-1501-El.
Rpm:				
Arc load off	1, 150	1, 050	875–900	875–900
Arc load on	1, 100	1, 000	1, 200	1, 200
Volts (arc on or off)	100	100	100	100
Amperes:				
Arc load off	12	12	15	15
Arc load on	162	162	165	165
Kilowatts output	16. 2	16. 2	16. 5	16. 5

(*d*) The engine and generator may be completely controlled from the power panel. Control is automatic but provision is made for hand control.

(2) *M1940 power plant* (*General Electric*).—The General Electric power plant consists of—

(*a*) A gasoline engine and auxiliaries, including radiator, fan, and governor for control of engine speed, having the following characteristics:

1. The engine is a Hercules JXD, six-cylinder, with one spark plug per cylinder.

2. It has a force feed system of lubrication and an oil filter.

3. It is equipped with a governor to control engine speed at 1,200 rpm.

4. It is equipped with engine accessories found commonly on all gasoline engines, including radiator, distributor, generator, ignition coil, starting motor, and battery.

(*b*) A d-c generator direct-connected to the engine with four main and two commutating poles, weighing 650 pounds, and having the following electrical characteristics:

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

	Volts	Amperes	Rpm	Kilowatts
Arc load off (Listening load for AA lights.)	100	8	1, 200	0. 8
Arc load on	100	160	1, 200	16. 0

(*c*) A control panel on which are mounted—

1. Power-indicating instruments.

2. Power main switch.

3. Field rheostat.

4. Tachometer (to indicate engine speed).

5. Engine indicators, to include a temperature indicator and an oil pressure gage.

6. Lighting facilities.

(*d*) Suitable chassis and housing for military purposes. Standard automobile wheels and tires are used. The power plant may be towed by a truck for short distances over good roads.

(3) *M1934 portable power plant (Sperry).*—The M1934 portable power plant is a complete portable unit mounted on chassis provided with four small steel wheels. This unit can be moved for short distances over hard surfaces. For long hauls this unit is transported on a "portable equipment trailer."

(*a*) The generator is a 31.25-kw, 125-volt, 250-ampere, 1,400-rpm, differential compound generator, directly coupled to the engine. It supplies power for the arc as follows:

	Volts	Amperes	Rpm
Arc load on	100	165	1, 200
Arc load off (Listening load for AA lights.)	102	15	850

(*b*) The control panel or switchboard is mounted on the rear end of the power plant, and contains the following main units:

1. Circuit breaker for the arc load.

2. Lead setting switch, which is used to select 150-, 200-, or 250-ampere load.

3. Voltage manual rheostat, which is used to adjust the voltage when using manual control.

4. Voltage automatic rheostat, which provides a fine adjustment of voltage when generator is on automatic operation.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

5. D-c load ammeter.

6. D-c generator voltmeter.

7. Tachometer.

(*c*) The control of the power unit is fully automatic. If desired, it may be manually controlled.

(*d*) The engine is a Hercules model WXC–3, six-cylinder gasoline engine and has both battery and magneto ignition with two spark plugs per cylinder.

(4) *M1934 mobile power plant* (*Sperry*).—The M1934 power plant utilizes the engine of the Duplex truck for driving the generator. The vehicle engine is a six-cylinder General Motors engine, delivering 112.5 horsepower at 2,800 rpm.

(*a*) The generator is a d-c commutating pole type with self-excited shunt wound fields mounted in rear of the transmission. The voltage of the generator is controlled by an automatic regulator. The speed of the engine and generator is controlled by a mechanical governor driven by, and located on, the engine. With certain minor adjustments, the generator supplies power for the arc under the following conditions:

	Volts	Amperes	Rpm
Arc load on	98	165	1, 100
Arc load off	101	15	900
(Listening load for AA lights.)			

(*b*) The control panel is mounted directly behind the driver's seat. The panel contains the necessary control apparatus to adjust and maintain constant voltage. There are in addition necessary protective devices such as relays, instruments, and resistors. The front of the control panel contains the following:

1. D-c voltmeter.

2. D-c ammeter.

3. Rheostat to select and adjust the voltage.

4. Circuit breaker for the searchlight current.

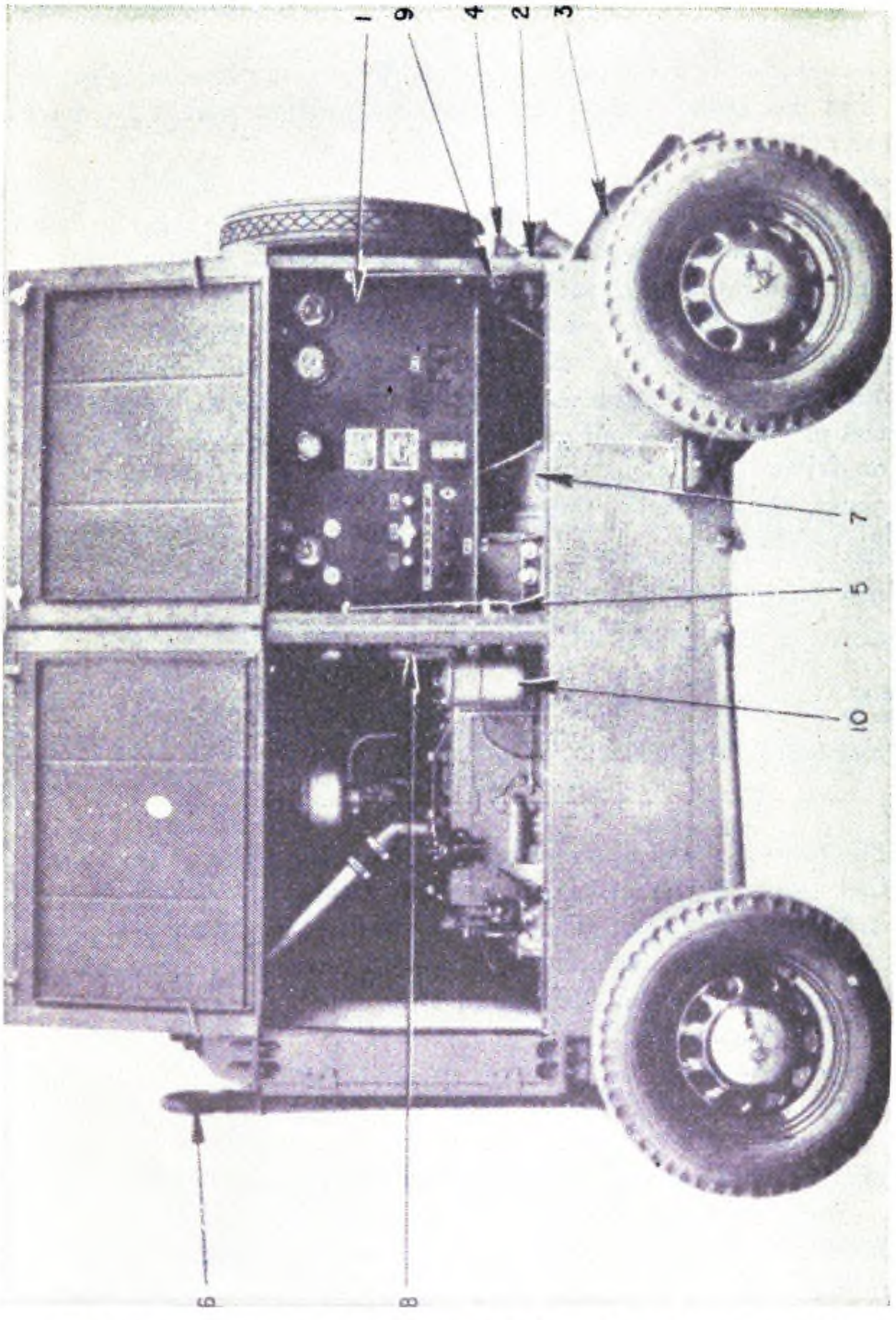
(*c*) The rotary converter is a portable unit and is usually placed near the control station.

(5) *MVI power plant* (*Sperry*).—(*a*) A Duplex truck transports the searchlight and furnishes the power for operation of the searchlight.

(*b*) A 15-kw flat compounded d-c generator, designed to deliver 150 amperes at 100 volts with an engine speed of 1,800 rpm, is mounted

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

on the chassis in rear of the transmission. A hand clutch is located in the cab so that the tail shaft may engage and operate the d-c generator or the rear axle.



1. Control panel.
2. Power receptacles.
3. Fuel tank.
4. Tail lamp.
5. Control panel door bracket.
6. Tow bar.
7. Power generator.
8. Fan.
9. Tail lamp switch.
10. Oil filter.

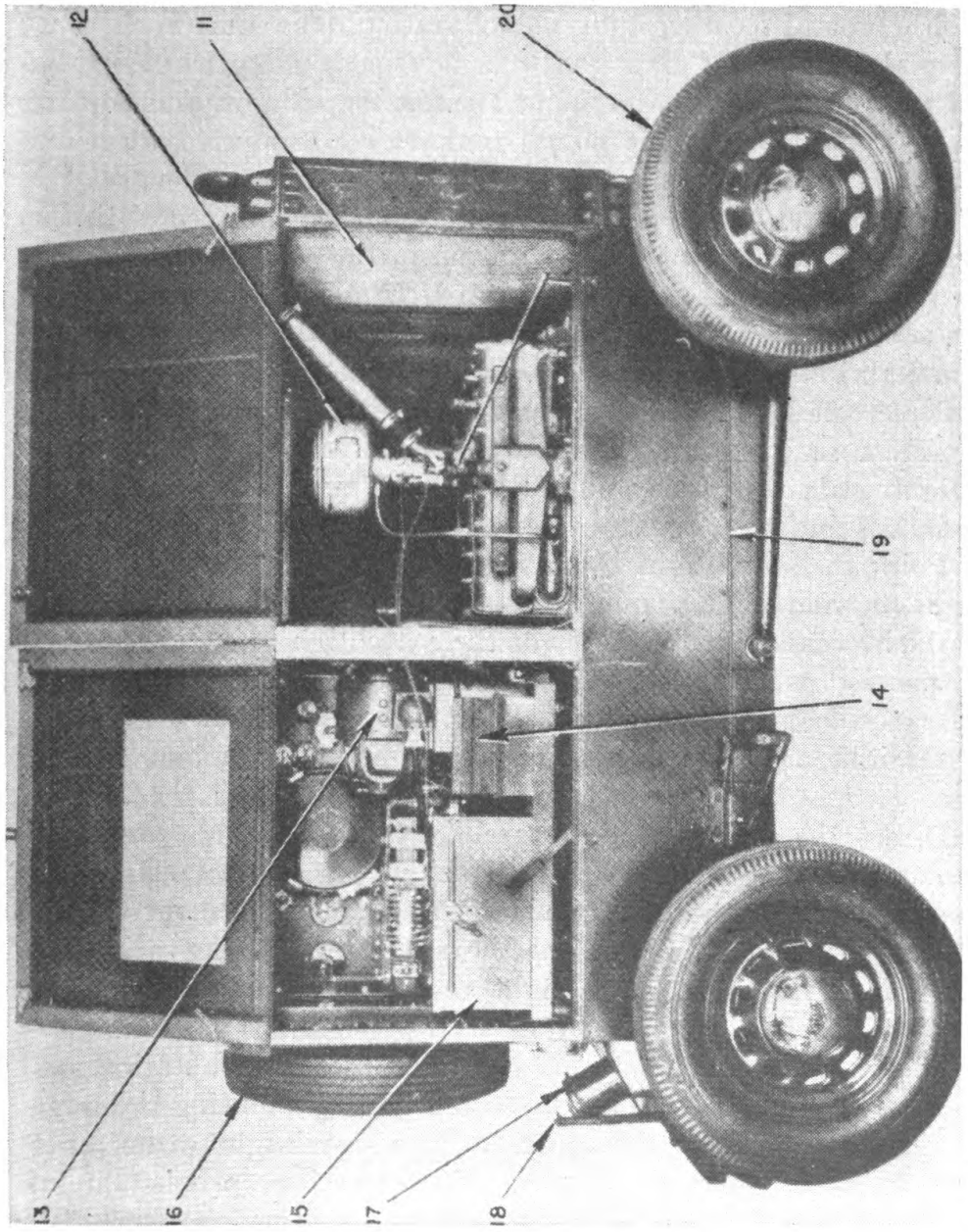
FIGURE 61.—Sperry M1941 power plant (left side).

(*c*) The power panel is mounted directly behind the driver's seat and includes the following:

1. Circuit breakers for the searchlight current.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

2. Field rheostat for adjusting the voltage.
3. D-c voltmeter.
4. D-c ammeter.
5. A-c voltmeter to indicate a-c voltage from rotary converter.
6. A switch for starting the rotary converter.



11. Radiator. 13. Fan motor. 15. Tool box. 17. Fuel tank filler pipe. 19. Safety chain brake cable.
12. Air filter. 14. Battery. 16. Spare wheel and tire. 18. Brake lever. 20. Exhaust.

FIGURE 62.—Sperry M1941 power plant (right side).

(*d*) A ¾-kva, 3,600-rpm, 60 cycle, single-phase rotary converter is mounted on the right-hand running board. It converts 100 volts direct current from the searchlight generator into 120 volts alternating current (used with AA searchlights for the a-c data transmission system employed by the comparator).

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(*e*) The truck engine serves as the power plant. It is a six-cylinder, 55-horsepower Buda type DW-6 engine. A flywheel governor is provided for maintaining an engine speed of 1,800 rpm when driving the generator.

73. Orientation and synchronization.—*Q.*[1] Briefly describe how a searchlight unit is oriented and synchronized. *A.*[1] Level the searchlight, sound locator, and control station. Two methods commonly used are:

(1) Direct the sights of the sound locator, searchlight, and control station at a star (or distant point) and set all azimuth scales and indicators to zero. For units equipped with the zero reader, set the zero-reader pointers to the zero position. In units equipped with the MVI control station, point control station in the same general direction as the searchlight and sound locator. For elevation, set sound locator, searchlight, and control station binoculars to zero elevation, then cause all indicators to indicate zero elevation.

(2) Direct the sights of the sound locator and searchlight on each other. Then set the sound locator azimuth scale to zero and the searchlight scale to 180° (or 3,200 mils). Traverse searchlight to zero azimuth and set all azimuth indicators (zero reader's also) to zero. Point the searchlight by its sights on the control station and backsight the control station on the searchlight by pointing the large end of the binoculars at the center of the searchlight drum. For elevation, proceed as in (1) above.

Q.[2] Briefly describe how a searchlight unit is oriented. *A.*[2] Level the searchlight and control station. Two methods commonly used are:

(1) Direct the sights of the searchlight and control station at a star (or distant point) and set all azimuth scales correctly. In units equipped with the MVI control station, point control station in the same general direction as the searchlight using orienting stakes. For elevation, set searchlight and control station binoculars to zero elevation.

(2) Point the searchlight by its sights on the control station and backsight the control station on the searchlight by pointing the large end of the binoculars at the center of the searchlight drum. Set azimuth scales to correct azimuth. For elevation, proceed as in (1) above.

Q. Where can detailed instructions be found for orienting and synchronizing? *A.* In operator's manual furnished with the equipment.

[1] Omit for all except AA platoon of searchlight battery.
[2] Omit for AA searchlights.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

74. Maintenance, care, and adjustment of parts.—*Q.* Where can full instructions covering maintenance, care, and adjustment of the searchlight unit equipment be found? *A.* This information is found in the operator's manual issued with the equipment. *These instructions should be followed exactly.*

Q. What is the chief responsibility of the searchlight lamp operator? *A.* To see that the carbons are properly placed at all times and are functioning properly. Failure to do this will cause burning of the positive or negative head which, in turn, will drop hot metal on the mirror, thereby damaging it.

Q. What care should be taken of the generator? *A.* The generator must be carefully watched while in operation. The ventilating system must be carefully checked to see that it is operating correctly. Excessive sparking should be reported to the section leader or maintenance sergeant who will supervise cleaning of the commutator bars.

Q. Should the generator be oiled? Explain. *A.* Yes. But only at the points indicated by oil cups or grease receptacles. Grease on the commutator bars or other electrical contact points should be avoided.

Q. How should carbons be stored? *A.* In a cool, dry place and, if possible, in the original container until ready for use.

Q. What care should be taken of the lamp mechanism? *A.* It should be properly cleaned and lubricated at all times. Care should be taken not to permit grease to collect around the contact elements as this will impair the contacts of the brushes and cause faulty functioning.

Q. How should electric cables be handled so that they are not damaged? Why? *A.* Cables should be carried by the crew and not dragged along the ground. Especially the plug couplings should not be dragged. These are made of aluminum alloy and when they are dragged along the ground in winding cable, they become distorted in shape and will not fit properly in the receptacle. Also, each contact is connected within the plug to a small lead of the cable. Dragging will cause breaking of these small conductor leads, thus interrupting the system. No pulling strain should ever be applied on cables while removing plugs. Take hold of the plug itself and pull it out.

Q. What are some general rules pertaining to loading and unloading the searchlight? *A.* Do not use excessive speed in loading or unloading. Never force the searchlight into position in the vehicle. Seek out the cause of the interference and remove it. Be sure that the bows do not interfere when loading and unloading the searchlight.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Do not leave a long positive carbon in the searchlight when loading it. The carbon will probably break off and may drop on the front door window, breaking the glass.

SECTION III

TROUBLES AND REMEDIES

	Paragraph
Circuits	75
Lamps	76
Switches	77
Ammeters and voltmeters	78
Miscellaneous	79

75. Circuits.—*Q.* What instruments are used for making ordinary tests of defective circuits in searchlight matériel? *A.* A voltmeter can be used and all searchlights should be provided with test lamps consisting of an incandescent globe with two insulated leads projecting from the socket containing the globe. With power on the circuit, the live lines can be tested with this light. For testing for faults in circuits where no power is applied during the test, a voltmeter, telephone receiver, or buzzer, with a battery in series, may be used. Numerous variations of the above method may be improvised.

Q. What are the chief sources of trouble in d-c electrical systems? *A.* Open circuits, short circuits, and grounds.

Q. How is the test for each made? *A.*

(1) *Open circuits.*—Complete a known circuit by wiring together any open leads, for instance, the positive and negative power leads in a nine-conductor cable. Locate the other ends of the two leads and test across these two with the buzzer arrangement described above. If the circuit is complete there will be a buzz or click. If no impulse is received the circuit is open.

(2) *Grounds.*—Connect one terminal of the test set to a live lead. The other terminal of the test set should then touch the frame of the searchlight or instrument where a ground is suspected. If there is a ground in the circuit, an impulse will be received in the test set. If the line is clear, there will be no sound.

(3) *Short circuits.*—Be sure that the two lines being tested are not connected so that there is no completed circuit through them normally. Test at several places along the cable and if there is a short circuit some place in the line there will be a completed circuit through the test set.

76. Lamps.—*Q.* Power on the system of an electrically controlled searchlight is indicated by the glow of the incandescent bulbs at

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

various points of the system. If an incandescent lamp goes out, what does this indicate and what is the remedy? *A.* Usually this indicates a blown fuse. Examine the fuse with a test lamp but do not replace it without first attempting to discover the cause of the excessive current. This trouble may also be caused by open circuits, loose or broken contacts, or burned-out bulbs.

Q. What are some of the causes of lamps becoming dim during operation of the searchlight? *A.*

(1) Wire connections to the switch defective.
(2) Lamp socket terminal loose.
(3) Halves of the connectors making good contact.
(4) Defective connections at the lamp.
(5) Fluctuations in voltage.

Q. What causes lamps to flicker? *A.*

(1) Loose connections.
(2) Voltage fluctuations.
(3) Intermittent short circuits.

Q. In the automatic control searchlights, how are the functions of the various searchlight mechanisms tested prior to actually starting the arc? *A.* With no carbons in place, apply the supply voltage to the searchlights for a brief period and check up on the operation of the fan motor and positive and negative feed mechanisms. Operation of the feed motor should cause the positive and negative mechanisms to rotate in the proper directions.

Q. After the arc current has been supplied and the arc starts burning, what is the first thing the operator should do? *A.* Check up on the voltage. The voltage is indicated on the meter at the searchlight and should be 72 to 78 volts for fixed light and 78 to 80 volts for mobile lights with a current of approximately 150 amperes.

Q. What is the maximum voltage permitted at the generator terminals, as indicated on the voltmeter at the power plant? *A.* 120 volts. The voltage should be regulated within 5 volts of 100 at all times by use of the field rheostat.

Q.[1] When the arc is struck, what does the light operator do if the negative carbon does not move back from positive properly? *A.*[1] Open door at rear of lamp compartment and push in clutch crank, turning it to the left to feed the carbon backward.

Q.[1] What should be done with respect to the positive carbon? *A.*[1] Observe it to be sure that it is rotating properly and that it is at the proper point with respect to the positive head (one-half inch in front of quartz bushing of head).

[1] Fixed searchlights only.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q.[1] How are hand adjustments of the positive carbon made? *A.*[1] By means of the push button on the thermostat box which holds the contacts of the thermostat together. If this method fails, the circuit of the thermostat electromagnet is probably open; then the second means of hand feed must be used. This is accomplished by opening door in rear of lamp compartment and pushing in hand lever and pulling it down until it catches. Maintain the lever in this position until desired feed is obtained.

Q.[2] When the arc is struck, what does the lamp operator do if the negative feed does not move back from the positive properly? *A.*[2] First, shift the centralizing knob from "auto" to "hand." Then move the negative carbon back by the negative feed knob. Do not use the arc regulating mechanism to adjust the position of the negative carbon until the light has been burning for several minutes.

Q.[2] What should be done with respect to the positive carbon? *A.*[2] Check to be sure that it is rotating properly and that it is at the proper point with respect to the positive head. The crater of the positive carbon should normally be eleven-sixteenths inch in front of the positive head nose.

Q.[2] How are hand adjustments of the positive carbon made? *A.*[2] By means of the positive hand feed knob. It can be fed forward only.

77. Switches.—*Q.* Where is the main switch at the searchlight? *A.*

(1) *Fixed lights.*—The switch is on the side of the contactor panel box which is on the trunnion arm of the light.

(2) *Mobile lights.*—On the later model searchlight the switch is on the trunnion arm. On other models the switch is on a terminal box mounted on one axle.

Q. Point out the switches on the searchlight in use by your organization and tell what each is for. *A.* ———.

Q. What general care should be given to switches? *A.*

(1) They should be examined frequently to see that the blades seat properly.

(2) All leads should be tightly connected.

(3) All contact surfaces should be kept free from grease and dirt at all times.

(4) The switches must be thrown and released quickly to prevent arcing. Arcing will fuse some of the copper and roughen the contact surface.

(5) All fused metal should be filed off.

[1] Fixed searchlights only.
[2] Mobile searchlights only.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

78. Ammeters and voltmeters.—*Q.* What care should be given to voltmeters and ammeters? *A.* They should be protected from jars. If the indicator needle in an instrument sticks, tap the instrument case gently. If it fails to respond to this treatment, do not try to repair it in the field. A voltmeter or ammeter is a delicate instrument and must be carefully calibrated during the process of readjustment.

Q. How should ammeters be connected in a circuit? *A.* In series with the line.

Q. How should voltmeters be connected in a circuit? *A.* Across the line.

79. Miscellaneous.—*Q.* Name some of the causes which necessitate removing and cleaning the generator brushes. *A.*

(1)[1] If the ventilating windows of the generator are left open during road travel, dust, dirt, and dampness will enter and corrode both the brushes and commutator. In this case it will be necessary to remove the brushes and clean the contact surfaces. The commutator likewise should be cleaned.

(2) Sometimes the brushes wear unevenly or the commutator becomes rough in ordinary usage. The brushes should be removed as soon as this is detected and new ones inserted in their places. The old brushes may later be reground and used as spares. The commutator may be smoothed out by using light sandpaper, but care must be taken not to cut too much from the surface and not to fill up the insulation gap between the bars with sand dust. Under no circumstances should a metallic or emery cutter be used on the commutator.

(3) If oil accumulates on the contact surfaces of the brushes or on the commutator the functioning of the generator will not be satisfactory and the commutator and brushes should be thoroughly cleaned.

Q. How should all clearances between electric contact points be set? *A.* Usually with micrometer tools. In adjusting the distant electric control, the instructions in the book furnished with the unit should be carefully followed. All other adjustments should be made according to instructions in the pamphlets issued.

Q. When dismantling equipment, what precautions should be taken to prevent loss of parts? *A.* A canvas or box should be made available so that the parts may be placed therein as soon as removed. Retaining screws and washers may be replaced in their threads for safekeeping. Care should be taken to keep the parts clean after their removal and they should be wiped off before being replaced.

[1] Mobile lights only.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. In general, what "trouble shooting" should a chief of section be prepared to do? *A.* He should be able to locate and repair minor troubles and keep the system in operation under ordinary conditions. He should have enough knowledge to protect the equipment from extensive damage, determine the apparatus at fault, and be able to assist the electrician sergeant in locating trouble and making repairs to the electrical equipment.

SECTION IV

SOUND-LOCATOR APPARATUS

	Paragraph
General	80
Sound locator problem	81
Sound locators	82
Acoustic correctors	83
Maintenance, care, and adjustment of parts	84

80. General.—*a.* A successful method of detection of enemy aircraft at night is by means of the sound coming from the aircraft. As an aid to ears, sound locators are used. Persons having normal hearing can detect the direction from which a sound comes. This sense of determining direction of a source of sound is called the binaural sense. It depends upon the fact that the ears can detect the very small difference in time, between the time the ear closer to the sound source hears it and the time the other ear hears it. To aid binaural sense, the distance between the ears is increased by the use of horns, a distance of 60 inches between horns giving excellent results. The horn also intensifies the sound, its action being similar to that of placing the cupped hand behind the ear as an aid.

b. Since sound takes an appreciable amount of time to travel through air (approximately 1,100 feet per second), the airplane will travel during this "sound lag" interval. Consequently there should be a "sound lag correction" applied to the apparent source of sound determined by the sound locator, an acoustic corrector being used to make this sound lag correction.

c. Sound locators now in service are either of the M1 or M2 series. The particular models of trailer and corrector which make up the sound locators, M1 series, are tabulated below. The horns and horn mounts are essentially alike in this series, differing only in details of manufacture.

Sound locator	M1A1	M1A2	M1A3	M1A4	M1A5	M1A6	M1A7	M1A8
Trailer	M2	M2A1	M2A2	M2A3	M2A2	M2A3	M3	M2A4
Corrector	M1	M1	M1	M1	M1A2	M1A1	M2	M2

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

d. The M2 sound locator is the latest type in use by our service. It is portable, breaking down into six component parts for transportation. It employs a new type of acoustic corrector which is much more efficient than that in the M1 series.

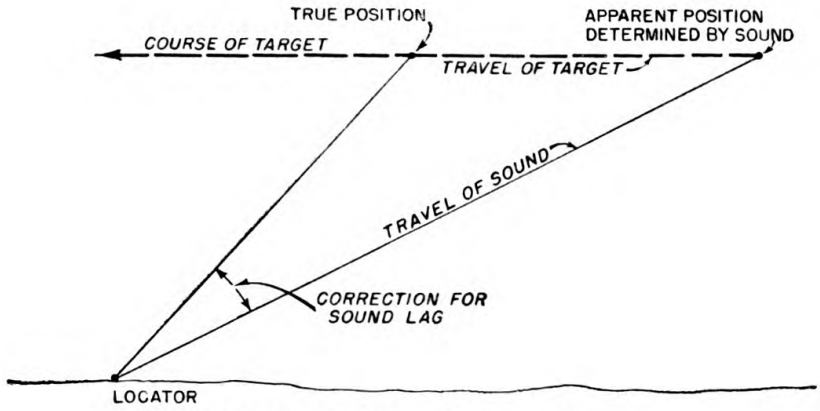


FIGURE 63.—Sound lag correction.

81. Sound locator problem.—*Q.* What is the speed of sound in air? *A.* It is approximately 1,100 feet per second.

Q. If the distance from a sound locator to a sound source is 11,000 feet, how long will it take for the sound to reach the sound locator? *A.* Ten seconds. By the time the sound has arrived at the sound locator the plane has moved to its "true position."

Q. What is this time interval called? *A.* The "sound lag" interval.

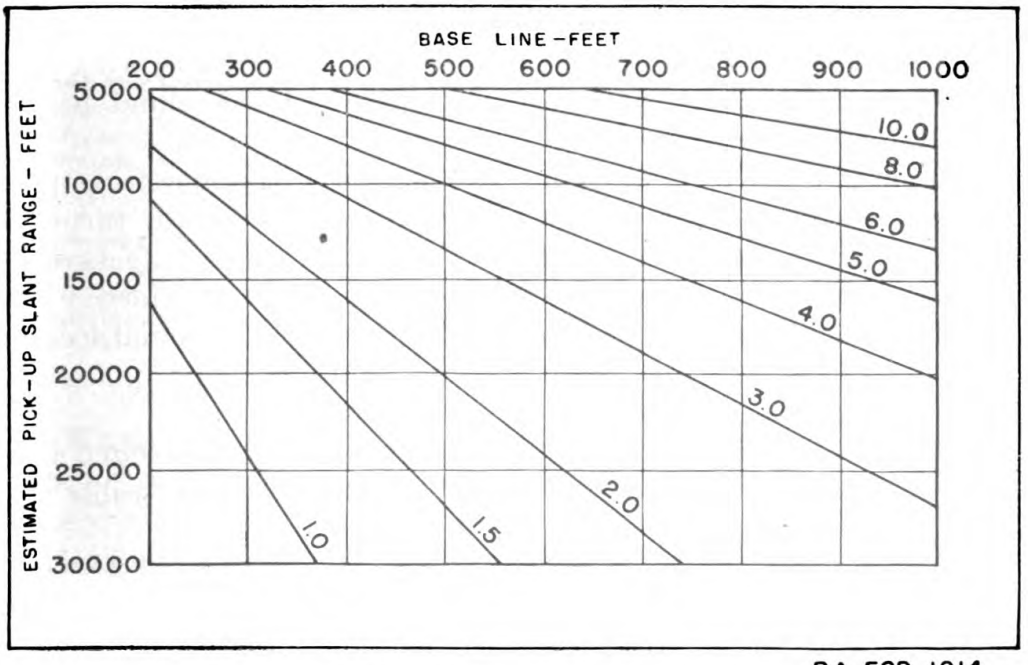


FIGURE 64.—Graph of parallax settings.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What effect does wind have on sound? *A.* It has the effect of apparently displacing the sound source in the direction the wind is going.

Q. Is there any error introduced by placing the searchlight some distance away from the sound locator? *A.* Yes. This introduces a parallax error for which a correction must be made.

Q. Will the searchlight always pick up the target immediately after the sound lag, wind, and parallax corrections are applied? *A.* No. Atmospheric conditions change continuously, causing slight errors. These errors, with well-trained personnel, are not over 5°. For this reason searchlight control stations are designed to allow for a 5° search around the sound-locator data.

Q. How are sound locator operators chosen? *A.* The men who are best suited for this work should be selected from battery personnel on the following basis:

(1) Desire to become a sound locator operator.

(2) Patience and attentiveness.

(3) Acuity of hearing. Usually people living in a noisy city do not have the acuity of hearing of those who live in quiet places. To be certain a person has the necessary acuity of hearing he should be given a test, preferably by a medical officer.

82. Sound locators.—*Q.* What is the approximate weight of the M1 series sound locator and trailer? *A.* Approximately 2¾ tons.

Q. Describe the horns used on the M1 series sound locator. *A.* Four metal horns are used, two for azimuth and two for elevation. The distance from center to center of a pair of horns is approximately 111 inches. Horns must be removed from their operating position to their traveling position supports before the sound locator is ready for the road.

Q. How is the M1 series sound locator put in the operating position? *A.* Jack up the trailer and level the sound locator turntable by means of the four jacks suspended from the frame. Jacks must be held rigidly in position by the retaining pins provided. Two leveling jacks on the turntable are used in leveling the sound locator. Horns must be removed from traveling supports and placed on operating supports.

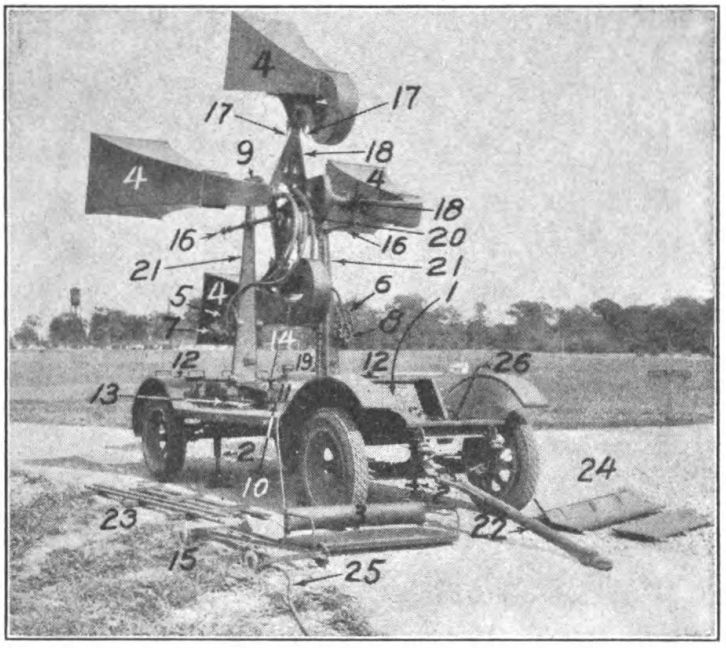
Q. What is the total traveling weight of the M2 series sound locator? *A.* The total traveling weight, including cable and cable reel, is slightly over one-half ton.

Q. Describe the horns used on the M2 sound locator. *A.* Three horns are used. A common horn with a split sound track serves a dual purpose, being used for both azimuth and elevation. Different

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

materials are used in the horns so as to reduce unnecessary noise. Horns are 60 inches apart, vertically and laterally.

Q. How has the M2 series sound locator been made more efficient than the older models? *A.* By better construction, thereby decreasing noise caused by the moving parts, and by using a horn which is directional, thereby eliminating all noise except in the direction of the target. The horns pick up and intensify all sounds 15° on either side of the center line of the horn.



1. Sound lag corrector.
2. Jacks.
3. Front seat (removed).
4. Horns.
5. Traversing handwheel.
6. Elevating handwheel.
7. Head set (azimuth).
8. Head set (elevation).
9. Horn bearings.
10. Azimuth circle.
11. Turntable.
12. Seats for operators.
13. Foot rest.
14. Adjustable locking screws.
15. Horn locking frame (removed).
16. Traveling horn supports.
17. Hand clamp screws.
18. Horn support sections.
19. Elevation control shaft.
20. Rubber tubes.
21. Vertical columns.
22. Towing bar.
23. Side frames.
24. Covers for acoustic corrector.
25. Cable leading to comparator.
26. Brake handle.

FIGURE 65.—Sound locator M1A1.

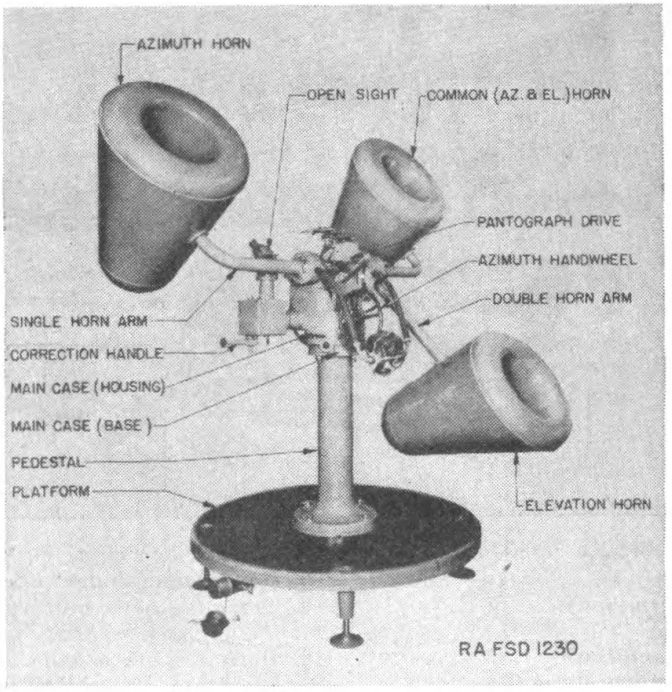
Q. What precautions in regard to noise should be taken by the operating personnel of the sound locator? *A.* Operators should work with a minimum of noise. Sound discipline must be strictly enforced in the vicinity of the sound locator.

Q. Of what does the acoustical system for both the M1 and M2 series consist? *A.* It consists of horns, sound-conducting tubing, and listener's helmets.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What are the six component parts for transportation of the M2 series sound locator? *A.*

	Pounds
Two-horn assembly with horn covers	114
Single horn assembly	67
Corrector assembly with carrying case and spare parts	330
Column	30
Platform	130
Cable and cable reels	395
Total	1,066



① Azimuth side.

FIGURE 66.—Sound locator.

Q. How are the component parts of the M2 sound locator assembled. *A.*

(1) Place platform on firm footing and level it approximately.

(2) Place column on platform and bolt it down.

(3) Place corrector assembly on column. Be certain that cable plug is dropped down through column first. Bolt assembly in place. Place plug in bracket mounted under platform. Remove transportation bracket from assembly.

(4) Elevate to maximum elevation and tighten in place by elevation clamp.

(5) Bolt single horn assembly in place; then bolt double horn

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

assembly in place. Keep canvas covers on horns while assembling. Remove all covers after horns are in place.

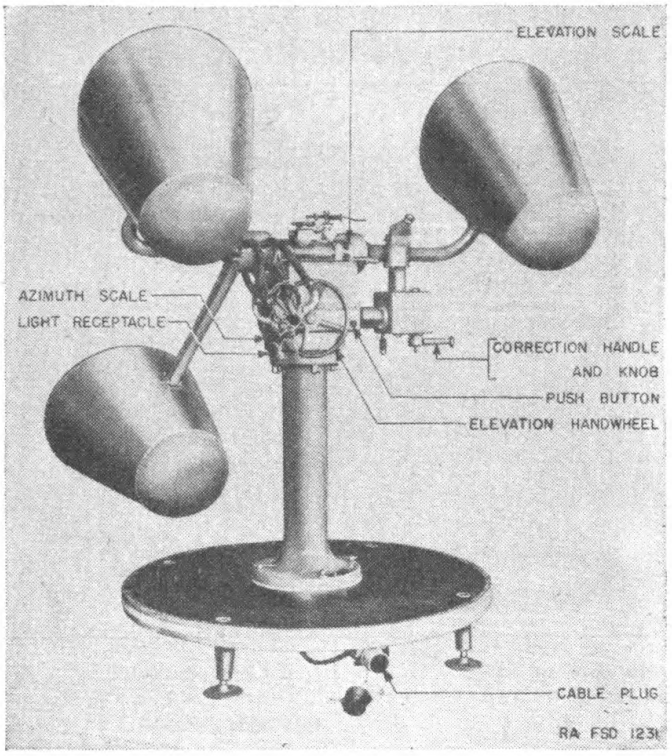
(6) Mount pantograph on the drive case.

(7) Connect cable to receptacle plug.

(8) Level whole unit by means of level bubble mounted on corrector assembly.

83. Acoustic correctors.—*Q.* What three corrections are acoustic correctors designed to make? *A.*

(1) Sound lag correction.



② Elevation side.

FIGURE 66.—Sound locator.—Continued.

(2) Wind correction.

(3) Parallax corrections.

Q. In the M1, M1A1, and M2 acoustic correctors, how are these three corrections applied? (This M2 acoustic corrector is entirely different from the one mounted on the M2 sound locator.) *A.*

(1) *M1 and M1A1 acoustic correctors.*—As the operators track the apparent sound source, the azimuth and elevation transmitters are positioned accordingly.

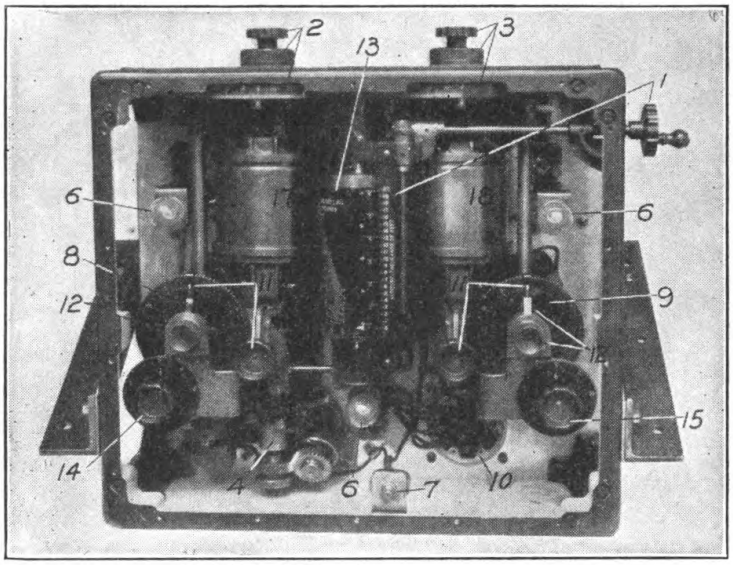
(*a*) The platoon commander orders the altitude (in feet) to be used. This is applied by the altitude setting knob which positions

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

the altitude pointer over sound lag time curves appearing on the sound lag cylinder.

(*b*) The sound lag cylinder rotates as the locator elevates. Sound lag time is read under the altitude pointer. Operators using a stop watch press down on the operating knobs for a period equal to the sound lag time. Sound lag corrections are indicated on inner dial pointers.

(*c*) Outer dial pointers are matched to inner dial pointers by using the lateral and vertical rate matching knobs, and this operation applies sound lag corrections through differentials to the transmitters.



1. Altitude scale and setting knob.
2. Corrected azimuth scale and releasing knob.
3. Corrected elevation scale and releasing knob.
4. Differential gears.
6. Lamp.
7. Lamp switch.
8. Predicting mechanism and scale, azimuth prediction.
9. Predicting mechanism and scale, elevation prediction.
10. Plug receptacle.
11. Outer predictor scale pointers and operating knobs.
12. Inner predictor scale pointers and operating knobs and clutch operating buttons.
13. Sound lag drum and chart.
14. Spotting correction knob, azimuth.
15. Spotting correction knob, elevation.
17. Data transmitter, azimuth.
18. Data transmitter, elevation.

FIGURE 67.—Acoustic corrector M1.

(*d*) Wind and parallax corrections are determined by the platoon commander and are applied to the azimuth and elevation data through the arbitrary correction scale knobs.

(2) *M2 acoustic corrector.*—The M2 acoustic corrector eliminates the use of a stop watch to measure the sound lag time interval.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Instead, it uses a motor which causes a tripping device to rotate once every 10 seconds, measuring azimuth and vertical angular rates for 6 seconds, and allowing 4 seconds for matching pointers before the next cycle begins.

(*a*) A sound lag time computing cam, rotated in elevation and moved right or left in altitude (in feet) solves for the sound lag time. This cam positions the lateral and vertical multiplying cams up or down according to time. Pointers on the lateral and vertical tachometer rate dials indicate the rate of movement in azimuth and elevation, respectively. Matching the rate indices with these pointers by means of the rate matching knobs rotates the multiplying cams in order to solve for time multiplied by rate, which equals sound lag. When pointers are matched the transmitters are positioned to include the sound lag corrections.

(*b*) Wind and parallax corrections are determined by the platoon commander and are applied to the azimuth and elevation data through the arbitrary correction scale knobs.

Q. How are sound locators equipped with M1, M1A1, or M2 acoustic correctors oriented? *A*.

(1) Level sound locator.

(2) Point sound locator at orienting point (star, searchlight, or distant point) and by means of the releasing knobs (lateral rate at zero) adjust azimuth scale to zero.

(3) Move horns to the zero elevation position, then by means of the releasing knob (vertical rate at zero) adjust vertical scale to zero.

Q. How is the M2 sound locator oriented? *A*.

(1) Level sound locator. (Set the target speed to zero.)

(2) Set the parallax scale to zero.

(3) Loosen the azimuth clamp knob (in center of azimuth handwheel) and point sound locator at the orienting point (star, searchlight, or distant point) by using the corrector sight and lining up the pantograph pointer with the orienting point.

(4) Tighten azimuth clamp knob to keep sound locator from moving.

(5) Loosen the azimuth sound locator scale and set so that the index pointer indicates zero azimuth.

(6) Push down on the declutching gear and rotate the parallax cam until the arrow on top of the cam points directly at the searchlight, then remesh gearing.

(7) Depress horns to zero elevation as shown on elevation scale.

Q. How is wind corrected for in the M2 sound locator corrector? *A*. The air speed of the plane is used instead of the ground speed.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

This corrects for the wind component parallel to the course of the plane. Wind component perpendicular to the course is neglected as it is too small to effect the data.

Q. In the M2 series sound locator corrector, does the parallax correction apply for all situations? *A.* No. The base-line distance between the sound locator and searchlight must be known. In addition,

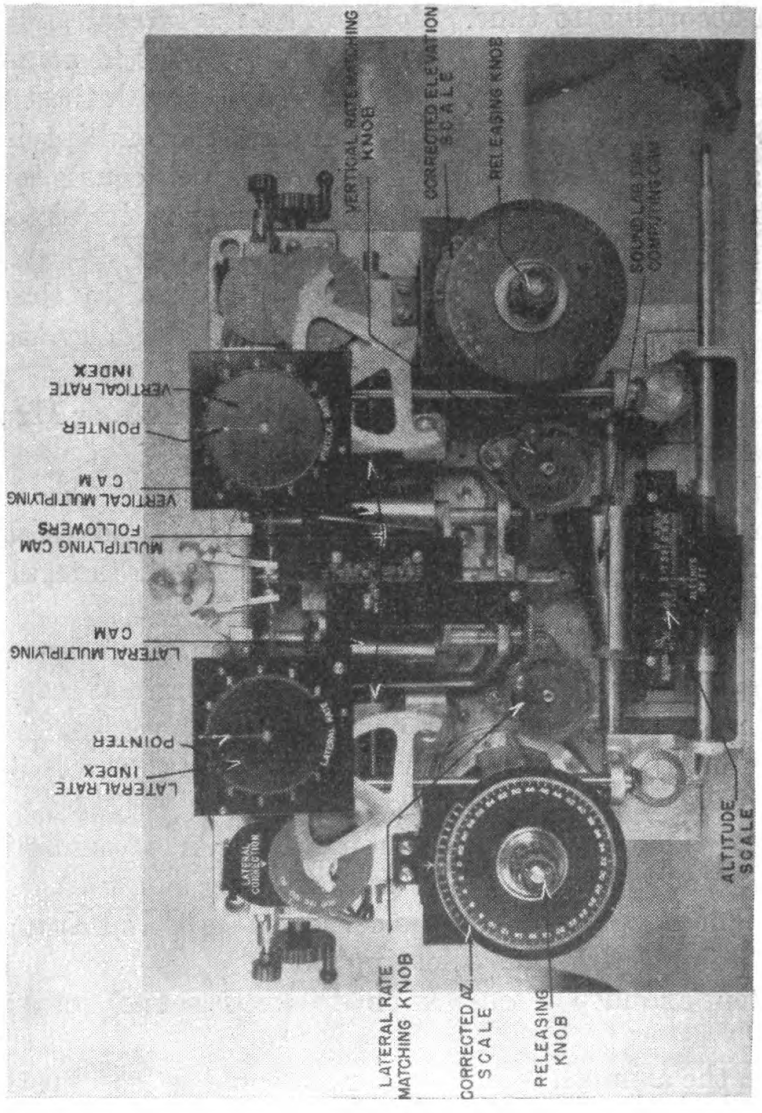


FIGURE 68.—Acoustic corrector M2.

the platoon commander must decide at what slant range the target is illuminated. Having the base-line length and slant range of "pick-up," the parallax graph found directly beneath the sight is used to determine a reference number correction. This is applied to scale on the parallax cam. In figure 68, assume a base-line length of 700 feet and an average slant range pick-up of 18,000 feet. The reference number is found by going down the 700 line until the horizontal

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

18,000 line is intersected, which in this case is 3.1. Apply this correction of 3.1.

Q. When is the parallax correction applied? *A*. After orienting the sound locator and before tracking the target. This correction is applied by setting the parallax scale to the proper reference number.

Q. How is air speed of the target obtained and applied to the corrector? *A*. The outpost listeners, if properly trained, can recognize the type of plane. From this knowledge the platoon commander

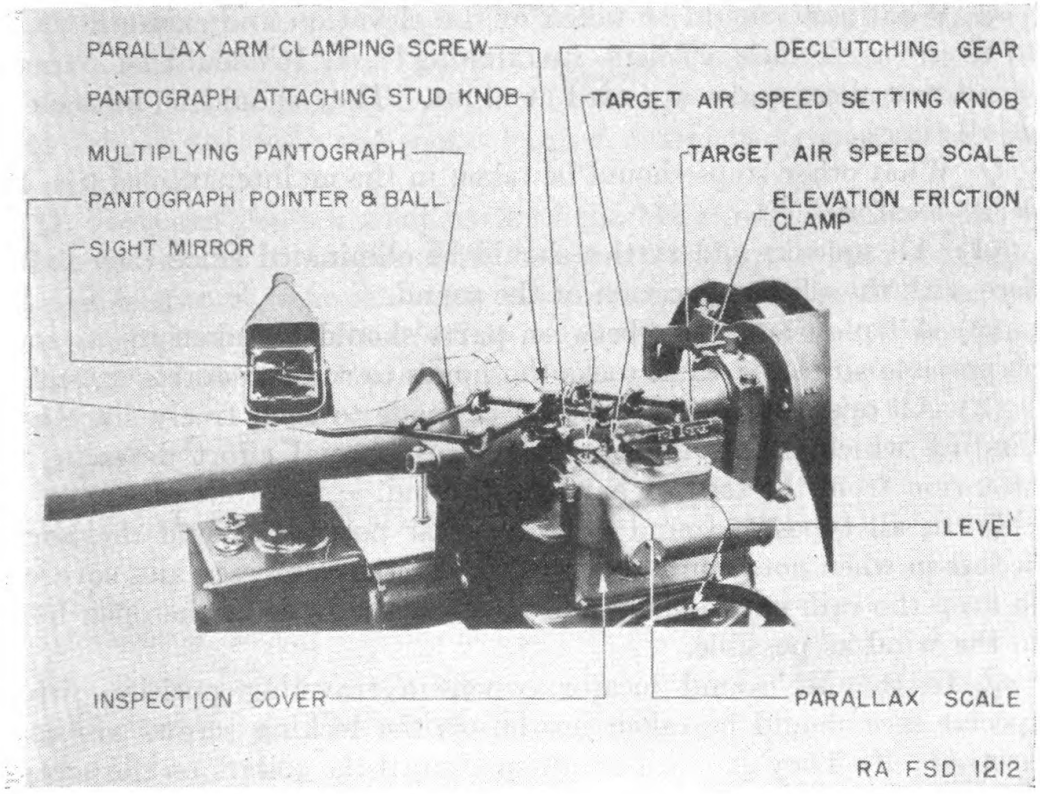


FIGURE 69.—Acoustic corrector, sound locator, M2.

estimates the air speed, knowing the military characteristics of the plane. This air speed is applied after orienting the sound locator and before tracking. It is set in by means of knob on air-speed scale.

Q. How does the M2 series sound locator apply sound lag corrections? *A*. As the operators track the plane, the course indicator is positioned so that it points in a direction parallel to the plane course. With the target air-speed and parallax scales set, the pantograph pointer is positioned for sound lag, wind, and parallax corrections. These corrections are applied to the transmitter in the corrector unit by moving the sight correction handle and knob so that the pantograph pointer is in the center of the mirror.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

84. Maintenance, care, and adjustment of parts.—*Q.* Where can instructions be found for the maintenance, care, and adjustment of sound locators? *A.* In the operator's manual furnished with each sound locator. A complete check of the unit should be made weekly.

Q. What are some of the parts of the M1 series sound locator which require greasing at frequent intervals? *A.* The four hub caps, the main bearing surfaces of the vertical column, and the elevating and traversing wheels. Some grease should be placed on the horn-attaching slides to prevent their rusting.

Q. What care should be taken of the elevation and azimuth scales to insure their most efficient functioning? *A.* It should be remembered that these scales are used at night. They should be kept clean at all times.

Q. What other steps should be taken in the maintenance of the M1 series locators? *A.*

(1) All squeaks and rattles should be eliminated since they interfere with the efficient location of the sound.

(2) All play and wear between parts should be taken up as soon as possible since the wind rocks the horns to a considerable extent.

(3) All operating wheels should be made to turn freely since any binding which makes the operator exert special effort detracts his attention from the task of balancing sound.

Q. In all types of sound locators, what position should the horns be left in when not being used, and why? *A.* Depressed and covered, to keep the rain out of them and to expose as little of the open horn to the wind as possible.

Q. In the M1 sound locator, when in traveling position, what special care should be taken insofar as the locking screws are concerned? *A.* They should be tightened until the collars on the screws bear on the base. This removes the strain from the main bearings of the base. It is important that the handwheels not be moved while the mount is locked, as the operating mechanism may thus be broken or seriously damaged.

Q. How is the M1 series trailer lubricated? *A.* It is equipped with Alemite fittings which should be checked weekly.

Q. How often should the metal mirror of the sight of the M2 series sound locator be cleaned? *A.* Because of the danger of scratching the highly polished surface it should not be cleaned any oftener than is necessary.

Q. What material should be used for cleaning the metal mirror of the M2 sound locator? *A.*

(1) For cleaning off dust, use soft cotton.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(2) For cleaning off grease, use soft cotton moistened with alcohol.

(3) For exceptionally dirty mirrors during servicing or field operation, a special mixture is applied to soft cotton soaked in alcohol. After this mixture has partly dried, remove with absorbent cotton. (Mixture: 3 ounces of precipitated chalk (precipitated calcium carbonate) mixed with 8 ounces of good grade denatured alcohol.)

Q. Who is authorized to make complete overhaul, or parts replacement, in the M2 series sound locator? *A.* Only qualified ordnance personnel.

Q. Should the M2 series sound locator be moved while horns are mounted on the corrector assembly? *A.* No. Horns should be removed if it is necessary to move the sound locator a short distance. For longer distances, the sound locator should be broken down into its six loads.

Q. How can you tell what parts of the M2 sound locator should be lubricated? *A.* Reference must be made to the lubrication section of the operator's manual. The instructions should be followed exactly, using only the type of oil or grease recommended. *Never allow any part of the sound locator to become rusty.* Keep leveling jacks clean.

SECTION V

TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT OF AA SEARCHLIGHT SECTION

Paragraph
Organization 85
Employment of section; selection and preparation of positions 86

85. Organization.—*Q.* What is the tactical unit of the searchlight battery? *A.* The platoon.

Q. Of how many searchlight sections does a platoon consist and what primary units are in each section? *A.* Of five sections, complete with sound locator, control station, searchlight, and power plant.

Q. How many platoons are there in a searchlight battery? *A.* Three.

86. Employment of section; selection and preparation of positions.—*Q.* What is the function of the searchlight battery? *A.* To provide illumination of any aerial targets which may approach the defended area; to furnish intelligence as to airplane activity in the vicinity; to cooperate with friendly aircraft both by sending signals by means of the main searchlight and by illuminating targets for attack by friendly aircraft.

Q. Where should the platoon command post be located? *A.* Nor-

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

mally at one of the outer lights, preferably the center outer light of the platoon.

Q. How far apart should the searchlights be under normal conditions? *A.* Not over 5,000 yards apart.

Q. What communication lines are run by the platoon? *A.* To each searchlight in the platoon and to distant observation posts in the platoon sector, when ordered.

Q. What is the usual distance between the various elements of the section, based on the length of cable connecting adjacent units? *A.* Between searchlight and sound locator, 900 feet; between searchlight and power plant, 200 feet; and between searchlight and control station, 500 feet.

Q. What is the usual layout of the major items of equipment of a searchlight section? *A.* Usually, the sound locator and power plant are set up on opposite sides of the searchlight. They should be the greatest possible distance apart so that the effect of power plant noises on the operation of the sound locator will be reduced to a minimum. The control station should be located on a flank of the searchlight and on a line approximately perpendicular to the line, power plant—searchlight—sound locator.

Q. Name some requirements of a good searchlight position. *A.*

(1) Unobstructed field of illumination. This is usually found on an open plain or high ground.

(2) Concealment of position and approaches. In addition, defilade should be sought in forward areas.

(3) In case of movement, the new position selected should be one that the unit can readily move into or out.

(4) Noninterference with or by other troops. Searchlights draw fire; also the unit cannot work satisfactorily when within 1 mile of gun positions and should get away from all source of noise, such as railroad and other traffic, whenever possible.

(5) Cover for power unit.

(6) Suitable positions for control station and sound locators.

Q. How should the personnel of the searchlight section be employed during the daytime? *A.* In the necessary inspection and maintenance of equipment and in rest, since they are active throughout the night. In addition, manning of certain positions may be required by observers for intelligence purposes, and local protection must always be considered.

Q. In rear areas how are the lights usually placed? *A.* The lights are usually placed in an inner ring of carry lights and an outer ring of pick-up lights. The minimum radius of the inner ring is 2,500 yards for areas 1,000 yards or less in diameter. The radius of the

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

outer ring will average about 8,500 yards, as pick-up lights will not be placed over 5,000 yards apart.

Q. What is considered the maximum horizontal distance at which a searchlight can pick up an airplane under favorable conditions? *A*. Five thousand yards.

Q. When should carry lights take over targets from pick-up lights? *A*. Before the targets reach the line of pick-up lights.

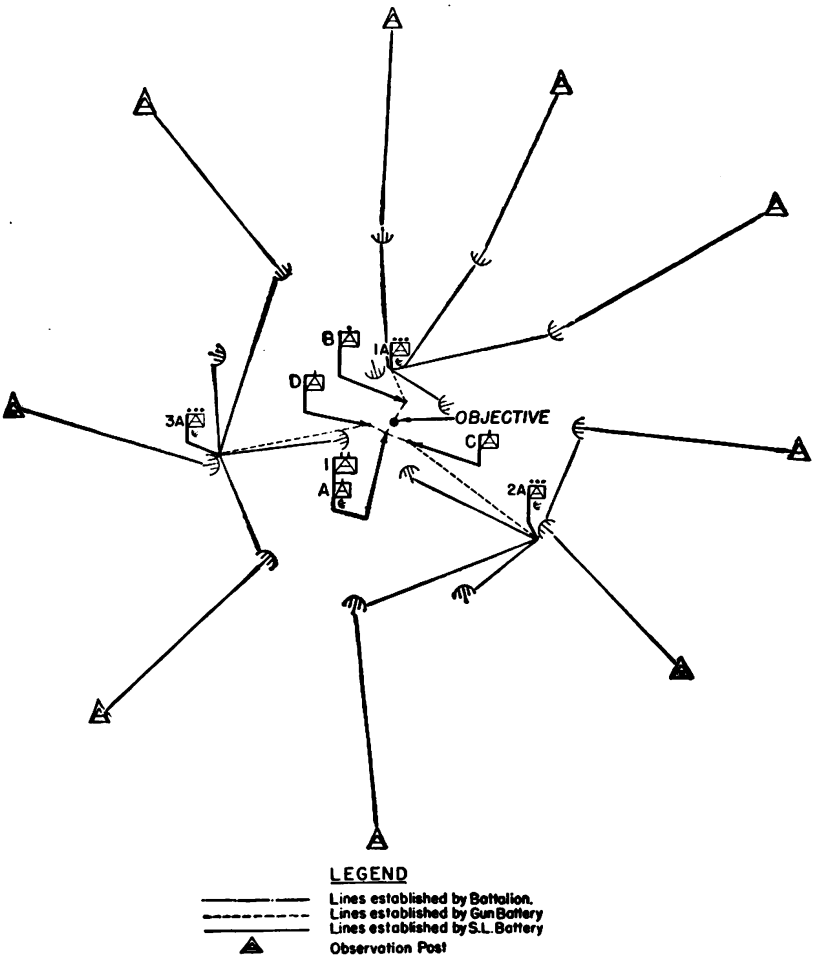


FIGURE 70.—Gun battalion telephone net including observation posts (schematic, not to scale).

Q. Normally, how many lights should be assigned to carry a single target? *A*. At least two.

Q. What are the best means of protection for lights against artillery fire? *A*. Defilade and frequent change of position.

Q. Mention some precautions against low-flying combat aviation. *A*.

(1) When not in action, keep concealed.

(2) If discovered when in action, occult the light or use it to blind the pilot.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(3) Have the automatic rifles sited to engage properly suitable targets.

(4) Erect sandbag revetments around the units.

Q. Should emplacements be used for searchlights? *A*. Generally speaking, no. The searchlight is a small target and should depend upon darkness for its protection. The positions of the searchlights should be shifted nightly in the same general vicinity. However, in some areas, due to interference with other troops, it will be impossible to move lights nightly, in which case the lights should be dug in.

Q. As a rule, what should be done with searchlight equipment during the daytime? *A*. It should be taken out of the position and placed in a well concealed locality. The various pieces of equipment should be again emplaced at dusk.

NOTE.—In addition to the foregoing, a knowledge of the material contained in paragraphs 147, 148, and 149 is required.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 13

INSTRUCTION OF SEARCHLIGHT SQUAD

Paragraph
Requirements 87

87. Requirements.—The candidate should be required to demonstrate practically his ability to instruct one or more members of the searchlight squad. Duties of members of the searchlight squad are prescribed in TM 4–305.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 14

TARGETS, LOCAL SHIPPING, AND WATER AREAS

Paragraphs
SECTION I. Indication and identification of naval targets..... 88–89
II. Local shipping and water areas..... 90
III. Indication, identification, and characteristic features of classes of aircraft..... 91–94

SECTION I

INDICATION AND IDENTIFICATION OF NAVAL TARGETS

Paragraph
Indication..... 88
Identification and characteristic features of warships..... 89

88. Indication.—*Q.* How are naval targets indicated? *A.* By stating the subarea and the name (or type and class) of a single ship; or subarea, type, formation, direction of movement, ship number, and class, when target is one of a group of ships.

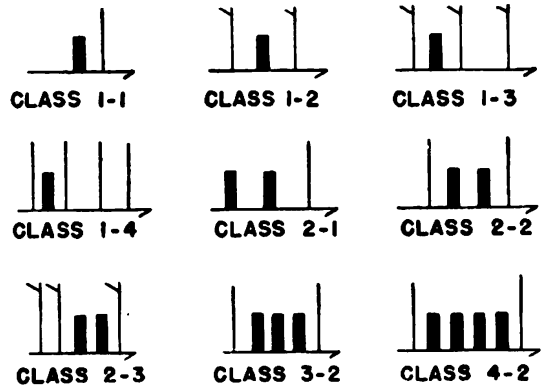


FIGURE 71.—Classification of ships.

Q. How would you assign as a target the leading destroyer of a column in water subarea Rudy? *A.* 1. Target. 2. Rudy. 3. Destroyer division in column. 4. Leading ship. (Observers, spotters, and gun pointers report on target.) 5. Track.

Q. How may ships be classified by the number of funnels and masts? *A.* By stating the number of funnels followed by the number of masts. Thus, a ship with three funnels and two masts would be designated as "class 3–2."

89. Identification and characteristic features of warships.—*Q.* How may warships be classified? *A.* Warships are classified broadly as follows:

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(1) Capital ships, mounting guns of a caliber exceeding 8 inches, including battleships, and battle cruisers.

(2) Noncapital ships, mounting guns 8 inches and smaller, including cruisers, destroyers, aircraft carriers, and submarines.

Q. What are the purpose and characteristic features of each type? *A.*

(1) *Capital ships.*—(*a*) Battleships (BB) form the first line of battle. They are the most formidable type of war vessel and combine powerful weapons with the greatest protection possible. To carry the heavy guns and armor required to give maximum offensive and defensive power, speed has to be sacrificed to a certain extent. Characteristic features of battleships are great size, moderate speed, heavy armor, large guns in turrets, massive appearance, low to medium freeboard, and broad beam. Their main batteries are of a caliber exceeding 8 inches and may include 16-inch guns with an effective range of 35,000 yards.

(*b*) Battle cruisers (CC) are similar in appearance to the battleships, although their lines are finer. They carry the maximum caliber guns practicable, though fewer in number, and their armor protection is less than that of a battleship. This saving in weight is used to gain greater speed, permitting them to leave the battle line to gather information and yet be able to return in time to join the main action.

(*c*) Pocket battleships are small armored ships mounting guns of large caliber. They are capable of greater speed than are the battleships.

(*d*) Other capital ships include those provided for coast defense, carrying large-caliber guns but having a very limited speed and cruising radius. Monitors are an example of this type.

(2) *Noncapital ships.*—(*a*) Airplane carriers (CV) are large ships of considerable displacement, moderate to high speed, some of them armored, armed with moderate-sized guns, and carrying a large number of planes which are launched from and landed on specially constructed decks. The landing deck and the peculiar arrangement of the funnels and superstructure render these ships unmistakable. They are vulnerable to gunfire on account of their size and limited protection.

(*b*) Cruisers vary from fairly fast, heavily armed, moderately armored large ships to fast, lightly armed, unarmored ships of moderate displacement. First-line cruisers are from 7,500 to 10,000 tons displacement, mount guns up to 8 inches in caliber, have up to 5 inches in side armor, and are capable of speeds in excess of 32 knots.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

They are intended for scouting, screening fleet movements, raiding, and similar purposes. Cruisers may be further classified as:

1. Heavy (CA), armed with 8-inch or near 8-inch guns.
2. Light (CL), armed with guns usually 6 inches or less.
3. Antiaircraft, whose total armament may be used against aircraft.

(*c*) Destroyers (DD) are high-speed, unarmored naval vessels of approximately 1,500 tons displacement, armed principally with torpedoes. In addition to making torpedo attacks, they may employ depth charges against submarines and may be used as mine layers. They mount guns of less than 6-inch caliber for their own defense and to attack unarmored enemy vessels.

(*d*) Submarines (SS) operate either under water or awash (on the surface). They are armed with the torpedo; the larger ones with mines and guns in addition. Aside from raiding operations, reconnaissance, and attempts against vessels within a fortified harbor, submarines are of little use against coast defenses.

(*e*) Torpedo boats (PT) are similar to, but generally inferior to, destroyers.

(*f*) Minor war vessels consist of gunboats, mine layers (CM), escort vessels, and patrol vessels.

(*g*) Auxiliary vessels consist of such ships as transports (AP), hospital ships, tenders, mine sweepers (AM), and tugs. Transports and mine sweepers are usually commercial vessels with no armor and with but a few guns of 6-inch or smaller caliber. All vessels of this type are exceedingly vulnerable to the fire of all types of seacoast armament.

(*h*) Small craft consist of small auxiliary vessels and the modern motor torpedo boat, a small vessel of great speed armed with torpedoes, mines, and automatic weapons.

(*i*) Landing boats may vary from small, fast surf boats with a capacity of one squad to large, self-propelled lighters capable of landing light tanks. All may be armed with automatic weapons.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

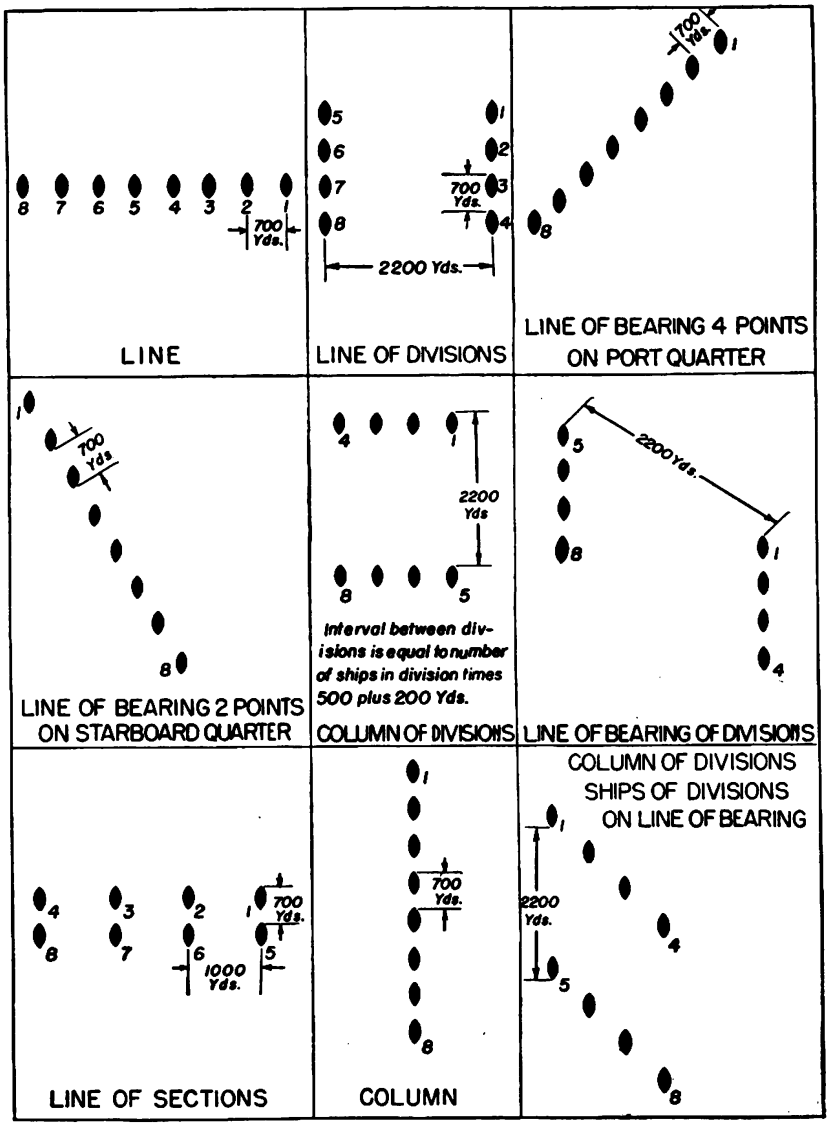
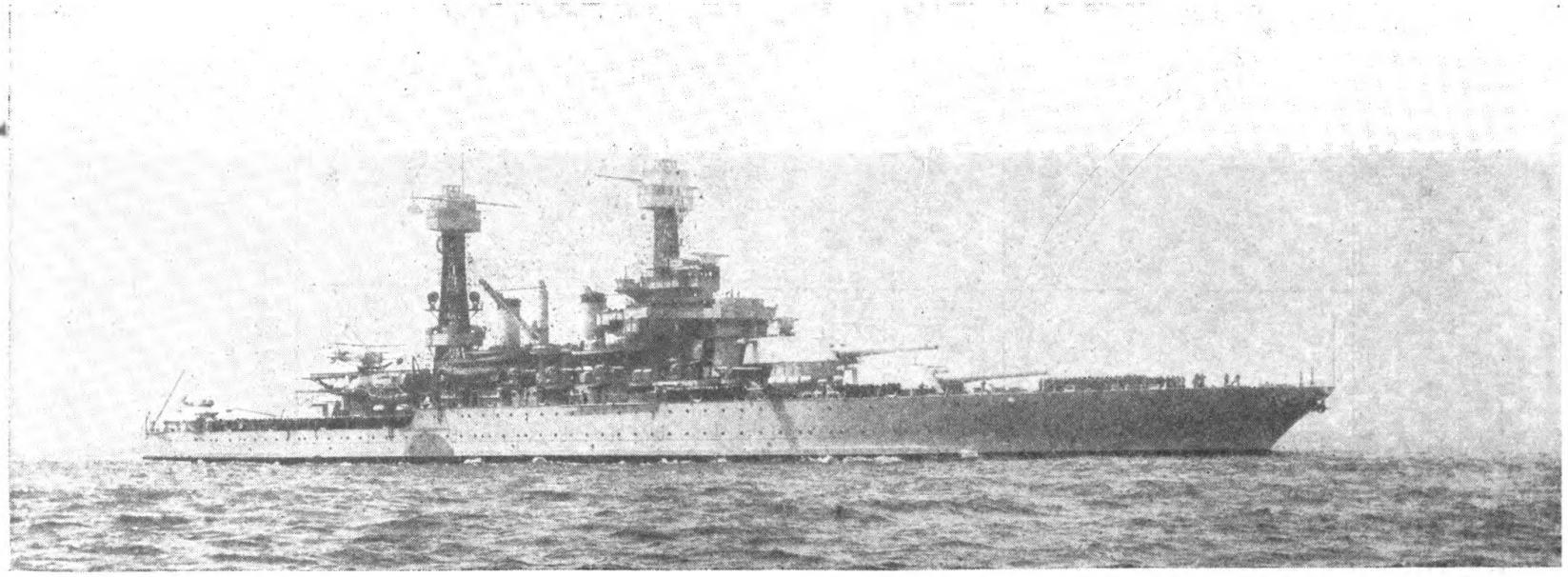


FIGURE 72.—Fleet formations.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

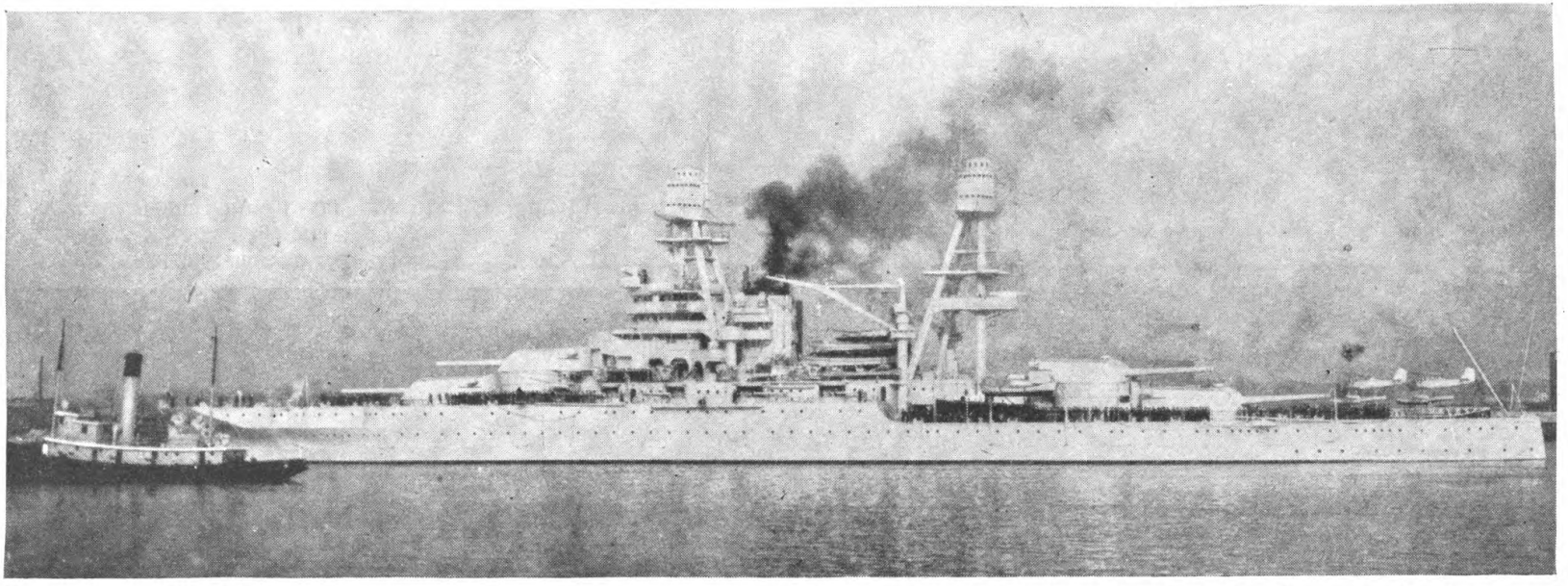


Displacement: 32,000 tons.
Length: 624 feet.
Beam: 97 feet.
Draft: 31¼ feet.
Guns: eight 16-inch, twelve 5-inch, eight 5-inch (AA).
Armor: belt 16- to 14-inch, deck 3-inch, turrets 18- to 9-inch, conning tower 16-inch.
Torpedo tubes: two 21-inch, submerged.
Speed: 21 knots.
Sister ships: *Colorado* and *Maryland*. The *California* and *Tennessee* are similar.

FIGURE 73.—United States battleship *West Virginia*.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Digitized by Google

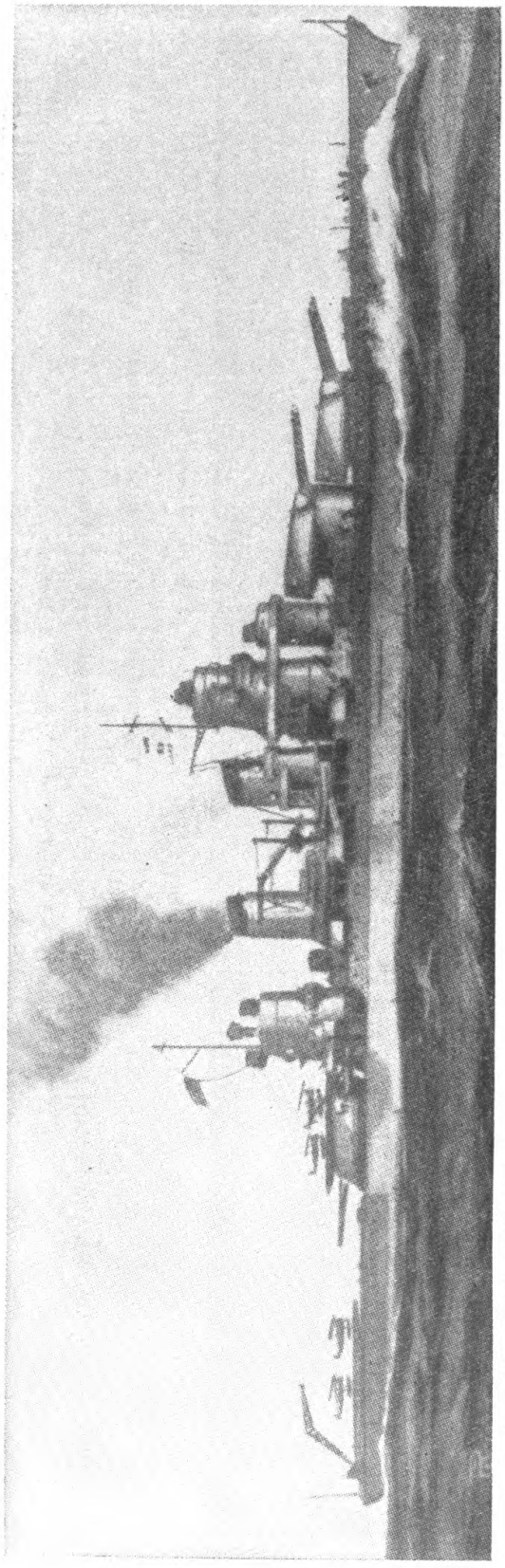


Displacement: 32,100 tons.
Length: 608 feet.
Beam: 97 feet.
Draft: 29⅝ feet.
Guns: twelve 14-inch, fourteen 5-inch, eight 5-inch (AA).
Armor: belt, 13½-inch, deck 3-inch, turrets 18- to 9-inch, conning tower 16-inch.
Torpedo tubes: two 21-inch, submerged. (Probably removed now.)
Speed: 21 knots.
Sister ship: *Pennsylvania.*

FIGURE 74.—United States battleship *Arizona.*

NOTE.—Ships of the class shown in figure 74, as well as those of the *Nevada* and *New Mexico* classes, either have been or are being remodeled. The alterations consist of the substitution of tripod for cage masts, 5-inch, 25-caliber AA guns for 3-inch AA guns, increased under-water protection, additional protective deck armor, and a certain amount of rearrangement of the torpedo defense and AA batteries. Because of these modifications the data given above may not be exactly correct. New engines have been installed to compensate for any increased weight in order to maintain the designed speed.

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



Displacement: 35,000 tons.
Speed: 30 knots.
Guns: nine 16-inch, twenty 5-inch dual purpose.
Aircraft: 4.
Armor: belt 16-inch, upper deck 6-inch, lower deck 4-inch.
Length: 750 feet.

FIGURE 75.—United States battleship *Washington*.

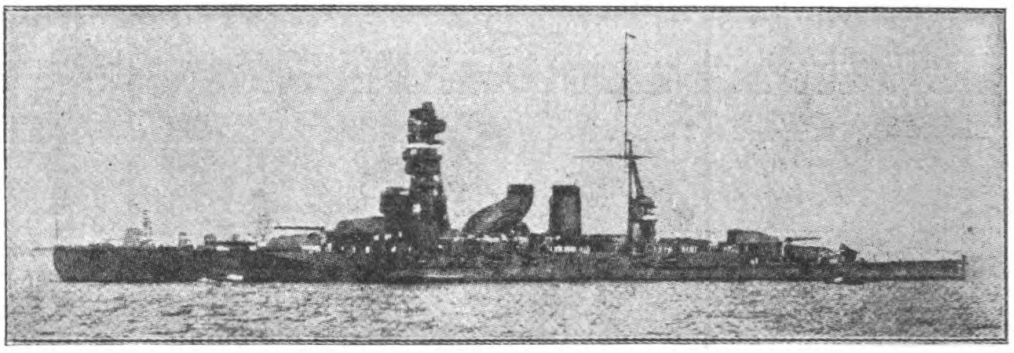
Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Displacement : 35,000 tons.
Length : 710 feet.
Beam : 106 feet.
Draft : 32 feet.
Torpedo tubes : two, submerged.
Speed : 23 knots.
Guns : nine 16-inch, twelve 6-inch, six 4.7-inch (AA).
Armor : belt 14-inch, turrets 16- to 9-inch, deck 6¼-inch.

FIGURE 76.—British battleship *Nelson* (sister ship *Rodney*).

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



Displacement: 32,720 tons.
Length: 700 feet.
Beam: 95 feet.
Draft: 30 feet.
Guns: eight 16-inch, twenty 5.5-inch, four 3.3-inch (AA).
Armor: belt 13- or 12-inch, deck 3½-inch (7-inch above magazines, boilers, and engine room), turrets 14-inch, conning tower 12-inch.
Torpedo tubes: four 21-inch, submerged, four above the water.
Speed: 23 knots.

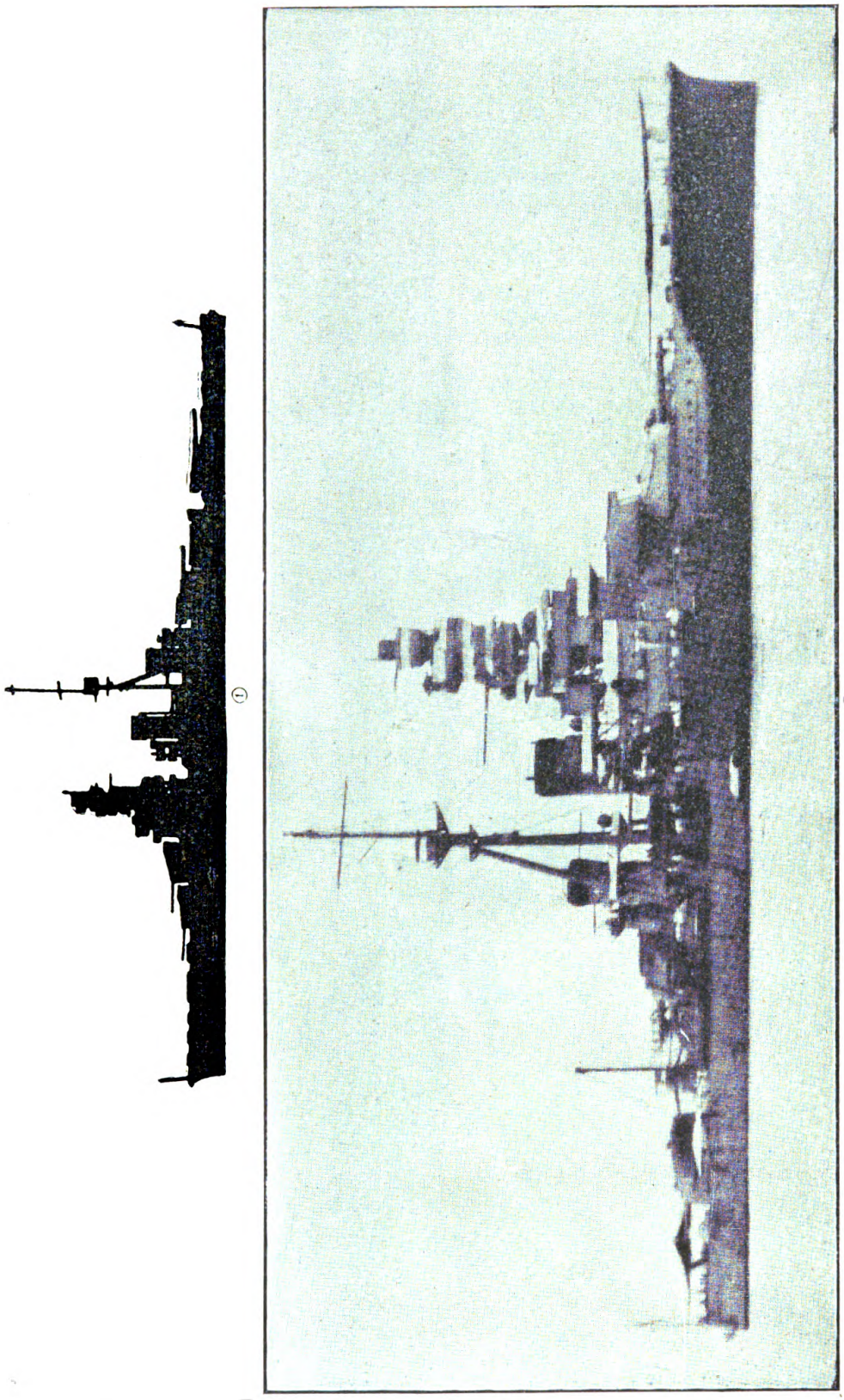
FIGURE 77.—Japanese battleship *Mutsu*.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Displacement: 10,000 tons.
Length: 593 feet.
Beam: 67½ feet.
Draft: 21⅔ feet.
Speed: 26 knots.
Guns: six 11-inch, eight 5.9-inch, six 4.1-inch AA, eight 3-pounder AA, ten machine guns.
Torpedo tubes: eight 21-inch.
Aircraft: two.
Armor: belt 4-inch with 1½-inch internally; turrets 4-inch bases, 7-inch faces, 2- to 3-inch sides; conning tower 5-inch, 2-inch roof; deck 1½- to 2¼-inch, 3-inch over magazine.

FIGURE 78.—German pocket battleship *Luetzow* (Ex-*Deutschland*).

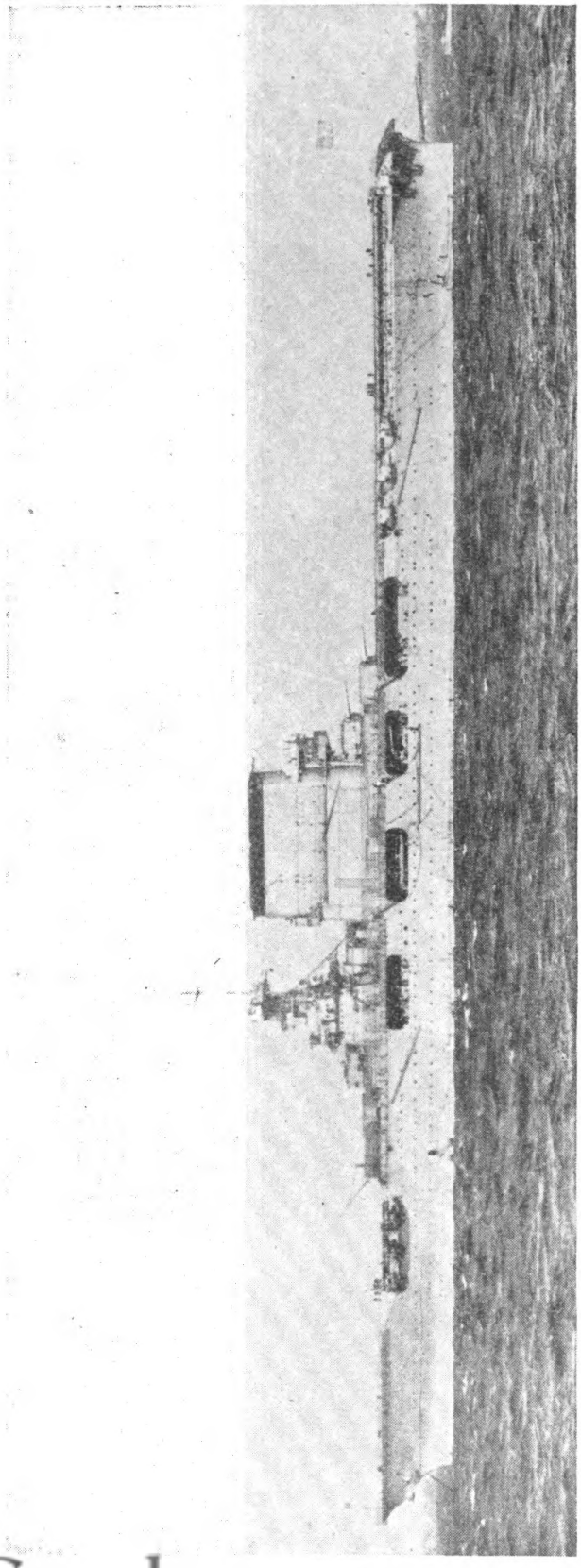
Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



Displacement: 32,330 tons. Beam: 95 feet. Torpedo tubes: four 21-inch, submerged. Guns: eight 14-inch, sixteen 6-inch, four 3-inch (AA).
Length: 704 feet. Draft: 27½ feet. Speed: 28 knots. Armor: belt 8-inch, turrets 10- to 9-inch, conning tower 10- to 9-inch, deck 6¾-inch.

FIGURE 79.—Japanese battle cruiser *Haruna*.

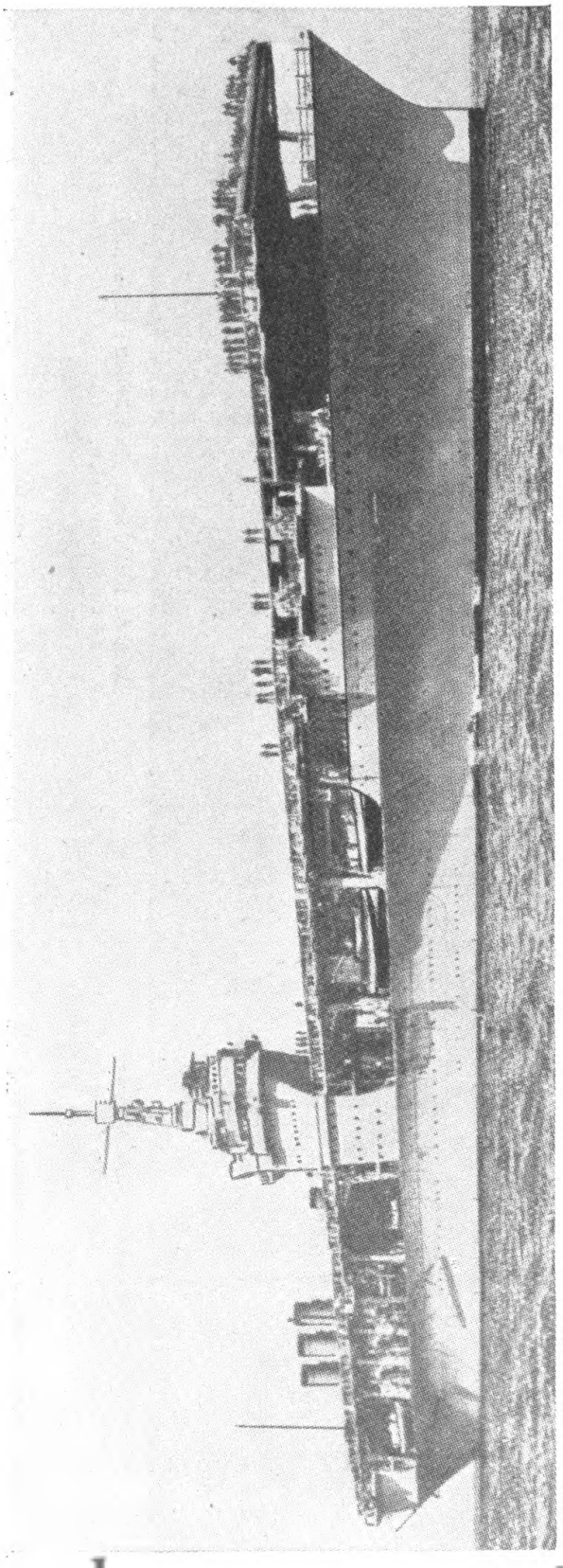
Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



Displacement: 33,000 tons.
Length: 888 feet.
Beam, over flight deck: 90 feet.
Draft: 25½ feet.
Guns: eight 8-inch, twelve 5-inch (AA).
Armor: belt 6-inch, deck 3-inch; triple hull and bulge protection.
Airplanes: 120.
Speed: 33 knots.
Sister ship: *Saratoga.*

FIGURE 80.—United States aircraft carrier *Lexington.*

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

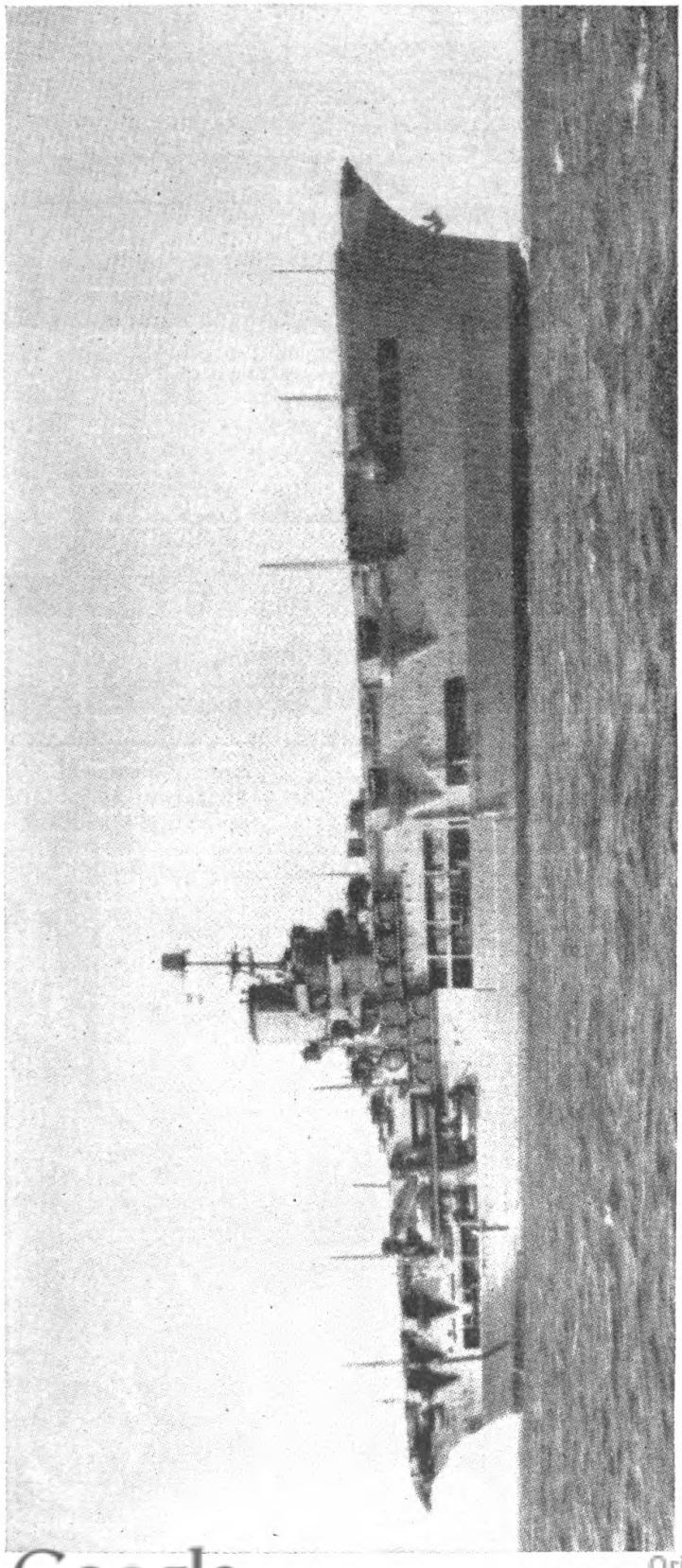


Displacement : 14,500 tons.
Length : 769 feet.
Beam : 80 feet 1 inch.
Draft : 19½ feet.

Speed : 30 to 35 knots.
Guns : eight 5-inch (AA).
Aircraft : 75.

FIGURE 81.—United States aircraft carrier *Ranger*.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

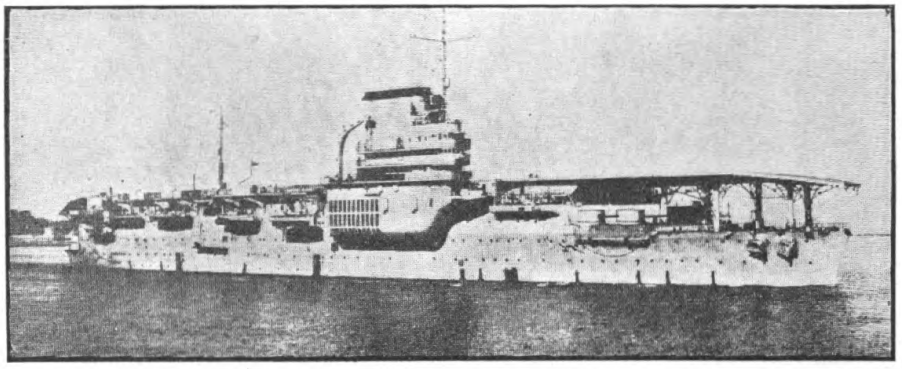


Displacement: 22,000 tons.
Length: 800 feet.
Beam, over flight deck: 94 feet.
Draft: 22½ feet.

Guns: sixteen 4.5-inch (dual purpose), four 3-pounders, six multiple pompoms.
Airplanes: 60.
Speed: 31 knots.

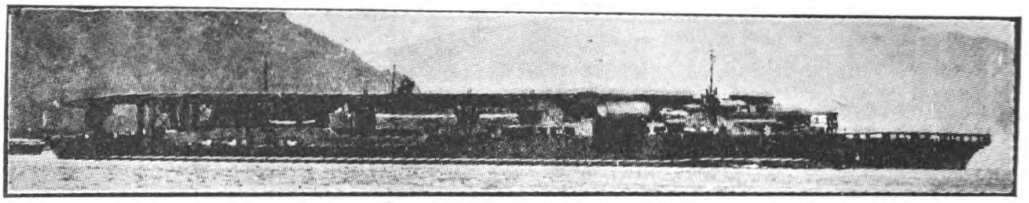
FIGURE 82.—British aircraft carrier *Ark Royal.*

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



Displacement: 22,150 tons.
Length: 580 feet.
Beam, over flight deck: 89 feet.
Draft: 26 feet.
Guns: eight 6.1-inch, six 14-pounder (AA), eight 3-pounder (AA).
Armor: side 3¼-inch, deck (main and flight) 1-inch.
Airplanes: 40.
Speed: 21 knots.

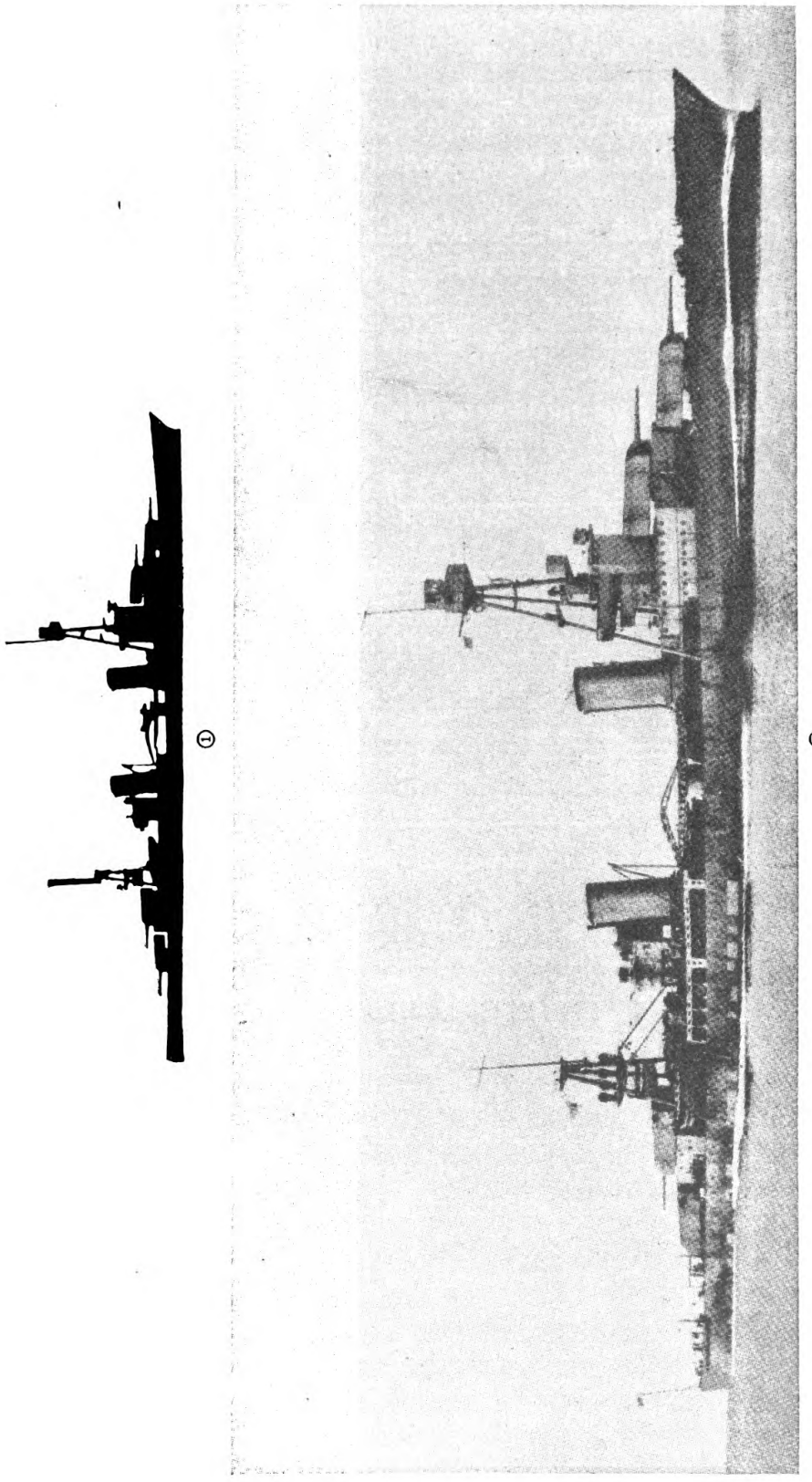
FIGURE 83.—French aircraft carrier *Bearn*.



Displacement: 28,100 tons.
Length: 780 feet.
Beam: 92 feet.
Draft: 21¼ feet.
Guns: ten 8-inch, four 4.7-inch, twelve 4.7-inch (AA).
Armor: unknown.
Airplanes: 50.
Speed: 28.5 knots.

FIGURE 84.—Japanese aircraft carrier *Akagi*.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



① Displacement: 10,000 tons.
Length: 585 feet.
Beam: 64 feet.
Draft: 19 feet.

② Torpedo tubes: six 21-inch.
Speed: 33 knots.
Guns: ten 8-inch, four 5-inch (AA).
Armor: side 1½-inch, gunhouse 1½-inch, deck 3-inch.

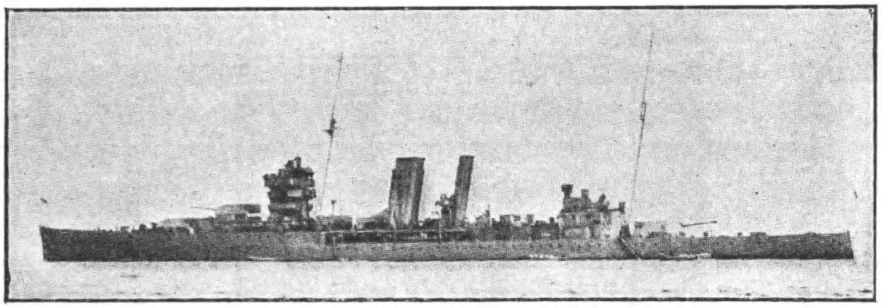
FIGURE 85.—United States cruiser *Salt Lake City*.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Displacement: 7,500 tons.
Length: 555 feet.
Beam: 55 feet.
Draft: 15½ feet.
Torpedo tubes: six 21-inch.
Speed: 34 knots.
Guns: twelve 6-inch, four 3-inch (AA).
Armor: side 3-inch, deck 1½-inch.

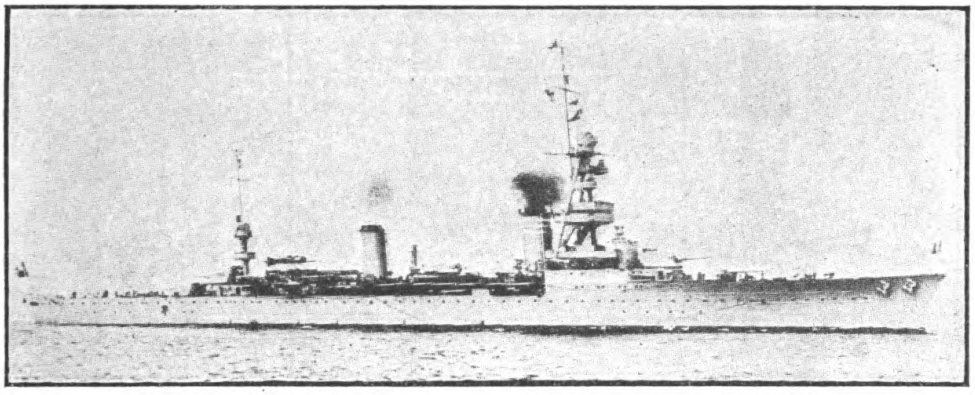
FIGURE 86.—United States cruiser *Marblehead*.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



Displacement: 8,400 tons.
Length: 575 feet.
Beam: 57 feet.
Draft: 17 feet.
Guns: six 8-inch, four 4-inch (AA).
Armor: deck 2-inch, conning tower 3-inch.
Torpedo tubes: six 21-inch.
Speed: 32 knots.

FIGURE 87.—British cruiser *York*.

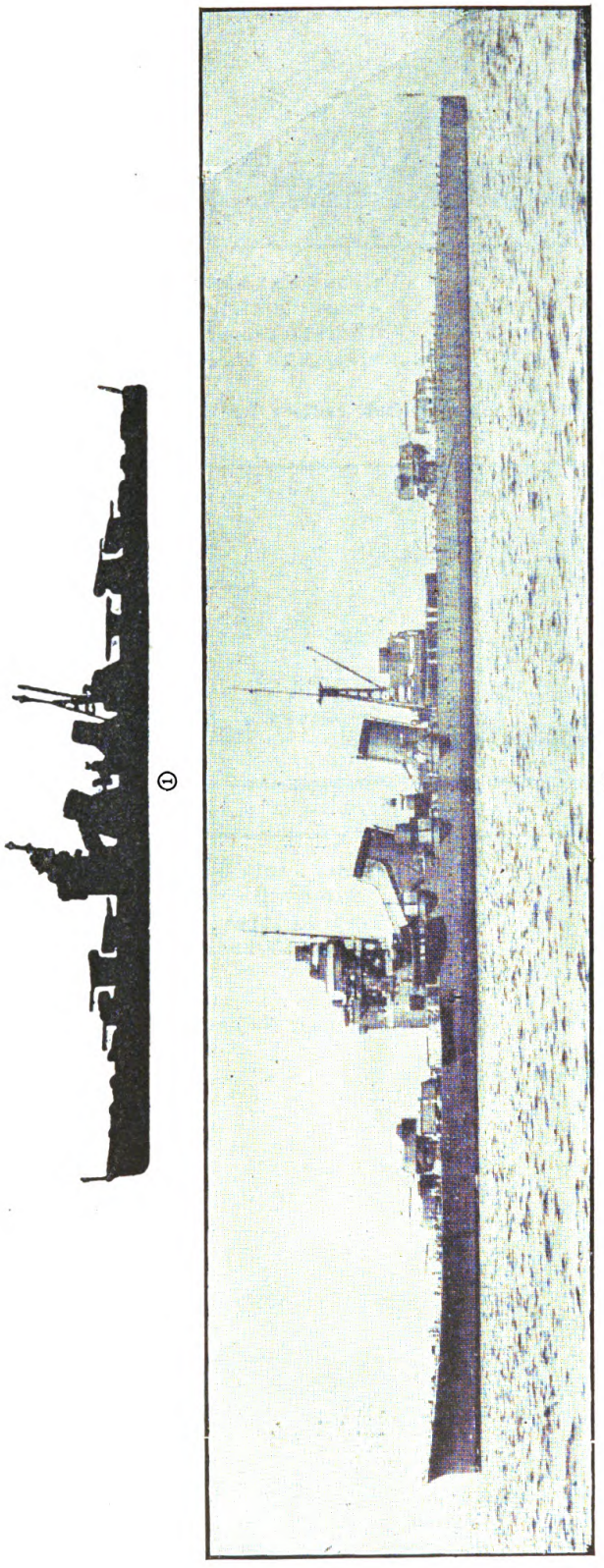


Displacement: 9,940 tons.
Length: 617 feet.
Beam: 65 feet.
Draft: 20 feet.
Guns: eight 8-inch, eight 3.5-inch (AA).
Armor: thin over engine and boiler spaces; fitted with external bulges.
Torpedo tubes: six 21-inch.
Speed: 33 knots.

FIGURE 88.—French cruiser *Suffern*.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

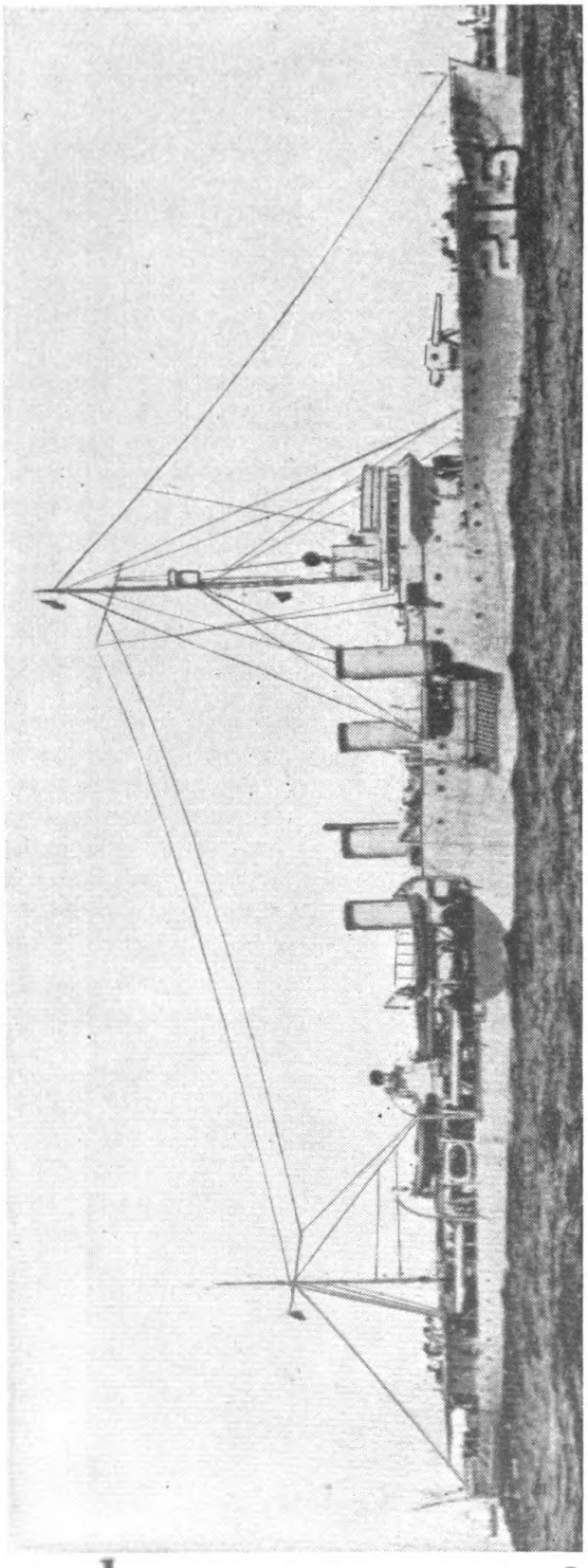


① Displacement: 10,000 tons.
Length: 640 feet.
Beam: 57 feet.
Draft: 16½ feet.
Torpedo tubes: twelve 21-inch, above water.

② Speed: 33 knots.
Guns: ten 8-inch, six 4.7-inch (AA).
Armor: belt 3- to 4-inch, deck unknown, turrets unknown.

FIGURE 89.—Japanese cruiser *Nachi*.

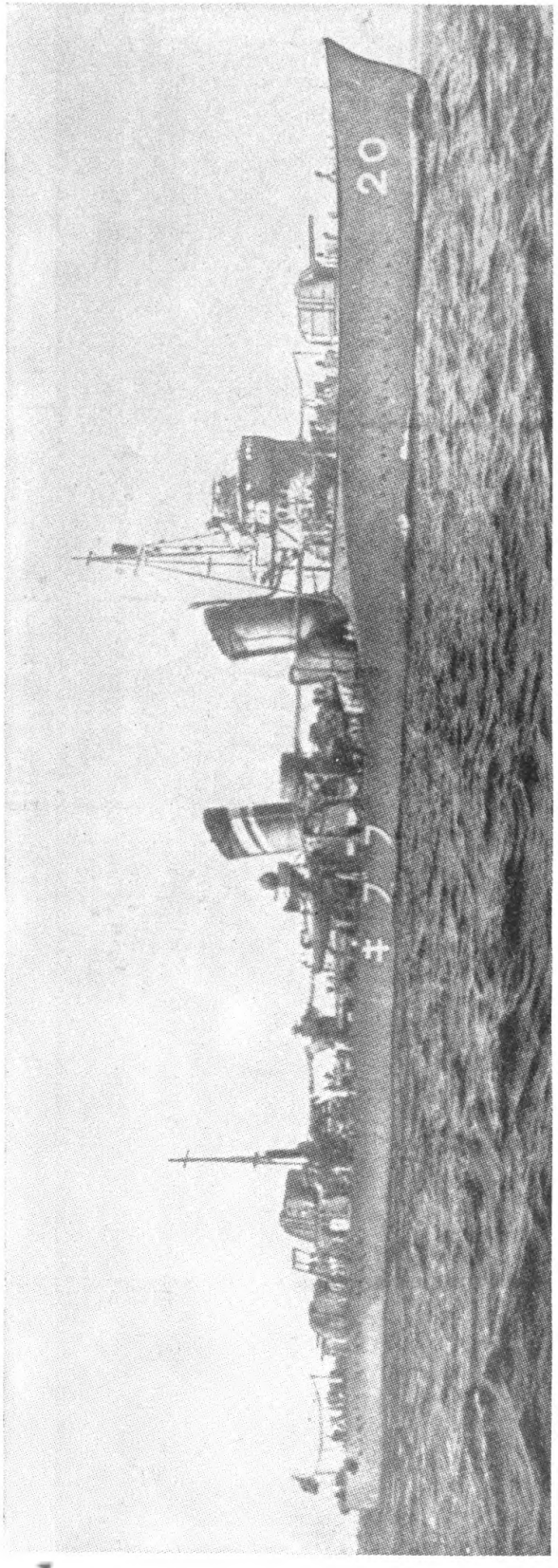
Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



Displacement: 1,020 to 1,190 tons. Speed: 35 knots.

FIGURE 90.—United States destroyer *Bovie* (flush decker).

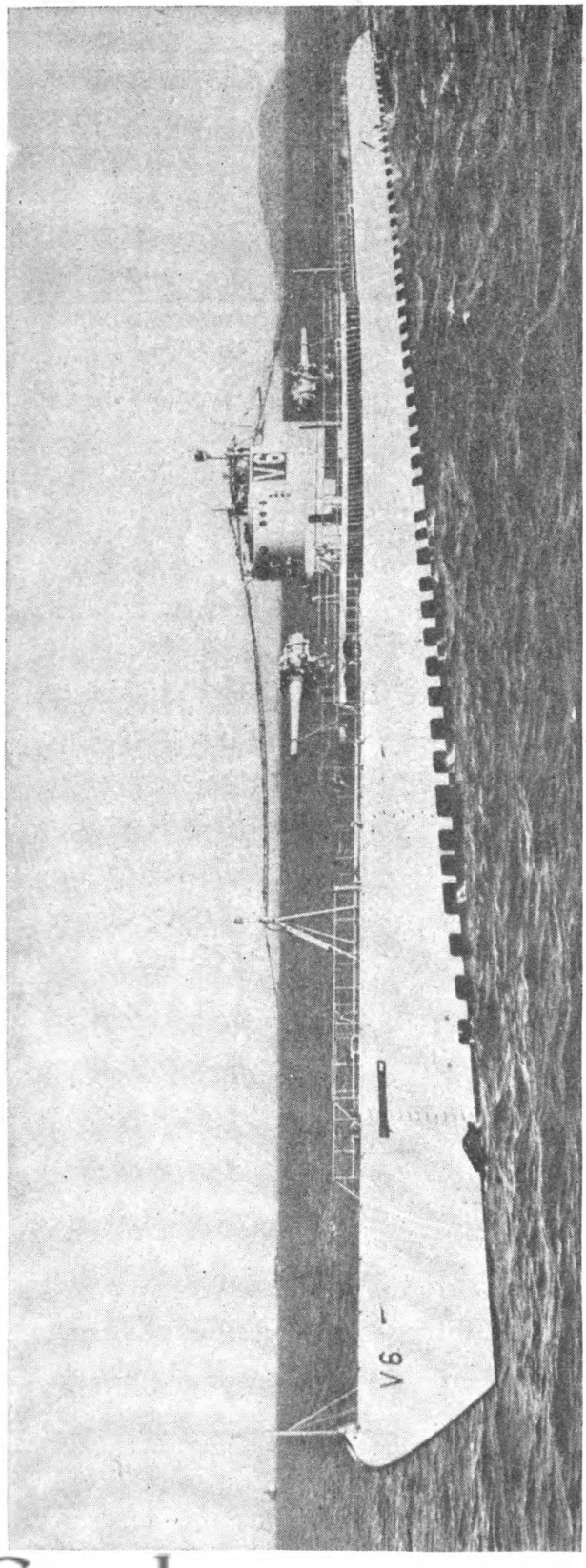
Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



Displacement: 1,700 tons. Speed: 34 knots.

FIGURE 91.—Japanese destroyer *Hubuki*.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

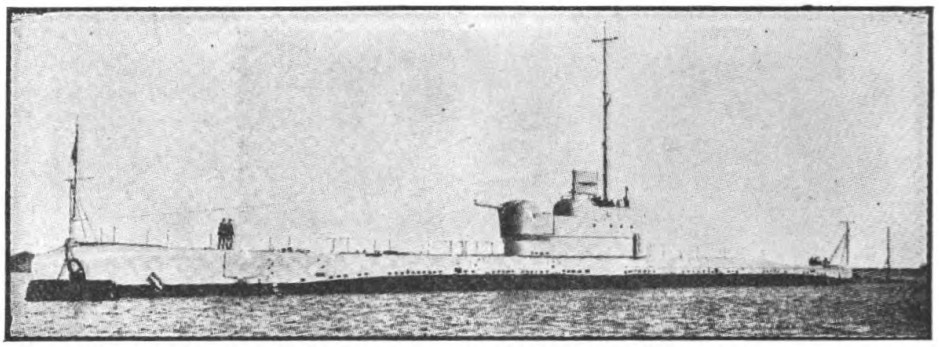


Displacement: 2,760 tons.
Length: 371 feet.
Guns: two 6-inch.
Torpedo tubes: six 21-inch.
Speed: 17/8.5 knots.

NOTE.—The speed given indicates the surface and submerged speeds in the order given.

FIGURE 92.—United States submarine *Nautilus* N–2 (EX-V–6).

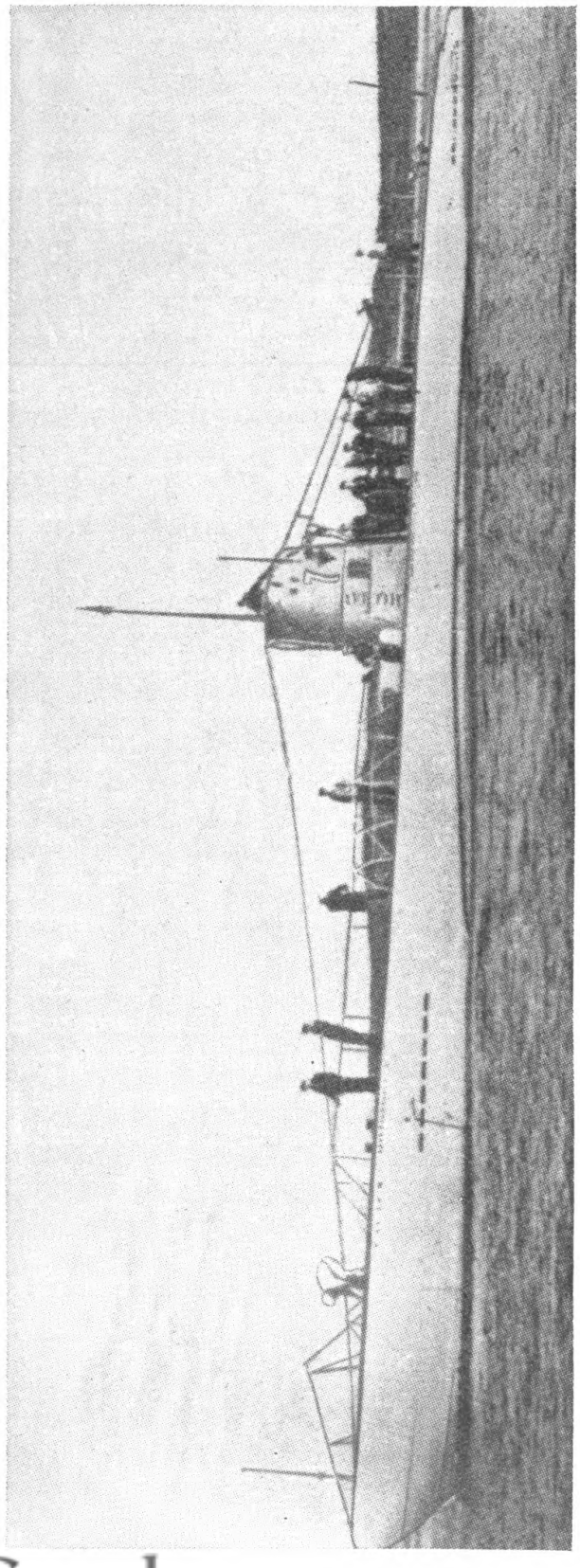
Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



Displacement: 1,475 tons.
Length: 260 feet.
Torpedo tubes: eight 21-inch.
Speed: 17.5/9 knots.
Guns: one 4.9-inch.

FIGURE 93.—British submarine *Perseus*.

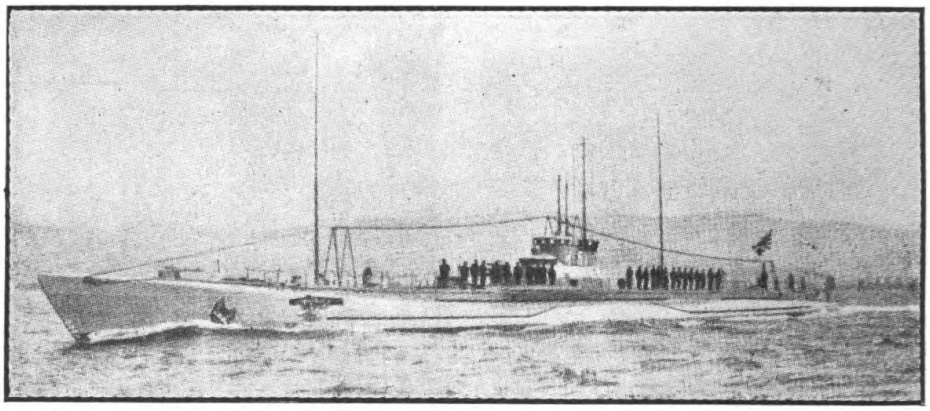
Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



Displacement: 250 to 330 tons.
Length: 136½ feet.
Torpedo tubes: three 21-inch.
Speed: 13/7 knots.
Guns: one 1-pounder (AA).

FIGURE 94.—German submarine U–7 coastal type, Nos. 1–24.

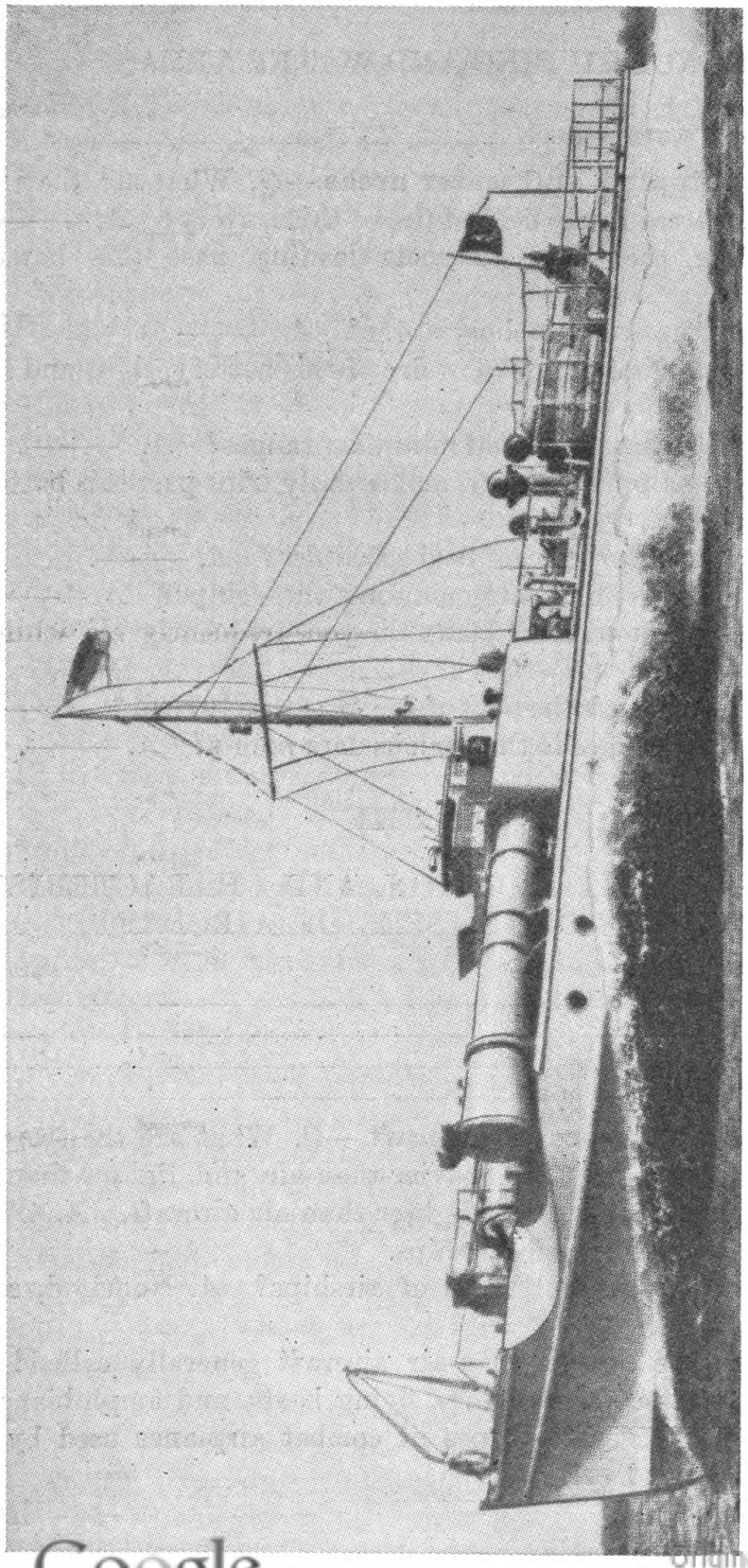
Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



Displacement: 1,635 tons.
Length: 320 feet.
Torpedo tubes: six 21-inch.
Speed: 19/10 knots.
Guns: one 4.7-inch.

FIGURE 95.—Japanese submarine *Mitsu Bishi* type.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



Displacement: 62 tons.
Length: 93 feet.
Speed: 30 to 36 knots.

Torpedo tubes: two 19.7-inch.
Guns: one 1-pounder (AA).

FIGURE 96.—German motor torpedo boat S6–25 (*Schnellboote*).

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

SECTION II

LOCAL SHIPPING AND WATER AREAS

Paragraph
Local shipping and water areas 90

90. Local shipping and water areas.—*Q.* What are the limits of the water subareas in the field of fire of this battery? *A.* ———.

Q. Where are the main channels leading past this battery? *A.* ———.

Q. Where are the areas of shoal water? *A.* ———.

Q. What are the limits of field of fire of this battery, right and left? *A.* ———.

Q. What are the maximum and minimum ranges? *A.* ———.

Q. What local shipping, if any, makes daily trips past this battery? *A.* ———.

Q. What are the approximate boat schedules? *A.* ———.

Q. What are the distinguishing marks of these ships? *A.* ———.

Q. What other commercial boats do you frequently see while at drill? *A.* ———.

Q. What time of day is the field of fire most nearly clear? *A.* ———.

Q. What are the ranges to the various data points? *A.* ———.

SECTION III

INDICATION, IDENTIFICATION, AND CHARACTERISTIC FEATURES OF CLASSES OF AIRCRAFT

Paragraph
Classes and types of aircraft 91
Missions of aircraft 92
Naval aircraft 93
Identification and indication of aircraft 94

91. Classes and types of aircraft.—*Q.* What are the two general classes of aircraft? *A.* Heavier-than-air and lighter-than-air.

Q. Name the general types of lighter-than-air aircraft. *A.* Observation balloons and dirigible airships.

Q. What are the general types of airships? *A.* Nonrigid, semirigid, and rigid.

Q. What are the heavier-than-air aircraft generally called? *A.* Airplanes or aeroplanes, seaplanes, flying boats, and amphibians.

Q. What are the general types of combat airplanes used by the United States Army? *A.*

(1) Pursuit.

(2) Bombardment.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(3) Reconnaissance, observation, and liaison.
(4) Transport.

Q. How are pursuit airplanes classified? *A.*
(1) Interceptor.
(2) Single-place fighter.
(3) Multiplace fighter.

Q. How are bombardement airplanes classified? *A.*
(1) Heavy.
(2) Medium.
(3) Light.

92. Missions of aircraft.—*Q.* What is the normal mission of pursuit airplanes? *A.* The interception, attack, and destruction of enemy aircraft in the air. The interceptor is usually a single-seater with one or two powerful engines. The single-place fighter is used for escort and patrol in addition to normal pursuit missions. The multiplace fighter is used for escort and patrol duty near important objectives and against ground troop formations.

Q. What are the normal missions of heavy and medium bombardment airplanes? *A.* To carry heavy bomb loads to great distances for attack of material objectives, and also to conduct long-range strategic reconnaissance over land and sea.

Q. What are the normal missions of light bombardment airplanes? *A.* Light bombardment airplanes (formerly designated as attack) are designed to attack objectives of light construction, routes of communication, airdromes, troop movements, and concentrations of troops in the open or under light shelter. The light bombardment airplane is the striking element of combat aviation which operates in direct support of ground forces. Identification of this type of airplane is especially important to ground troops.

Q. What are the normal missions of reconnaissance, observation, and liaison airplanes? *A.* They gather information of the enemy. The two latter types operate in conjunction with our own forces, performing fire-adjustment missions for artillery, maintaining contact with our front lines, and marching columns, and carrying on other command, liaison, and courier missions.

Q. What are the missions of transport airplanes? *A.* Transport airplanes are not strictly a combat type of airplane. They are used for the transportation of personnel and supplies. Their importance is rapidly increasing when we consider the transportation of air landing troops, parachute troops, and important supplies.

93. Naval aircraft.—*Q.* What types of airplanes are employed by our Navy, and to what types of Army airplanes do they correspond? *A.*

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(1) Scouting-observation airplanes corresponding to observation airplanes.

(2) Fighter airplanes corresponding to pursuit airplanes.

(3) Torpedo-bombardment airplanes corresponding to bombardment airplanes.

(4) Patrol airplanes which do not correspond to any special type of Army airplane. The Navy has no type of airplane corresponding to the Army light bombardment airplane.

Q. Does the Navy make more extensive use of the biplane type of airplane than the Army? *A*. Yes. They are used on carriers and on board other types of warships, being launched from catapults. They are used for this purpose because they are more stable in flight at low air speeds than monoplanes.

Q. What are seaplanes and flying boats? *A*. They are airplanes equipped with floats (pontons) or boat-shaped hulls instead of wheels, so that they may alight on water. Seaplanes have floats while flying boats have hulls.

Q. What is an amphibian airplane? *A*. It is an airplane having a boat-shaped hull, and also equipped with wheels (which can be pulled up when operating on water) so that it can alight on or take off from either a land or water surface.

94. Identification and indication of aircraft.—*Q*. Why is it important that ground personnel be familiar with the appearance in flight, method of operation, and characteristic sounds of airplanes? *A*. These factors are the means by which airplanes are identified and indicated.

Q. What are the basic flight positions used for ready recognition of airplane types? *A*.

(1) Coming flight or front view.

(2) Passing flight or side view.

(3) Flight at lower altitude or top view.

(4) Overhead flight or bottom view.

(5) Maneuvering flight or perspective view.

Q. What is meant by coming flight or front view? *A*. All positions of flight in which only a general head-on view of the airplane may be had.

Q. What is meant by passing flight or side view? *A*. All positions of flight in which the side of the fuselage, vertical fin, and rudder are the major surfaces presented to view.

Q. What is meant by flight at lower altitude or top view? *A*. All positions of flight in which the upper sides of wings, fuselage, and horizontal tail surfaces are the major surfaces presented to view.

Q. What is meant by overhead flight or bottom view? *A*. All

Digitized by Google UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

flight positions in which the under sides of wings, fuselage, and horizontal tail surfaces are presented to view.

Q. What is meant by maneuvering flight or perspective view? *A*. All flight positions which are different from straight and level flight. It includes banking, turning, climbing, diving, and combinations of such maneuvers. The airplane may present, momentarily at least, nearly all of the views presented under other conditions of flight.

Q. What characteristics of outline of the airplane are most readily seen in overhead flight? *A*.

(1) *Shape of wing.*—The general shape and proportion of wings, as long and narrow, short and stubby.

(2) *Type and shape of nose.*—Nose extends much or little in advance of leading edge of wings; that is, plane is long-nosed or short-nosed.

(3) *Length and shape of fuselage.*—Compare the relatively short fuselage of the small and medium-sized airplanes with the long, slender, streamlined appearance of the larger types.

(4) *Location and number of engines.*—In single-engined airplanes the engine is located in the nose and by its type determines the shape of the nose; that is, with radial engines the nose is blunt and stubby, while with in-line and V-type engines the nose is more slender and pointed. In multiengined airplanes the engines are usually housed in nacelles extending from the leading edge of the wings. In the unusual pusher types, the engines extend from the trailing edge of the wings. Even at great altitudes when the number of engine nacelles cannot be exactly determined, their presence will give an unmistakable irregular outline to the wings, warranting identification as multiengined.

Q. What characteristics of outline are most readily seen in passing flight? *A*.

(1) *Shape and outline of fuselage.*—It is short and chunky in smaller pursuit types; elongated and streamlined in larger types; long and thick-bodied in larger bombardment types. Note outline being broken by such parts as cockpits, canopies over cockpits, and gun turrets.

(2) *Shape of nose.*—It may be slender and pointed, blunt and stubby, smoothly rounded, or shark-nosed.

(3) *Size of vertical fin and rudder.*—Note the relative size of the vertical fin and rudder compared to the fuselage.

Q. What characteristics of outline are most readily seen in coming or going flight? *A*.

(1) *Relationship of wings to fuselage.*—Has high-wing, midwing,

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

low-wing, or parasol-wing types; dihedral angle pronounced, moderate, or practically zero.

(2) *Number of engines.*—The irregularity of outline of wings will indicate a multiple-engined type.

(3) *Features of vertical tail members.*—It is usually possible to identify single- and double-rudder types.

(4) *Undercarriages.*—Nonretractable landing gear is usually plainly visible.

Q. What characteristics of outline are most readily seen in maneuvering flight? *A.* All the features previously pointed out may be momentarily visible.

Q. What characteristic methods of operation of pursuit assist in its identification? *A.* Pursuit normally operates in formation with the squadron of 18 airplanes as the largest group operating as a unit. An observer noting one such formation should look below and to the front of it and above and to the rear of it for other units.

Q. What characteristic methods of operation of heavy and medium bombardment assist in its identification? *A.* They operate in column of three-plane elements (route column) with successive elements stepped up or down from front to rear. They usually fly straight courses at medium or high altitude unless attacked from the air or by AA fire.

Q. What characteristic methods of operation assist in the identification of light bombardment? *A.* They operate in formation at minimum or medium altitudes. They use the three-plane element echeloned to the rear at approximately the same altitude. The normal operating unit is the squadron of nine airplanes with the largest formation the group of three squadrons. This type of aviation supports the operations of ground troops.

Q. What characteristics of operation of reconnaissance airplanes assist in their identification? *A.* They operate at any altitude from low to high; usually operate singly; fly straight courses unless attacked. Bombardment airplanes may perform long-range reconnaissance.

Q. What characteristic methods of operation assist in identification of observation and liaison airplanes? *A.* They operate almost entirely within own lines; fly singly on various courses at low and medium altitudes; will be seen circling over own troops and troop columns to drop messages and observe panels.

Q. State, in the order in which given, what information is given and the terms used in indicating aircraft during daylight. *A.*

(1) Designation of the reporting station by name or number.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(2) Number of airplanes, when they can be counted. If they cannot be counted the words "several" or "many" may be used.

(3) Type of airplane, such as "observation," "pursuit," etc., when they can be identified. In other cases the word "airplane" is used.

(4) Altitude, in general terms as follows: "very low" (below 500 yards), "low" (500 to 2,000 yards), "medium" (2,000 to 5,000 yards), or "high" (over 5,000 yards).

(5) Location, by the sector in which or toward which the aircraft are flying.

(6) Direction of flight, by one of the eight points of the compass: North, NE, East, SE, South, SW, West, NW.

Q. State which of these elements of information are given in indicating aircraft at night. *A.* Designation of reporting station, number of airplanes, (one, several, or many), altitude, and location.

Q. What are some of the characteristic sounds of pursuit airplanes in flight? *A.* Pursuit airplanes in flight are characterized by sounds of fast rhythm, high pitch, moderate volume, and by extreme variations in pitch and tone while maneuvering.

Q. What are some of the characteristic sounds of heavy and medium bombardment airplanes while in flight? *A.* They have a fairly deep pitch, a moderately heavy volume, and a steady tone and rhythm.

Q. What are some of the characteristic sounds of light bombardment airplanes while in flight? *A.* They have a heavy volume of sound due to low altitude; a fairly deep pitch, with tone and rhythm steady but varying considerably when maneuvering.

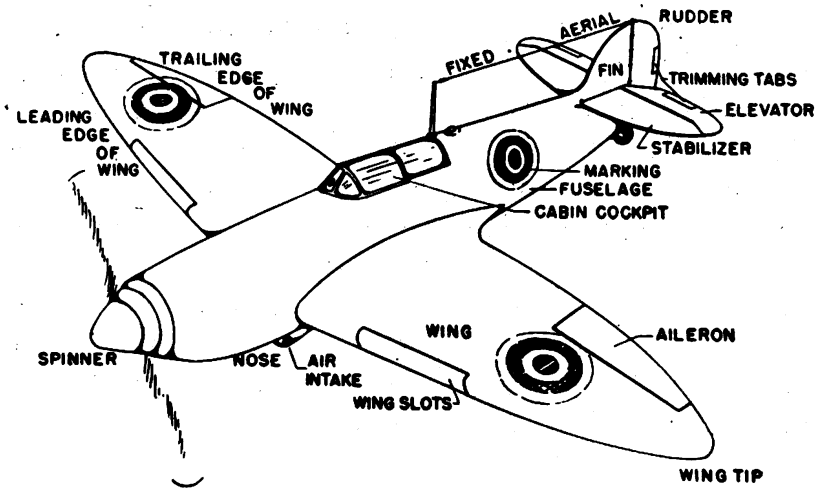
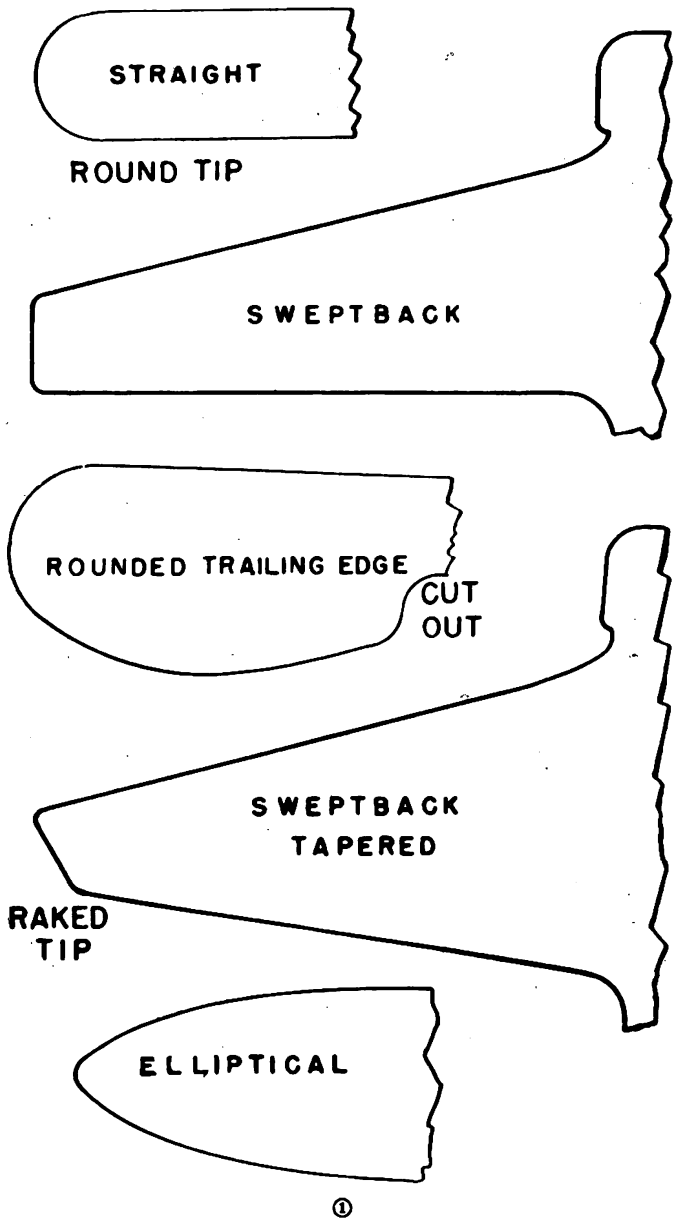


FIGURE 97.—Nomenclature of airplane parts.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



①

FIGURE 98.—Wing shapes.

Digitized by Google
Original from
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

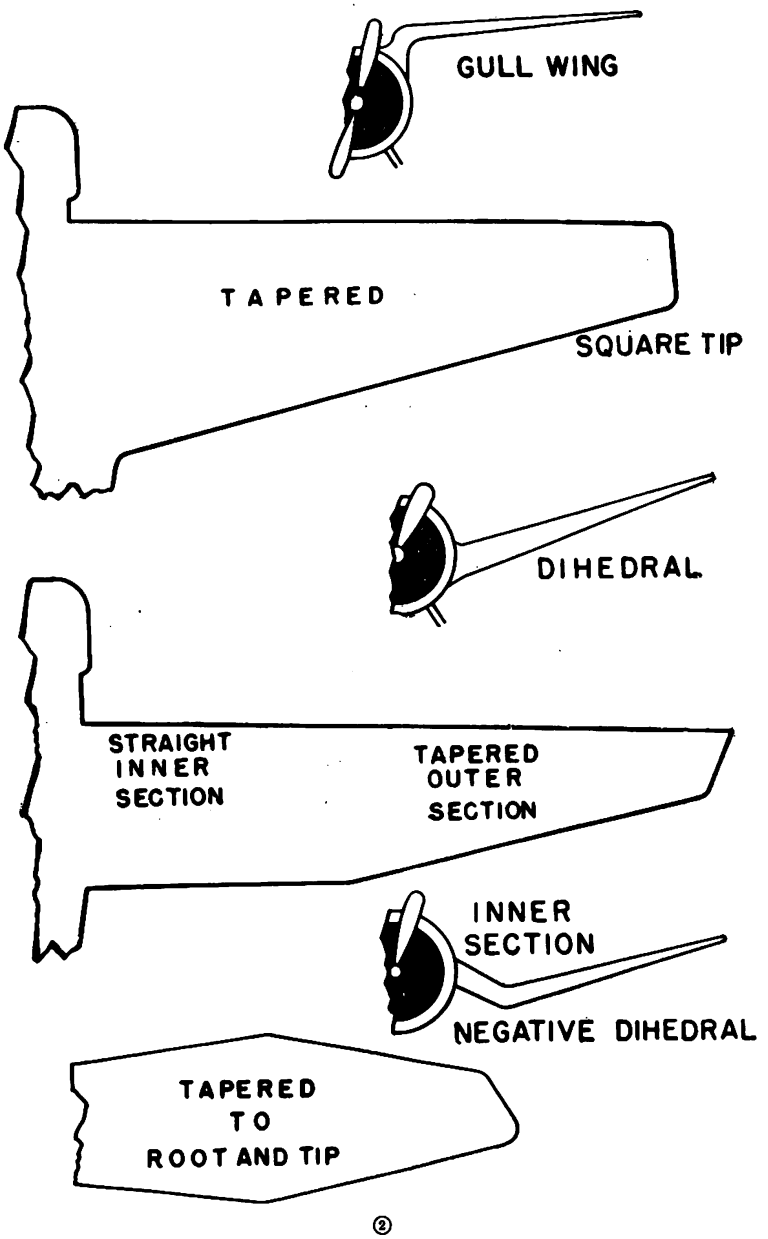
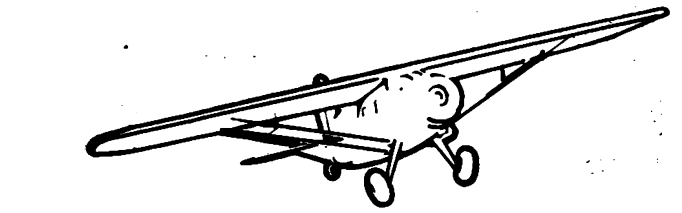
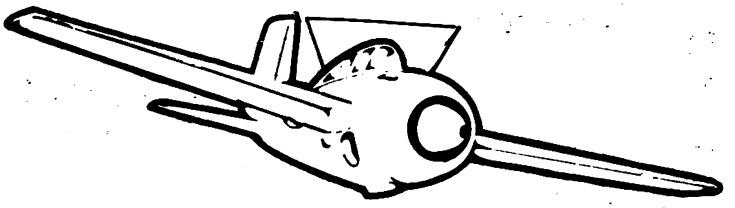


FIGURE 98.—Wing shapes—Continued.

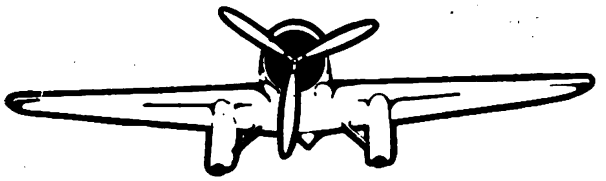
Digitized by Google
Original from
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



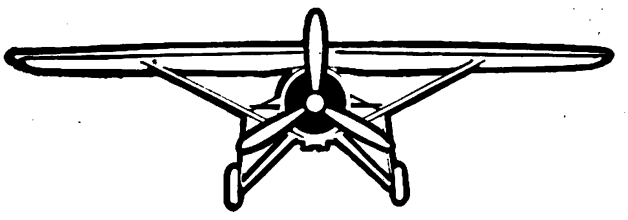
HIGH-WING



MIDWING



LOW-WING



(PARASOL MONOPLANE)

FIGURE 99.—Monoplanes.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

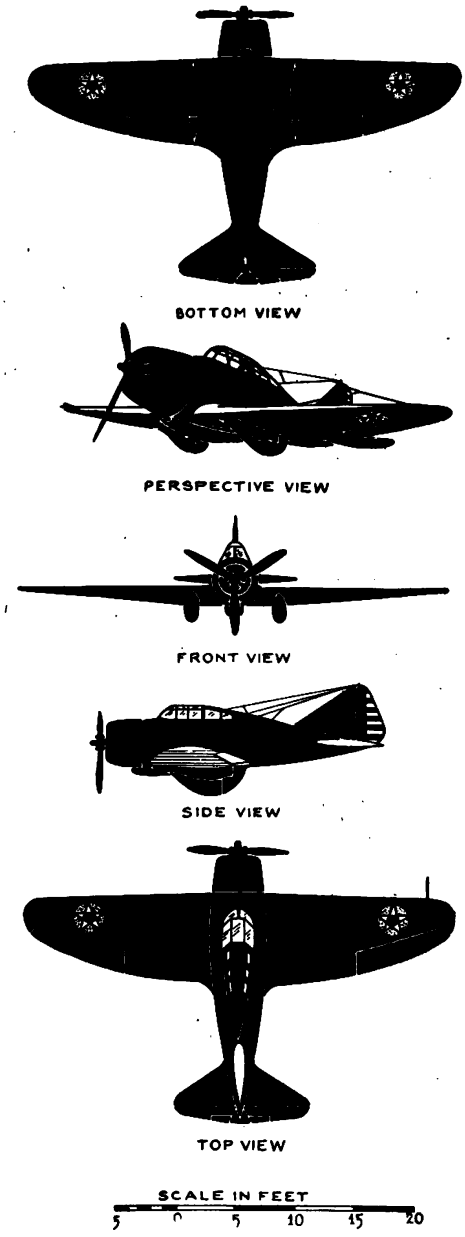


FIGURE 100.—Pursuit.

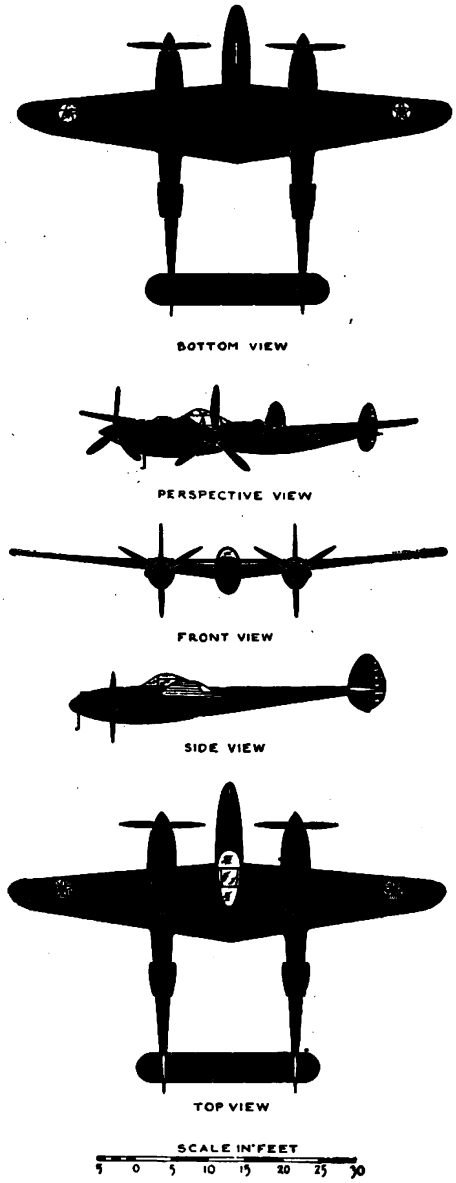


FIGURE 101.—Pursuit.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

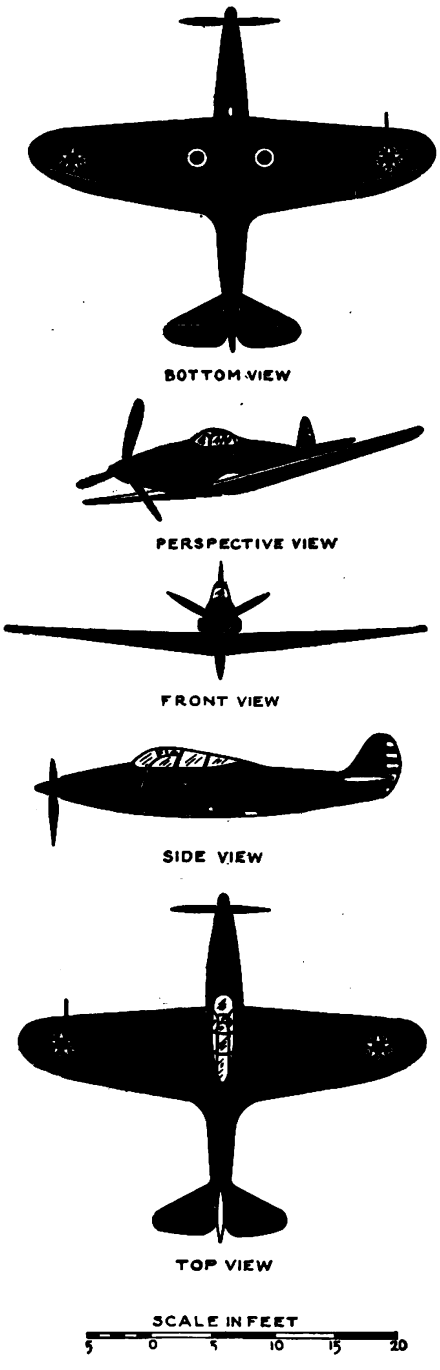


FIGURE 102.—Pursuit.

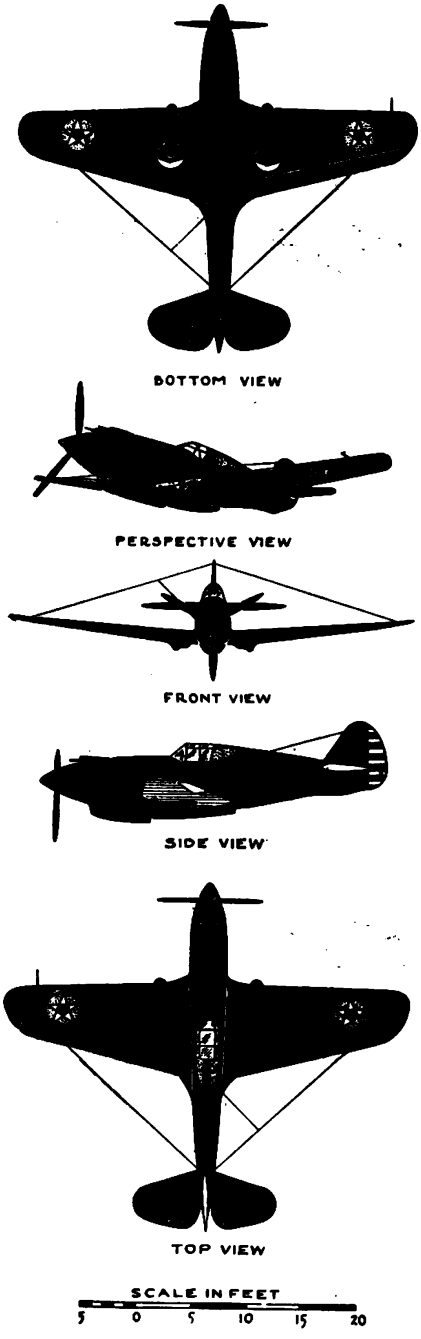


FIGURE 103.—Pursuit.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

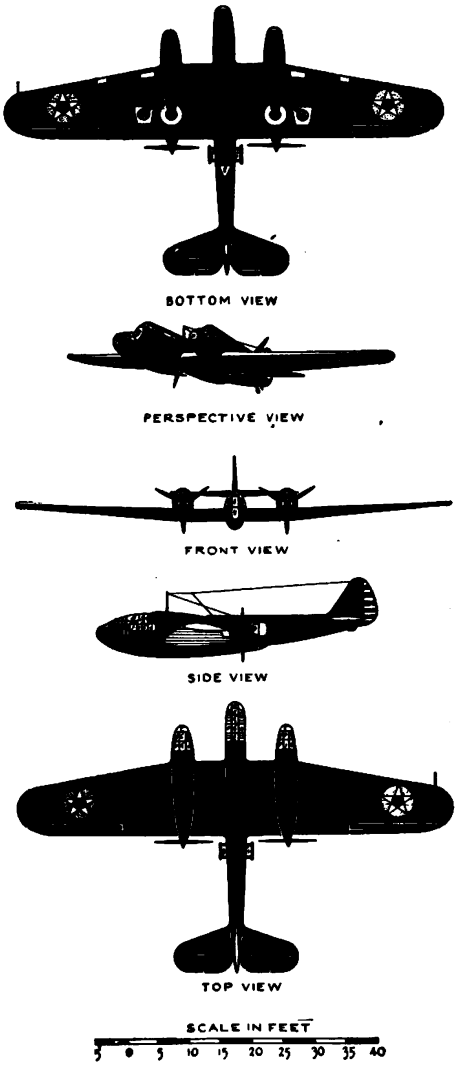


FIGURE 104.—Multiplace fighter.

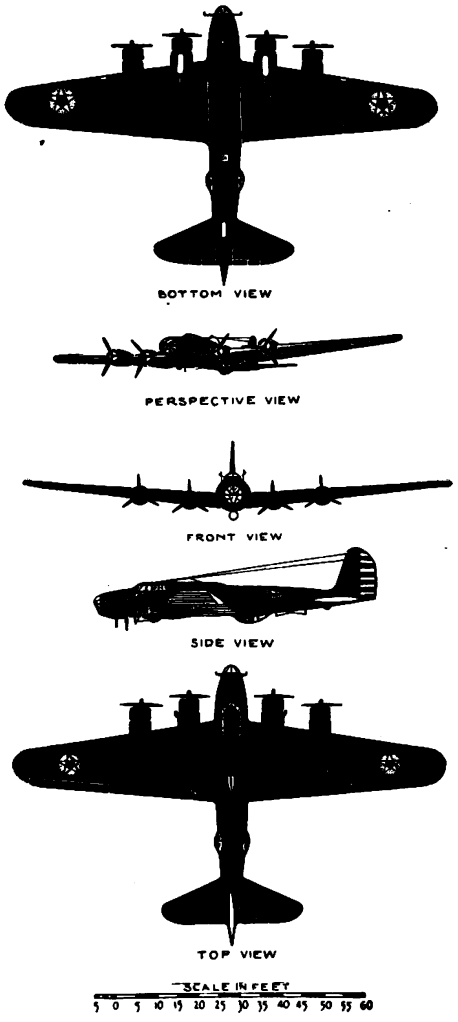


FIGURE 105.—Bombardment.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

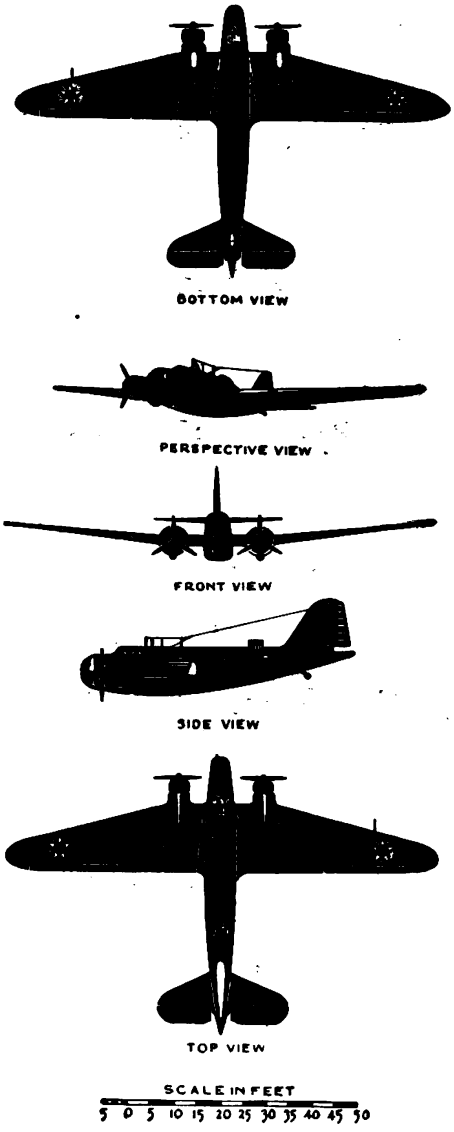


FIGURE 106.—Bombardment.

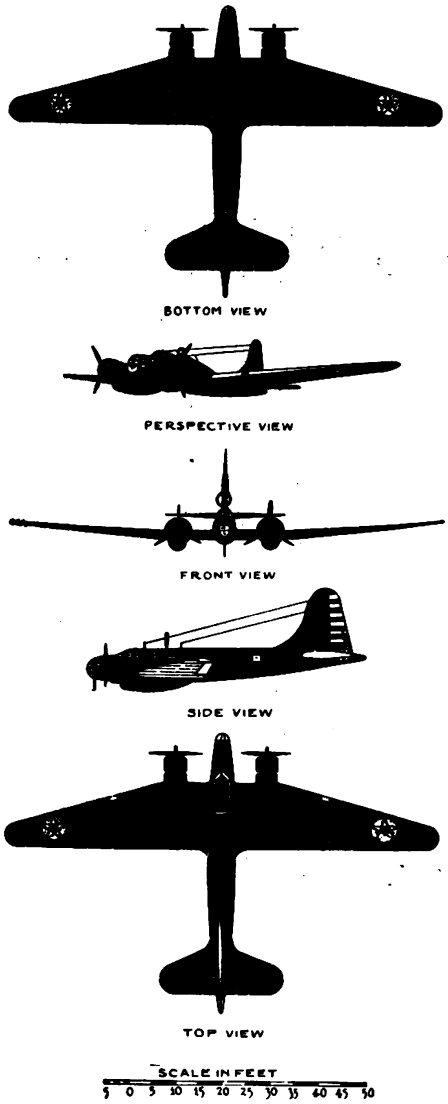


FIGURE 107.—Bombardment.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

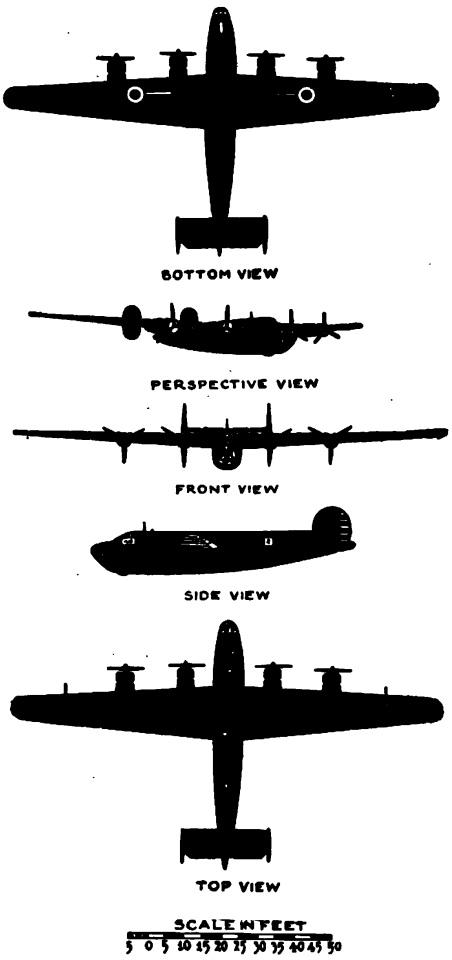


FIGURE 108.—Bombardment.

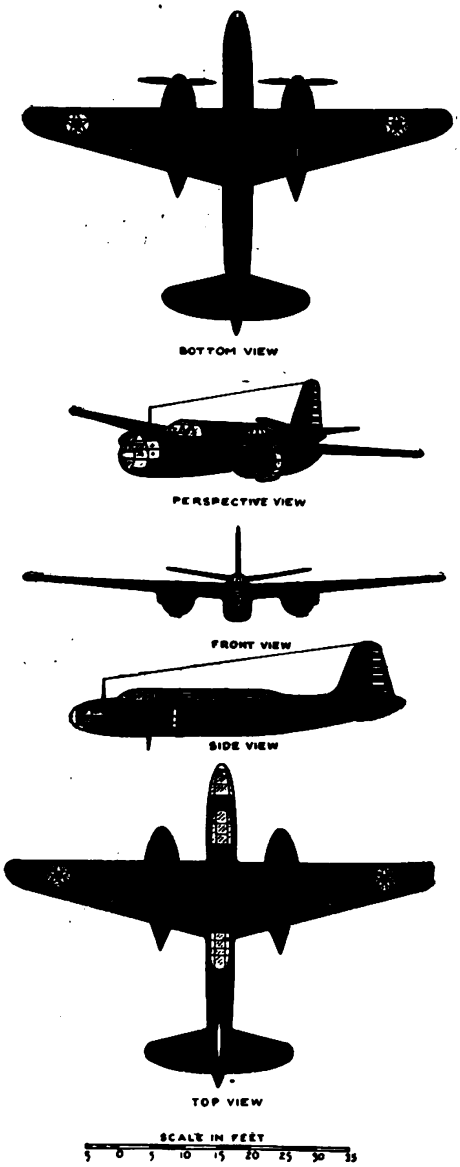


FIGURE 109.—Light bombardment.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

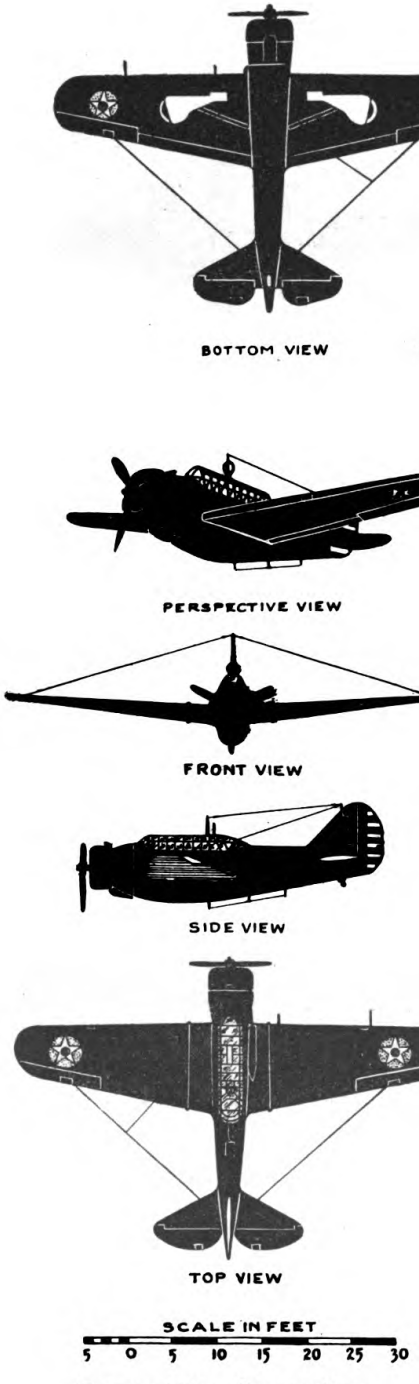


FIGURE 110.—Observation.

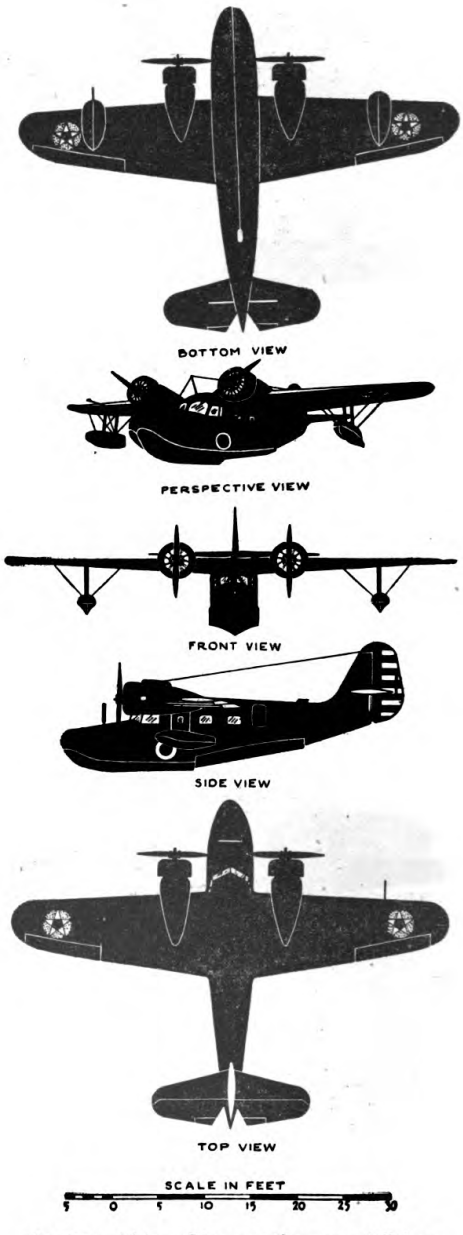
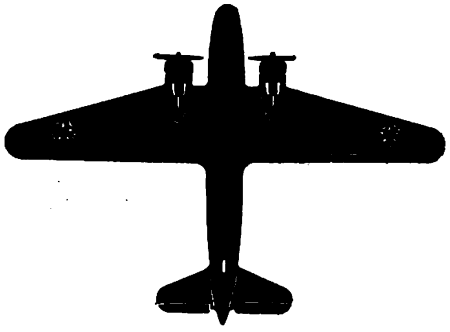


FIGURE 111.—Observation amphibian.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



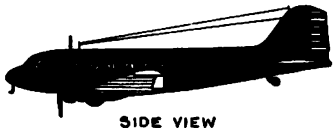
BOTTOM VIEW



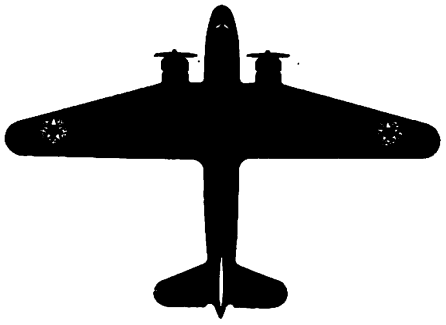
PERSPECTIVE VIEW



FRONT VIEW



SIDE VIEW



TOP VIEW

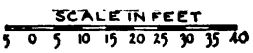


FIGURE 112.—Transport.

Digitized by Google
426685°—42——14

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 15

MOTOR TRANSPORTATION

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	March rules and discipline	95–97
II.	Rules of the road, convoy discipline, and road inspections	98–102
III.	Principles of internal combustion engines	103–113
IV.	Inspection and maintenance	114–122
V.	Shop practices and supervision and instruction of mechanics	123–125
VI.	Loans and their proper distribution	126
VII.	Training of drivers	127
VIII.	Records and reports	128

SECTION I

MARCH RULES AND DISCIPLINE

	Paragraph
General	95
Signals	96
Traffic rules	97

95. General.—*Q.* What is a convoy? *A.* Any group of motor vehicles organized to operate as a military unit in contrast to organically motorized tactical units or service trains.

Q. What is the purpose of a convoy? *A.* The efficient transportation of personnel and matériel, especially with respect to the time required and condition upon arrival.

Q. Define each of the following: convoy commander, commander of troops, distance, guard, guide, march discipline, marker, regulating point, serial, and entrucking and detrucking points. *A.*

(1) *Convoy commander.*—The officer in charge of the motor transportation and personnel of a convoy.

(2) *Commander of troops.*—The officer in command of the unit being transported. He may be also the march or convoy commander.

(3) *Distance.*—The space from the rear of one vehicle (including the towed load, if any) to the front of the next vehicle in column, or the space from the rear element of a leading unit to the leading element of the following unit.

(4) *Guard.*—An individual, preferably a noncommissioned officer, placed at an extremely sensitive point, such as a railroad crossing or a turn into or off a main road, to control traffic.

(5) *Guide.*—An individual who leads or guides a unit or vehicle over a predetermined route or into a selected bivouac area.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(6) *March discipline.*—That quality acquired through training and experience in marching which insures adequate march control, care of equipment, obedience to march restrictions, proper conduct and performance of duty by individuals, correct formations, distances, and speeds, and effective use of cover.

(7) *Marker.*—An individual, or distinctive object, placed at a critical point to indicate a position, direction, procedure, or obstacle.

(8) *Regulating point.*—An easily recognizable point where the incoming motor transport column is separated into detachments for entrucking or detrucking purposes.

(9) *Serial.*—One or more march units, preferably with the same march characteristics, placed under one commander for march purposes.

(10) *Entrucking and detrucking points.*—The points where the head of a truck column halts for the entrucking or detrucking of troops or supplies.

Q. What is the assigned minimum distance between trucks in convoy? *A.*

(1) Open formation, 100 yards.

(2) Closed formation, twice the speedometer reading in yards.

(3) At a halt, 2 yards.

(4) Between sections, 3 to 5 minutes driving time.

Q. What are the driver's principal duties during a convoy? *A.*

(1) Attention to orders and to his driving.

(2) Constant inspection before, during, and after operation.

Q. What should the driver do if he has any trouble while on the march? *A.* If it is a major trouble, he should pull to the side of the road and signal the following vehicle to pass. He should then report the trouble to the maintenance officer who is at the rear of the convoy. If he is left behind, the driver remains with his truck as a guard. If it is a minor trouble, the driver reports it to the section mechanic or maintenance officer at the next halt.

Q. What should the driver do during halts of a convoy? *A.*

(1) He should make the prescribed inspections.

(2) He should keep to the right of his vehicle.

Q. In cold weather what precautions should be taken against a delay in starting? *A.* The drivers must be at their places in ample time to prepare their vehicles for the road so that the convoy can start on time.

Q. What is done when the column is parked each night? *A.* Gasoline, oil, and water are replenished, and the drivers clean their vehicles as well as they are able. The truckmaster (section leader)

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

supervises this and checks up on all defects reported by the driver. The maintenance section immediately starts on any repairs that may be necessary, assisted by the driver. This work takes from 1½ to 2 hours each evening, and no one should be dismissed until it has been completed.

Q. What are the duties of an assistant driver during a convoy? *A*.

(1) He assists the driver in backing, parking, etc.

(2) He watches to the rear.

(3) He takes his turn at driving.

(4) He assists in first echelon maintenance.

Q. How is gasoline obtained in convoy? *A*.

(1) In an emergency, from the 10-gallon cans carried by the convoy.

(2) At halts, from tankers or some type of filling station.

96. Signals.—*Q*. Describe the driver's arm signals. *A*.

(1) *Turn right.*—Extend the left arm outward at an angle 45° above the horizontal.

(2) *Turn left.*—Extend the left arm outward horizontally.

(3) *Slow or stop.*—Extend the left arm outward at an angle of 45° below horizontal.

(4) *Pass and keep going.*—Extend the left arm horizontally and describe small circles toward the front with the hand.

Q. Describe the commands and signals commonly used in a motorized unit. *A*.

(1) *Start engine.*—Simulate cranking.

(2) *Ready to start.*—The senior in the truck stands on the running board, facing the leader, and extends his arm vertically, fingers extended and joined, palm toward leader.

(3) *Stop engine.*—Cross the arms in front of the body at the waist and then move them sharply to the side. Repeat several times.

(4) *Increase speed.*—Carry the closed fist to the shoulder and rapidly thrust it vertically upward several times to the full extent of the arm.

(5) *Close up.*—Extend arms horizontally straight to the front, palms in. Move the hands together and then resume the first position, repeating several times.

(6) *Open up.*—Extend the arms horizontally straight to the front, palms out. Move the hands outward and then resume the first position, repeating several times.

(7) *Danger.*—Use three long blasts of a whistle or automobile horn repeated several times or three equally spaced shots with a rifle or pistol. The person giving the signal points in the direction of the

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

impending danger. This signal is reserved for warning of air or mechanized attack, or other immediate and grave danger.

(8) *Prepare to mount.*—Extend arm horizontally to the side, palm up, and wave the arm upward several times.

(9) *Prepare to dismount.*—Extend arm diagonally upward to the side, palm down, and wave the arm downward several times.

(10) *Report when ready to move* (given by unit commander).—Extend arm vertically, fingers extended and joined.

(11) *Drivers to turn around simultaneously.*—Extend both arms horizontally toward the drivers and describe small, vertical circles, then signal forward in the desired new direction.

97. Traffic rules.—*Q.* What are some of the more general traffic rules? *A.*

(1) Vehicles will keep to the right side of the road.

(2) The appropriate warning signal will be given before changing direction, slowing down, or stopping.

(3) The driver will be alert and pay attention to road signs, convoy signals, and traffic directions.

(4) The right-of-way will be given promptly to faster-moving vehicles.

(5) Speed will be reduced on dry, dusty roads.

(6) Lights will be dimmed when meeting another vehicle at night.

(7) Unnecessary use of horns is prohibited.

(8) Vehicles will be halted at railroad crossings not guarded by military personnel or civilian watchmen.

(9) Vehicles will clear the roadway before being halted.

Q. In passing oncoming vehicles, what should be done? *A.*

(1) Pass on the right, giving at least half of the road.

(2) Slow down if operating conditions are hazardous.

(3) Permit vehicle having a clear road ahead to have the right-of-way.

Q. What are some of the rules for passing vehicles traveling in the same direction? *A.*

(1) Do not pass at a corner or blind curve.

(2) Do not pass on hills unless safe passage is assured.

(3) Do not pass at street intersections, crossroads, or on roads too narrow to leave at least 2 feet between vehicles.

(4) In passing, do not cut in or out too sharply.

Q. What rules governing speed should be observed. *A.*

(1) The speed indicated on the caution plate mounted on the vehicle should not be exceeded.

(2) Drive slowly over rough, slippery, or congested roads.

(3) State or local speed regulations should be observed.

Digitized by Google
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

SECTION II

RULES OF THE ROAD, CONVOY DISCIPLINE, AND ROAD INSPECTIONS

Paragraph
Rules of the road 98
Convoy regulations and discipline 99
Speed laws and regulations 100
Parking 101
Road inspections 102

98. Rules of the road.—*Q.* What are the general rules of the road with regard to warning signals? *A.* Appropriate warning signals will be given before changing direction, slowing down, or stopping.

Q. What are the rules with regard to passing traffic moving in the same direction? *A.*

(1) Never pass when going around a corner or a blind curve.

(2) Never pass when going up or down hill unless safe passage is assured.

(3) Never pass at street intersections or crossroads.

(4) Never pass when the road is not wide enough to allow at least 2 feet between vehicles.

Q. What are the rules with regard to meeting and passing an oncoming vehicle? *A.*

(1) Pass on the right, giving at least half the road.

(2) Slow down if operating conditions are hazardous.

(3) Permit the vehicle having a clear road ahead to have the right-of-way.

Q. What is the rule with respect to speeds on dusty roads? *A.* Speeds will be reduced on dusty roads.

Q. What are the rules as to night driving? *A.*

(1) When driving with lights, the vehicle will be kept well to the right and lights will be dimmed when meeting another vehicle.

(2) When driving without lights speeds will be reduced to accord with road conditions, degree of visibility, and skill of the drivers.

Q. What will be done at a railroad crossing? *A.* Vehicles will be halted unless the crossing is guarded by military personnel or civilian watchmen.

Q. What will be done at road intersections? *A.* Vehicles will be slowed down to a safe stopping speed at all road intersections not covered by traffic-control personnel or traffic-control devices.

Q. What are the rules as to halting? *A.*

(1) Vehicles will clear the roadway before being halted.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(2) Vehicles will not be halted on bridges, in defiles, at points where the vision of other drivers is restricted, or in such manner as to block cross traffic or entering side traffic.

Q. Which has the right-of-way in each of the following cases:

(1) Two vehicles approaching an intersection where there are no stop signs, traffic signals, or police officers?

(2) Two vehicles, one approaching an intersection and one already in the intersection?

(3) Two vehicles moving in the same direction at different speeds?

(4) Motor vehicles and pedestrians at an intersection where there are no traffic signals or traffic officers?

A. The following have the right-of-way:

(1) The vehicle on the right.

(2) The vehicle which has already entered the intersection.

(3) The faster moving vehicle.

(4) Pedestrians.

99. Convoy regulations and discipline.—*Q.* What is the purpose of a convoy? *A.* The efficient transportation of troops and matériel by groups of motor vehicles.

Q. On what does its success depend? *A.*

(1) Condition of vehicles.

(2) Training and discipline of personnel.

(3) Available roads.

(4) Climatic conditions.

Q. How many vehicles make a convoy? *A.* Two or more vehicles operating together constitute a convoy.

Q. When a convoy is of more than 10 vehicles, how is it divided? *A.* If there are more than 10 vehicles, they should be divided into sections.

Q. Who rides on the first vehicle of each section? *A.* The truckmaster of that section.

Q. What operators are required for each vehicle and what are their duties? *A.* Whenever possible, there will be on each vehicle a driver and an assistant driver. The driver will drive the vehicle, keeping the vehicle to the right-hand side of the road. He will follow, at safe distance, the vehicle ahead of him in the convoy. The assistant driver will watch for all signals and communicate them to the driver. He will pass on the necessary signals to the vehicle following and will relieve the driver occasionally on long trips.

Q. What are the proper distances between vehicles in a convoy? *A.* In order to avoid excessive "accordion effect," no rigid distances between vehicles should be prescribed. However, minimum safe distances are prescribed, the distance in yards in closed formation being

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

approximately twice the speedometer reading. In open formation, distances between vehicles should be increased.

Q. What is the easiest way for a large convoy to get through a city? *A.* The convoy commander or advance agent should make arrangements for a police escort through a city.

Q. What should the first vehicle do when it becomes necessary to open or close the convoy? *A.* When it is necessary to open the convoy, as when approaching a hill, the first vehicle should speed up so that those behind can take the proper distance. After the necessity for opening has been passed, the first vehicle must slow down in order to permit the following vehicles to close up to proper distance.

Q. What governs the speed of the first truck? *A.* The speed of the last vehicle. The speed of the first vehicle must be governed in such a way that the last vehicle may keep its place at the proper distance and not fall behind.

Q. How is a convoy started? *A.* All vehicles in a section should start at the same time. Vehicles should start at a slow speed so that they may take their proper distance in the section. A section should not start until the section commander has assured himself that all the vehicles are ready to start.

Q. Describe driver's arm signals. *A.*

(1) *Turn right*—Extend the left arm outward at an angle of 45° above the horizontal.

(2) *Turn left.*—Extend the left arm outward horizontally.

(3) *Slow or stop.*—Extend the left arm outward at an angle of 45° below the horizontal.

(4) *Pass and keep going.*—Extend the left arm horizontally and describe small circles toward the front with the hand.

Q. Describe the commands and signals commonly used in a motorized unit. *A.*

(1) *Start engine.*—Simulate cranking.

(2) *Ready to start.*—Senior in truck stands on running board, faces leader, and extends arm vertically, fingers extended and joined, palm toward the leader.

(3) *Stop engines.*—Cross arms in front of body at the waist and then move them sharply to the side. Repeat several times.

(4) *Increase speed.*—Carry the closed fist to the shoulder and rapidly thrust it vertically upward several times to the full extent of the arm.

(5) *Close up.*—Extend the arms horizontally straight to the front, palms in. Move the hands together and then resume the first position. Repeat several times.

(6) *Open up.*—Extend the arms horizonally straight to the front,

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

palms out. Move the hands outward and then resume the first position. Repeat several times.

(7) *Danger.*—Use three long blasts of a whistle or automobile horn repeated several times or three equally spaced shots from a rifle or pistol. The person making the signal points in the direction of the impending danger. This signal is reserved for warning of air or mechanized attack or other immediate and grave danger. Other signals may be found in FM 25–10.

Q. How is a convoy stopped? *A.* All vehicles should stop gradually, and pull well over to the right of the road. Care should be taken not to block streets or crossroads. A straight, open stretch of road outside of towns, where water is available, should be selected for such stops.

Q. Name some precautionary measures that should be taken while on the march. *A.*

(1) At each halt, truckmasters, mechanics, and drivers should make a general inspection of vehicles at once.

(2) Upon arrival at any doubtful bridge, the convoy should be halted and the bridge inspected before allowing any vehicle to proceed.

(3) If for any reason the convoy commander has occasion to leave his convoy, he should always appoint a commander to take his place, and he should give definite and explicit instructions to his successor.

(4) Local speed and other regulations should always be observed.

(5) Unnecessary delays should be avoided; time once lost is most difficult to make up.

Q. What provisions are made for the care of disabled vehicles? *A.* The last truck of the convoy should carry the tools, ropes, jacks, etc., which are necessary to effect simple road repairs. This vehicle should be under charge of the maintenance officer or an experienced mechanic who will act as file closer, and will have the assistant mechanics as near him as possible. His duties are to assist any disabled vehicle, and to make proper disposition of broken-down vehicles, subject to the orders of the commanding officer. The file closers will not leave any vehicle of the convoy without taking the proper measures either to repair the vehicle on the road, tow it along with the convoy, or make other proper disposition of it.

Q. What precautions should be taken at a crossroad where trucks are separated considerably or when crossing a railroad track? *A.* A man from the leading vehicle should be detailed to give proper directions to the following vehicles at a crossroad, or to watch the track. He should get on the last vehicle that passes and take his regular place at the next stop.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. In cold weather what precautions are taken against a delay in starting? *A.* The drivers should be at their places in ample time to prepare the vehicles for the road, so that the convoy will start on time.

Q. What are the normal positions of—

(1) The convoy commander?

(2) The control car?

(3) The maintenance vehicle?

A. Normal positions are—

(1) At rear of convoy.

(2) Leading the convoy.

(3) Trailing the convoy.

Q. How is the normal day of a convoy divided? *A.*

(1) Breakfast, police of camp, and preparations for starting, 1 to 1½ hours.

(2) Morning period on road, 5 hours.

(3) Noon halt, 1 hour.

(4) Afternoon period on road, 3 hours.

(5) Servicing vehicles and supper, 1½ to 2 hours.

Q. Should departures ever be made from this division of time? *A.* No, except in extending the driving periods in an emergency. Driving a heavy truck at road speeds over 30 miles per hour is very fatiguing. After 8 hours' driving, accidents will increase and, when camp is reached, the end-of-the-day servicing of vehicles will be neglected.

Q. How is the movement of convoys over public highways coordinated with civilian traffic? *A.* By means of rules promulgated by the Highway Traffic Advisory Committee of the War Department.

Q. What is done when the column is parked each night? *A.* Gasoline, oil, and water are replenished and the vehicles are cleaned as well as possible by the drivers. The truckmaster (section leader) supervises this and checks up on all defects reported by the driver. The maintenance section immediately starts the necessary repairs, assisted by the driver. At night, lights must be placed on each vehicle, if parked on the road. A guard is usually detailed to protect the column. This work takes about 1½ to 2 hours each evening and no one should be dismissed until it has been completed.

Q. At what times are troubles most likely to develop within the convoy? *A.* During the first hour or late in the afternoon.

Q. When should the first halt be made? Why? *A.* The first halt should be made during the first hour, or as soon as the vehicles have warmed up. Minor adjustments and repairs made at this time will save much delay later on in the day.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What is convoy discipline? *A.* It is the observance and enforcement of the rules and regulations for convoys, especially as relates to the position of units in the column and the position and conduct of individuals and vehicles.

Q. Why is convoy discipline necessary? *A.* It is necessary to insure adequate control; care of equipment; correct formations, distances, and speeds; and to enable the convoy to pass over roads with a maximum of speed and safety and a minimum of interference with other traffic.

Q. How is convoy discipline acquired? *A.* Through training and experience.

100. Speed laws and regulations.—*Q.* What speed laws and regulations must be obeyed by the driver of a military motor vehicle? *A.* Speed laws of the locality in which the vehicle is being operated and speed regulations posted in the vehicle.

Q. In your locality what are the maximum speed limits—

(1) In a business district?
(2) In a residential district?
(3) For passenger cars?
(4) For motorcycles?
(5) For trucks?

A. Maximum speed limits are:

(1) ——— miles per hour.
(2) ——— miles per hour.
(3) ——— miles per hour.
(4) ——— miles per hour.
(5) ——— miles per hour.

Q. How fast do you have to drive to be guilty of reckless driving? *A.* At any speed which is too fast for conditions of traffic, weather, or the road.

101. Parking.—*Q.* What are a few "don'ts" with respect to parking? *A.*

(1) Do not park on the roadway.
(2) Do not park on a bridge.
(3) Do not park in a defile.
(4) Do not park at the top of a hill.
(5) Do not park at any point where the vision of other drivers is restricted.
(6) Do not park so as to block cross traffic or entering side traffic.
(7) Do not park "double."

Q. How is a convoy parked? *A.* The principal requirements are sufficient space, solid ground, water, and toilet facilities. Do not park on ground where a sudden rain may mire the vehicles, or

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

servicing at night cannot be performed properly. When it is necessary to park in column, leave only enough clearance between vehicles to allow any vehicle to get out.

102. Road inspections.—*Q.* When should a road inspection be made? *A.* At each scheduled halt when in convoy; at intervals during the day when the vehicle is not in convoy.

Q. What is the object of a road inspection? *A.* To detect and correct defects and to assure that the vehicle is ready for continued operation.

Q. What is the general procedure for making a road inspection of a vehicle? *A.*

(1) Allow the engine to run a short time. Listen for unusual noises.

(2) Walk around the vehicle, looking carefully for fuel, oil, and water leaks.

(3) Inspect all tires for inflation, cuts, nails, stones, and indications of misalinement. On track-laying vehicles, examine tracks for adjustment and for worn, loose, broken, or missing parts. Note condition of traction devices, if used.

(4) Feel brake bands, wheel hubs, and gear cases for evidence of overheating.

(5) Inspect the lights, if traveling at night with lights.

(6) Check the amount of fuel in the tank.

(7) Check the quantity of water in the radiator.

(8) Check the quantity and condition of the oil in the crankcase or oil reservoir. Add oil if necessary.

(9) Inspect the condition of the cargo and towed load, if any.

(10) Report promptly the result of the inspection to the chief of section or other designated individual.

SECTION III

PRINCIPLES OF INTERNAL COMBUSTION ENGINES

	Paragraph
Theory of internal combustion engines	103
Gasoline feed system	104
Ignition system	105
Lubrication system	106
Cooling system	107
Storage batteries	108
Generators	109
Power transmission and running gear	110
Axles, wheels, and tires	111
Brakes	112
Steering gear	113

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

103. Theory of internal combustion engines.—*Q.* Explain briefly the basic principle involved in the operation of the internal combustion engine. *A.* A combustible mixture of fuel (gasoline) and oxygen (air) is introduced into a cylinder and compressed between the closed end of the cylinder and a piston. The mixture is then ignited. The burning of the mixture generates heat which causes expansion of the gases within the cylinder. The expanding gases act on the piston and force it downward. The movement of the piston is transmitted through a connecting rod to the crankshaft, thus converting heat energy into mechanical energy.

Q. What types of internal combustion engines are used in motor vehicles? *A.* The gasoline engine and the Diesel engine.

Q. What is meant by a cycle? *Q.* A cycle is a series of events which are constantly repeated in the same manner and the same order. In a gasoline engine it consists of the four strokes of the piston and the events that occur with each stroke.

Q. What is meant by a four-cycle or four-stroke engine? *A.* One whose cycle consists of four distinct steps:

(1) Intake or admission of the charge of the air-fuel mixture.
(2) Compression of the charge.
(3) Ignition and explosion of the charge.
(4) Exhaust or expulsion of the burned charge.

When this complete process requires four strokes of the pistons in any one cylinder, the engine is designated as a four-stroke cycle engine.

Q. Explain what takes place during each of the four strokes of the cycle. *A.*

(1) The piston being at top dead center, the intake valve having just opened, the piston going down on suction draws into the cylinder a charge of gasoline and air.

(2) Shortly after the piston has passed bottom dead center, the intake valve closes, and during the rest of the upward stroke the charge is compressed.

(3) Just before the piston reaches top dead center on the compression stroke, a spark is produced at the spark plug and the burning of the charge forces the piston downward. (This is the power stroke.)

(4) Just before the piston reaches bottom dead center, the exhaust valve opens and the next upward stroke of the piston forces the burned gases out and clears the cylinder for the intake stroke of the next cycle.

Q. Why is a system of valves used in an engine? *A.* To allow the fuel to enter the combustion chamber, to close the chamber, and to allow the burned gases to escape from the combustion chamber at the proper time.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What is the function of the camshaft? *A*. The camshaft has a cam for each valve. As the camshaft turns, the cam comes in contact with the valve lifter and raises the particular valve off its seat (opens it).

Q. How is the camshaft driven? *A*. Either by a chain or system of timing gears driven by the crankshaft gear.

Q. What is meant by valve timing? *A*. By valve timing is meant the proper adjustment of the opening and closing of the intake and exhaust valves in relation to the position of the piston. Since the distance of the piston from dead center is dependent on the position

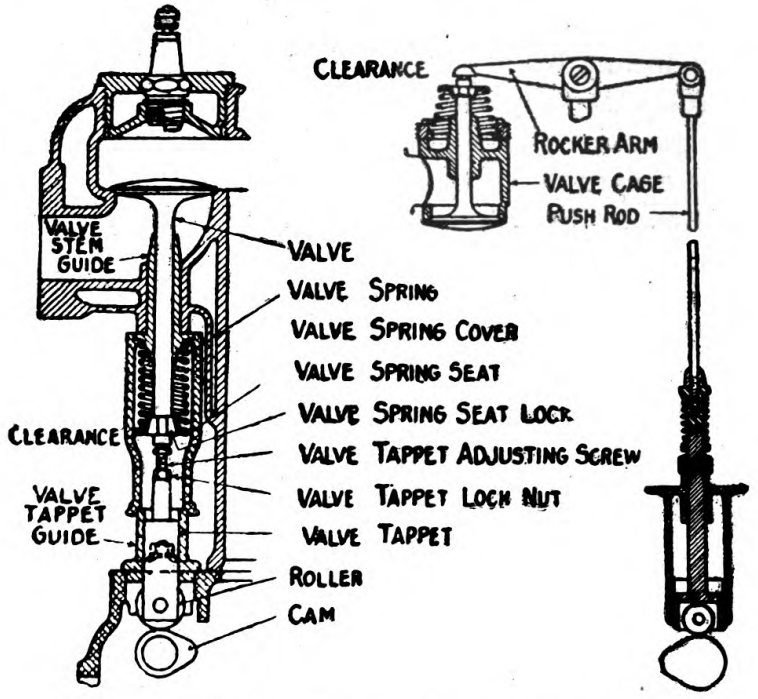


FIGURE 113.—Typical valve mechanisms.

of the crankshaft, valve timing resolves itself into the proper meshing of the crankshaft gear with the camshaft gear to obtain this correct relationship.

Q. When should the valve open in relation to the position of the piston? *A*. The average opening and closing of the valves of the modern high-speed engine are as follows: Intake valve opens 5° before top dead center. Intake valve closes 46° after bottom dead center. Exhaust valve opens 47° before bottom dead center. Exhaust valve closes 8° after top dead center.

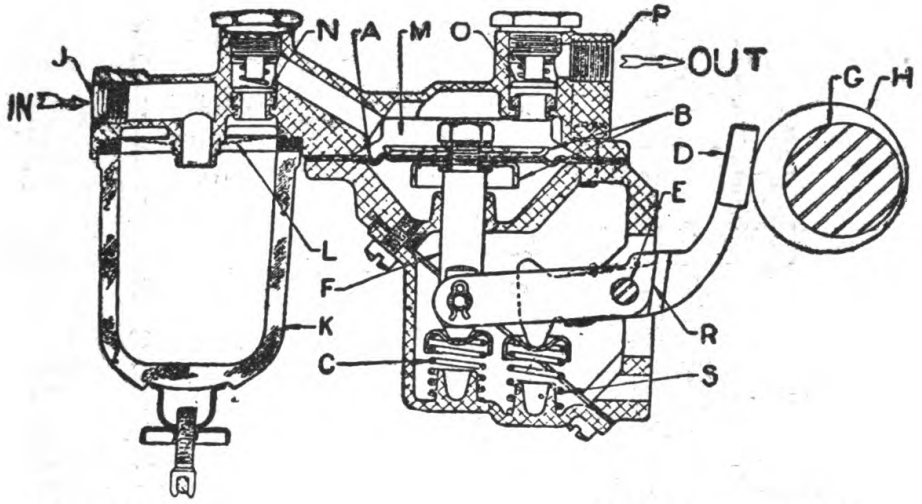
NOTE.—Wherever values for any adjustments are given they should be understood as averages. Service manuals for particular vehicles should always be consulted.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. Why is the power producing unit of a motor vehicle called an engine instead of a motor? *A.* To avoid any confusion with electric or starting motors.

104. Gasoline feed system.—*Q.* What type gasoline feed system is used on Army vehicles? *A.* The positive fuel feed system (fuel pump) is used on all modern vehicles.

Q. Describe the fuel pump. *A.* The fuel pump is a device used to pump the fuel from the fuel tank and force it to the carburetor, It has a diaphragm in the housing of the pump which is operated by a lever. The lever is in constant contact with a cam on the camshaft which operates the pump. The pump has a check valve in the inlet



A. Diaphragm.
B. Diaphragm metal disks.
C. Diaphragm pull rod spring.
D. Diaphragm operating rocker arm (two pieces).
E. Rocker arm pivot.
F. Diaphragm pull rod.
G. Camshaft.
H. Eccentric cam on camshaft.
J. Inlet from gas tank.
K. Glass sediment bowl.
L. Sediment bowl screen.
M. Pump chamber.
N. Inlet suction valve.
O. Pressure valve.
P. Outlet to carburetor.
R. Break in rocker arm.
S. Rocker arm spring.

FIGURE 114.—Fuel pump (sectionalized view).

side which allows the gasoline to be drawn from the fuel tank but stops the flow back into the tank. There is another check valve on the outlet side which allows the gasoline to be forced into the carburetor.

Q. What troubles develop most frequently in a fuel pump? *A.* The diaphragm becomes punctured, gasoline line becomes loose, or the strainer becomes clogged.

Q. What pump parts should be carried on a convoy? *A.* A complete fuel pump for replacement use.

Q. Name the essential parts of a carburetor. *A.* The carburetor

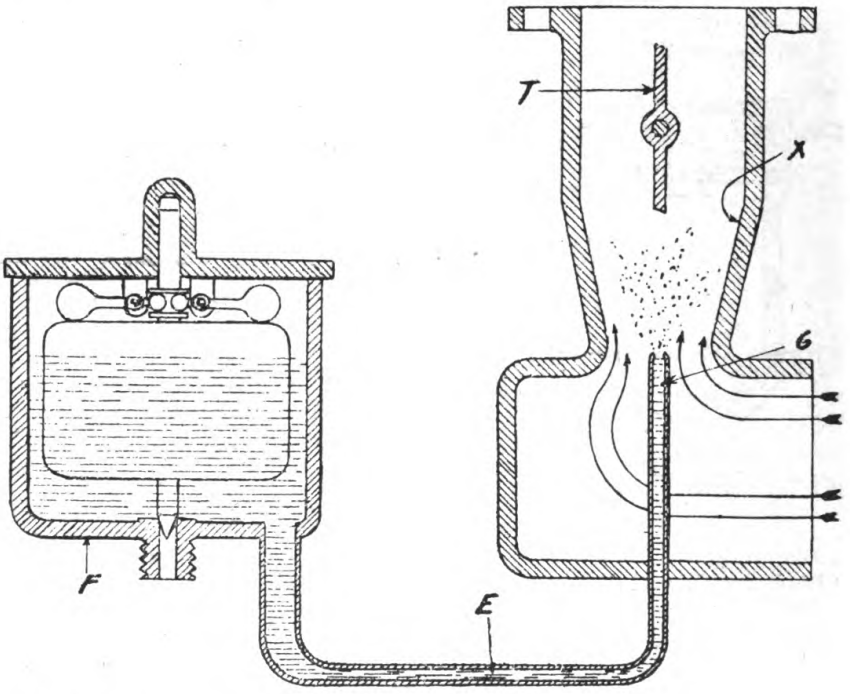
Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

throat, float chamber, float, float needle valve, low- and high-speed nozzles, primary and secondary air inlet, throttle valve, and choke valve.

Q. Why must a carburetor have a compensating device on it? *A.* The increase in rate of flow of air and fuel is not proportional, the increase in flow of fuel being much greater than that of air.

Q. What methods of compensation are used in the construction of carburetors? *A.*

(1) Automatically supplying a proportionate increase in fuel as the suction decreases.



F. Float chamber.
T. Throttle (butterfly) valve.
G. Jet.
X. Venturi tube.

FIGURE 115.—Simple carburetor.

(2) Increasing the air proportionally as the suction increases.

Q. Name some of the compensating devices used in carburetors. *A.* Auxiliary jet, metering pin, expanding venturi, compensating jet, air bleed system, multiple jet.

Q. What is the advantage of a down-draft carburetor? *A.* The flow of fuel, being downward instead of upward, is aided by gravity, thereby increasing the capacity, while cooler air will enter at the top of the engine, giving an increase of power. This carburetor is more easily installed and it partially eliminates fire hazards, since a backfire will be in the air above the engine.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

105. Ignition system.—*Q.* What are the necessary parts of a battery ignition system? *A.* A storage battery; switch; primary circuit, consisting of the breaker (or interrupter), condenser, and primary coil; and the secondary circuit, consisting of secondary coil, distributor, high-tension cables, and spark plugs.

Q. What is the function of the ignition system? *A.* To ignite the charge of fuel at the proper time.

Q. What is meant by ignition timing? *A.* Setting the ignition system so the breaker points will start to open at, or just before, the piston reaches top dead center on the compression stroke.

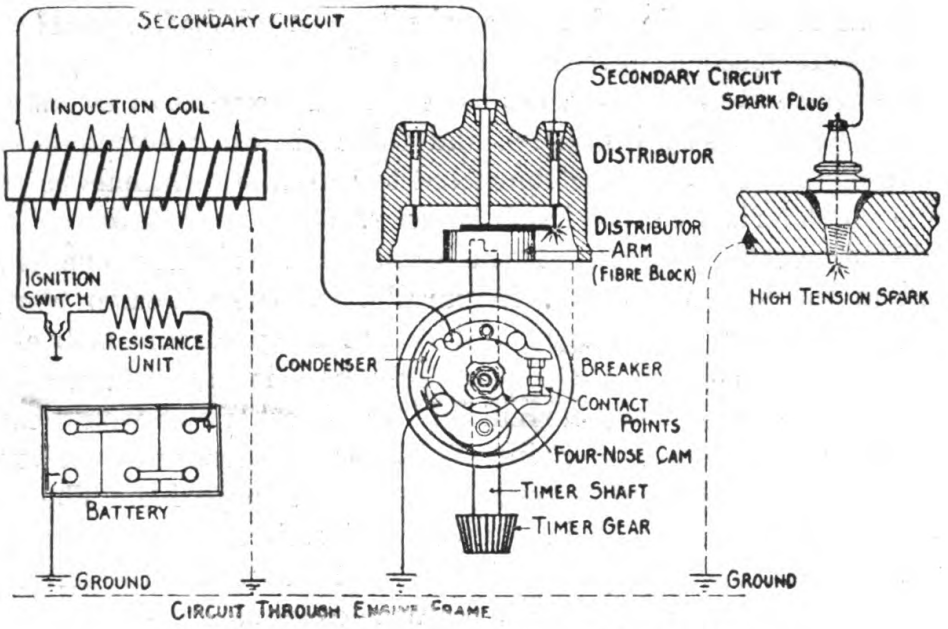


FIGURE 116.—Typical battery ignition system.

Q. What is the source of electrical power to operate the ignition system on the modern automobile? *A.* The storage battery and generator.

Q. Draw a wiring diagram of a typical battery ignition system. *A.* (See fig. 116.)

Q. What is the difference between the primary and secondary windings? *A.* The primary winding has a small number of turns of large wire wound on a soft iron core. The voltage of the primary is from 6 to 12 volts depending on the voltage of the battery. The secondary coil has many turns of fine wire wound on the primary coil. The primary coil, aided by the condenser action, induces a voltage of several thousand volts in the secondary coil.

Q. What is the interrupter? *A.* The interrupter is a mechanical switch which rapidly makes and breaks the primary circuit at inter-

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

vals. When the primary circuit is broken the primary current ceases to flow, thus causing the magnetic field around the coil to collapse. In so doing, it will induce a high voltage in the secondary coil, having sufficient intensity to cause the secondary current to jump the spark plug gap.

Q. Explain the construction of the interrupter. *A.* The interrupter consists of a stationary contact point and a movable contact point, a spring which tends to keep them together, and a rotating cam which separates them at regular intervals. The cam is geared to the camshaft and the speed of the cam is proportional to the engine speed.

Q. What is the ratio of the camshaft to crankshaft speed? *A.* The camshaft speed is half the speed of the crankshaft.

Q. Of what does a condenser consist? *A.* It consists of two strips of tinfoil separated by insulation and folded into a convenient size. The two strips of tinfoil are connected to separate terminals so that there is no electrical connection between them.

Q. What is the purpose of the condenser? *A.* The condenser is used in the primary circuit in parallel with the breaker points. When the breaker points open and the primary circuit is broken, the induced-kick voltage in the primary, which is in the same direction as the original battery current and which otherwise would cause an arcing across the breaker points, is impressed across the condenser and charges one side positive and the other side negative. The condenser will discharge back in a reverse direction through the primary windings. This backward surge of current will assist in reducing the magnetism of the core to zero, thus speeding up the collapsing lines of force and thereby aiding in securing the maximum induced voltage in the secondary winding.

Q. Describe the distributor head. *A.* The distributor head has a center terminal which connects with the secondary terminal of the induction coil, and has as many metal segments or terminals equally spaced around it as there are cylinders. Mounted on the distributor shaft is a rotating finger which turns at one-half crankshaft speed and makes contact with one of the terminals on the distributor. Just before the breaker points are opened, this center terminal makes contact with the rotor finger, thus closing the circuit from the induction coil to the spark plug when the piston is on top dead center (or firing point).

Q. What should the gap at the breaker points be? *A.* It should be from about 0.013 to 0.022 of an inch.

Q. What should the spark plug gap be? *A.* It should be from 0.025 to 0.035 of an inch.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What should the valve tappet clearance be? *A.* The exhaust valve tappet should have about 0.006 to 0.012 of an inch. The inlet valve tappet should have about 0.004 to 0.010 of an inch.

106. Lubrication system.—*Q.* Name and explain the lubrication systems used in automobile engines. *A.* The full-force feed, and the force feed (or pressure feed).

(1) In full-force feed, an oil pump, which is usually driven from the camshaft by means of gears, picks up the oil from the oil sump. The oil is then forced upward and conducted by means of tubes to the crankshaft bearings. These bearings become lubricated while the excess oil flows through holes drilled in the crankshaft and through the throws of the crankshaft into the crankpins lubricating the connecting rod bearings. The oil is forced from the connecting rod bearings through tubes or holes drilled in the connecting rods to the piston pins. This is the only system in which the oil is forced to the piston pins. In the full-force feed the camshaft bushings are also force-feed lubricated.

(2) In the force feed, the oil is pumped from the oil sump and forced to the crankshaft and connecting rod bearings only. The piston pins and cylinder walls are lubricated by splash.

Q. Explain the oiling system used on the Chevrolet. *A.* This system provides positive pressure lubrication to the crankshaft main bearings, the camshaft bearings, and valve rocker arm bushings. The oil is taken from the oil pan by the pump which delivers it under pressure to a common bearing lubrication point in the center of the engine and to the oil distributor on the left side of the engine. The center main and center camshaft bearings are lubricated directly from the common bearing lubrication point, and distributing pipes which extend the full length of the crankcase deliver oil to the front and rear main and camshaft bearings. From the low-pressure side of the oil distributor, oil is fed to the connecting rod dipper troughs in the oil pan to provide positive splash lubrication for the connecting rod bearings, piston pins, and cylinder walls.

Q. Why are oil filters used? *A.* To remove the dirt and grit from the oil.

Q. What types of pumps are used in lubrication systems? *A.* The gear type, the vane type, and the plunger type.

Q. How are lubricating oils classified? *A.* Lubricating oils are classified according to their viscosity by an SAE rating. By this rating the higher number is given to the heavier oil. Oil with an SAE No. 50 rating is a thick oil, while No. 20 is a thin oil.

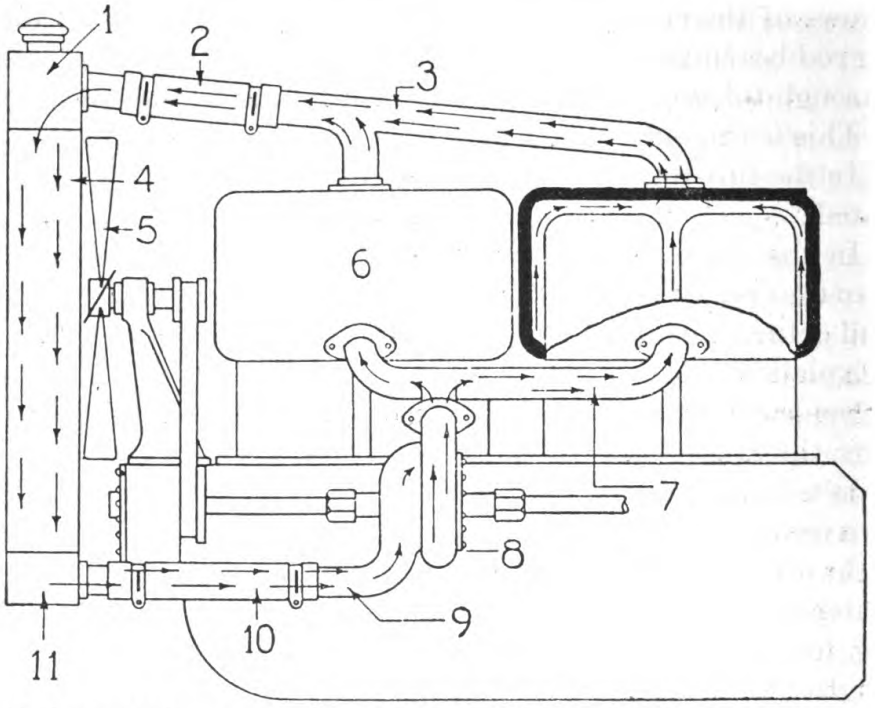
Q. Should an oil with the same viscosity number be used in winter and summer? Why? *A.* No. An oil with a high viscosity rating

Digitized by Google
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

should be used in summer, and an oil with a lower viscosity rating should be used in winter. If a heavy oil is used in the winter it could not lubricate all the bearings properly, because it is too thick to flow through the small clearance that a bearing has during the warming up of the engine.

Q. What is meant by crankcase dilution? *A.* It is the gasoline passing from the combustion chamber, along the cylinder walls, past the piston rings, down into the crankcase, and mixing with the oil.

107. Cooling system.—*Q.* How are engines cooled? *A.* There are two general types of cooling systems, the air-cooled and water-cooled.



1. Upper tank.
2. Hose.
3. Hot water from water jacket.
4. Radiator.
5. Fan.
6. Water jacket.
7. Water inlet pipe.
8. Circulating pump.
9. Cold water from radiator.
10. Hose.
11. Lower tank.

FIGURE 117.—Force cooling system.

(1) In the water-cooled engine a water jacket surrounds the cylinders and cylinder heads. This water jacket is connected to the radiator by hose connections, one at the top and one at the lower part of the water jacket. A fan driven by the engine circulates air through the radiator. The radiator and jacket are filled with water which circulates through the system either under pressure of a centrifugal pump, or by the difference in weight of hot and cold water (thermo-siphon).

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(2) In the air-cooled engine the cylinders are cooled by air circulated by a fan or by the motion of the vehicle. The cylinders have many small fins around them for the purpose of increasing the radiating surface.

Q. Should a water-cooled engine be run without water in the cooling system? *A.* No. It will cause the engine to run hot, and the metal will expand and cause the pistons and rings to seize the cylinder walls due to the burning of oil from the cylinder walls.

Q. Should cold water be put in a hot engine? *A.* No. It may cause the cylinders and cylinder head to crack.

108. Storage batteries.—*Q.* Describe the storage battery. *A.* The lead-acid cell is made of plates of lead and lead oxide immersed in an electrolyte of sulfuric acid and water. The usual or common assembly is to connect these cells in series, that is, with the positive post of one cell connected to the negative post of the next cell and so on to the end of the row. With the cells in series, the voltage of the battery is the sum of the voltage of the cells, the voltage of each lead-acid cell being nominally 2 volts. The actual voltage at any time, however, depends on the condition of the material of the plates.

Q. What should the specific gravity of a fully charged, a half-charged, and a fully discharged battery be? *A.* In normal temperatures they should be, respectively, 1.300, 1.250, and 1.130 or lower.

Q. At what temperature will, first, a fully charged, and second, a fully discharged battery freeze? *A.*

(1) Approximately 96° F. below zero.

(2) At about 32° F. above zero.

109. Generators.—*Q.* What is the purpose of the generator? *A.* To furnish a charging current for the storage battery, and furnish current for the lights, horn, and ignition when the engine is running.

Q. What is the purpose of the reverse current relay? *A.* It is an automatic electromagnetic switch connected in the battery-charging circuit between the generator and the storage battery. Its purpose is to prevent the current flowing from the battery to the generator when the battery voltage is the higher.

110. Power transmission and running gear.—*Q.* What is the purpose of the clutch? *A.* Its purpose is to connect or disconnect the engine from the transmission, so that the vehicle may or may not move while the engine is running; and also, to allow the engine to be disconnected while shifting gears. A gasoline engine cannot carry the load when starting but must be turning over at a certain speed. The clutch enables the load to be applied gradually after the engine is running.

Q. Explain the construction of the plate clutch. *A.* Advantage is

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

taken of the flywheel to form part of the housing and part of the driving mechanism of the clutch. The casing of the clutch is integral with the flywheel to which is directly attached the two asbestos friction rings. These friction rings are the driving rings, and are faced with a friction material. The clutch pressure plate contains a number of springs equally distributed on the friction rings which actuate the clutch pressure plate. The shaft which carries the polished steel disk, known as the driven member, is called the clutch shaft. This shaft is supported by a pilot bearing in the flywheel.

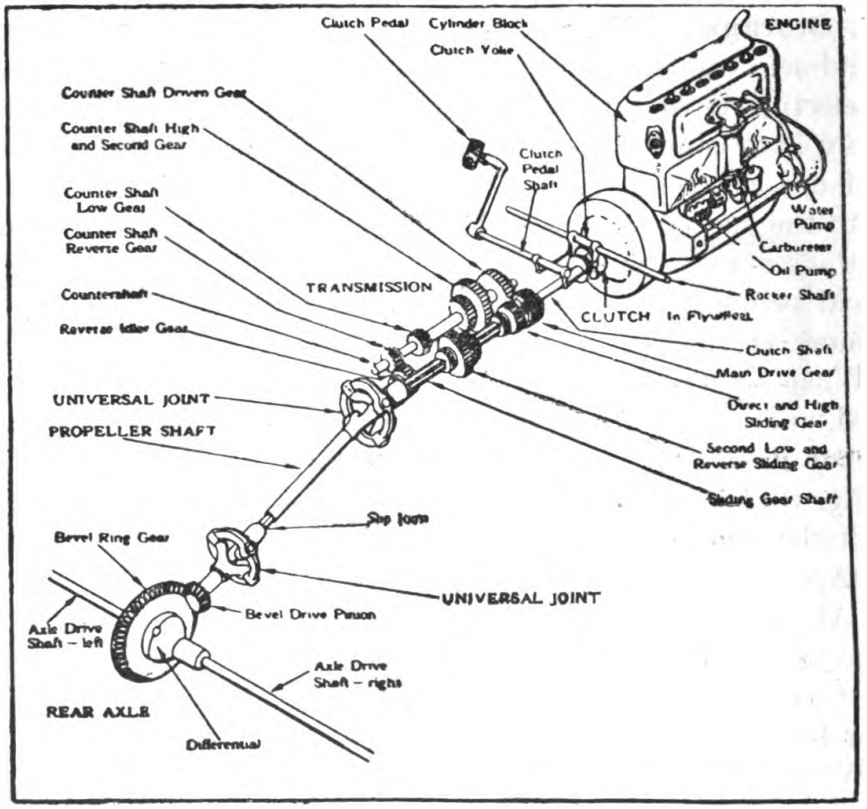


FIGURE 118.—Transmission of power.

Q. What is the purpose of the transmission? *A*. By means of various gears the speed ratio between the engine and the drive shaft can be varied to meet the variations of the load; the direction of the rotation of the drive shaft can be reversed; and all gears can be disengaged so that the engine may be run without operating the driving gear, though the clutch is engaged.

Q. Name the classes of transmissions. *A*. Transmissions are divided into three classes according to their construction and method of operation, and are known as the selective-sliding, synchro-mesh, and constant-mesh, while the motorcycle uses the progressive type. Most of

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

the military trucks have an auxiliary transmission in conjunction with the transmission to obtain a greater driving range.

Q. What is the principle of the synchro-mesh transmission? *A.* Small cone-type clutches are placed between the driving and driven gears for the direct and intermediate speeds. On shifting into either of these speeds, the clutch comes into action first. This brings the driving and driven gears to the same speed and they may then be meshed without clashing.

Q. Explain the auxiliary transmission. *A.* An auxiliary transmission, sometimes called a subtransmission, is used in direct conjunction with the transmission to obtain greater driving range, and is usually a two-speed transmission having an underdrive and a direct drive. The underdrive has a gear ratio of about 2 to 1, and is provided to give a low total reduction when operating in severe road conditions, or over uneven roads or grades with capacity loads. Direct drive is provided to be used when operating under ordinary road and load conditions and has a gear ratio of 1 to 1; that is, it has no effect on the normal transmission gear ratios.

Q. How is the transmission lubricated? *A.* By heavy oil contained in the transmission.

Q. How is the power transmitted to the rear axle? *A.* Through universal joints and a drive or propellor shaft. Four-wheel-drive trucks employ two drive shafts and require what is known as a transfer case for this purpose.

Q. What is a universal joint? *A.* It is a device for connecting two shafts which are slightly out of alinement, and to transmit power through these angles.

Q. What is a slip joint? *A.* A sliding or telescopic joint which is splined and permits variations in the length of the drive shaft. It is used to compensate for the variations in distance between transmission and rear axle due to the action of the springs.

Q. What is the purpose of the differential? *A.* It permits one axle shaft connected to it to rotate slower, faster, or remain stationary in reference to the other axle shaft. Such a device is necessary to compensate for the difference in speed of the rear wheels when going around curves.

Q. What are the principal types of differentials used? *A.* The bevel gear, spur gear, and worm gear differentials.

Q. Explain the principle embodied in the design of the bevel gear differential. *A.* The differential case is attached to and driven by the ring gear. Four small bevel gears are mounted inside the differential case on a spider, the latter being supported by the case. The four gears are in mesh with a bevel gear on each side to which

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

the axle is attached. On a straight road with equal traction the motion of the ring gear is transmited to the differential case; the spider gears remain stationary and cause the gears attached to the axle shafts to rotate in unison with the case. If one axle is retarded or stopped, as in rounding a curve, the gear attached to that axle moves slowly or is stationary; the differential case being in motion turns the spider. The spider gears roll on the gear attached to the retarded or stationary axle, while the gear attached to the other axle is rotated at a higher speed. If one wheel stops, the other one will turn twice as fast as it did before the other wheel stopped.

Q. How is the power transmitted to the ring gear? *A.* From the propellor shaft to a piston shaft to the pinion gear to the ring gear.

Q. Is the same principle included in the spur-gear differential? *A.* Yes, it differs from the bevel gear only in construction.

Q. Explain the double-reduction-drive differential. *A.* The only difference is that the first reduction is from the bevel-ring gear shaft to a small spur gear to a large spur gear connected to the differential case.

111. Axles, wheels, and tires.—*Q.* How many types of axles are in use? *A.* There are two general classes, the dead and live axles.

Q. To what stresses are the semi-floating, three-quarter, and full-floating types of live axles subject? *A.*

(1) The semi-floating axle is subject to the following stresses:

(*a*) Torsional stresses, due to the driving torque and braking torque.

(*b*) Bending stresses due to the weight resting on the axle.

(*c*) Bending stresses resulting from transverse loads on the wheels due to centrifugal force when turning corners at high speed.

(2) The three-quarter floating axle is subject to torsional stresses and bending stresses due to the load in the axle.

(3 The full-floating axle is subject to torsional stresses only.

Q. Wherein do the live and dead axles differ? *A.* The dead axle is stationary, while the live axle revolves and delivers power to the wheels.

Q. What type wheels are used on motor vehicles? *A.*

(1) The wood wheel with either wood or metal rims (artillery type).

(2) The wire wheel with metal hubs and rims and wire spokes.

(3) All-metal spoke wheel and all-metal disk wheels.

Q. What is the advantage of dual wheels? *A.* They give greater carrying capacity, longer tire life, and increased road contact with consequent better traction, while the tires can be smaller in diameter, giving a lower center of gravity to the vehicle.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

112. Brakes.—*Q.* What type brakes are used on motor vehicles? *A.* Ordinarily two separate brakes are mounted on a vehicle, a service or foot brake, and an emergency or hand brake.

Q. How are brakes operated? *A.* Mechanical, hydraulic, or air operated. A vacuum booster may be used to work in conjunction with the mechanical or hydraulic brake.

Q. What is the advantage of the vacuum booster brake? *A.* It lessens the brake pedal pressure necessary for brake application.

Q. Explain the operation of the vacuum booster. *A.* A power cylinder is mounted so that the piston in the cylinder can be connected to the brake pedal. The cylinder is connected to the intake manifold by means of a copper tube. When the brake pedal is pressed partly down, a valve is opened to the intake pipe; the suction from the intake manifold causes the piston to move and applies the brakes through the linkage to the brake pedal. When the brake pedal pressure is released, the inlet valve is closed, a valve to the atmosphere is opened, and a spring forces the piston back, releasing the brakes.

Q. What advantage is gained by mounting the brake on the transmission? *A.* The braking effect is transmitted through the differential drive shaft and axle shafts, increasing the braking power.

113. Steering gear.—*Q.* Describe briefly the construction of a typical steering gear. *A.* The steering wheel is keyed to a shaft supported by the steering column. The shaft terminates in a worm; the worm engages in a worm gear, the shaft of which carries the steering lever arm. The steering lever arm is connected by the drag-link to one of the steering knuckles. A tie rod connects the two steering knuckles.

Q. Explain the mounting of the front axle and wheels. *A.* The front axle is fastened to the frame by means of leaf springs, which are secured to the frame by shackles and shackle bolts. The axle is fastened to the springs by bolts. The wheels are mounted on spindles; the spindle is fastened to the end of the axle with a king-pin which allows the spindle to turn.

Q. Why are the steering arms curved toward the center of the vehicle instead of being straight? *A.* Because in turning a curve the path of the outside wheel is an arc of a larger circle than the path of the inner wheel. Therefore, the outside wheel must be inclined at a lesser angle than the inside wheel. The angularity of the steering arms provides for this difference in inclination of the wheel.

Q. What is meant by toe-in (gather) of the front wheels? *A.* It means the front wheels are so alined that the foremost edges are

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

closer together than the rear edges. Since cambered wheels, like segments of a cone, have a tendency to roll outward in a circle, gathering the wheels in at the front is necessary to compensate for this tendency.

Q. What is meant by caster? *A.* Caster is the angle of backward inclination between the steering knuckle bolts and the vertical, and its purpose is to stabilize steering.

Q. What is meant by camber? *A.* Camber is the outward tilt of the front wheels at the top and results in the wheels coming more nearly under the load. The purpose of camber is to support the greater part of the car weight on the inner wheel bearings, to reduce side thrust on the steering knuckle bolts, to compensate for looseness and wear in the steering knuckle and wheel bearings, and to bring the point of pivot near the road for center point steering.

Q. What is meant by irreversible steering gear? *A.* A steering gear in which turning motions can be transmitted to the steering knuckles by turning the steering wheel, but motions cannot be transmitted from the front wheels to the steering wheel.

Q. How is this accomplished? *A.* By the use of a worm in the steering gear. A worm is capable of turning a gear, but the motion cannot readily be transmitted from a gear to a worm.

Q. How is a caterpillar tractor steered? *A.* By steering clutches and brakes. The power is transmitted from the steering clutch shaft to the drive shafts through two clutches, one on each side. Each clutch housing is provided with a brake drum and an external brake band. By disengaging one of the steering clutches, no power is transmitted to the drive shaft on that side. By setting the brake on the same side, the sprocket wheel is prevented from turning. The movement of the sprocket and treads on the opposite side causes the tractor to turn sharply. The steering clutches are controlled by the steering lever. Each brake is controlled by a foot pedal.

SECTION IV

INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

	Paragraph
Power plant	114
Carburetion	115
Battery ignition	116
Magneto ignition	117
Battery	118
Clutch and transmission, wheels and brakes	119
Cooling system	120
Steering mechanisms	121
Governors	122

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

114. Power plant.—*Q.* How are the causes of engine troubles determined? *A.* Since nearly all of the operating parts of the engine are inclosed and inaccessible, the cause of engine trouble must usually be deduced by a system of elimination.

Q. How can engine troubles be classed? *A.* They can be classed as—

(1) Mechanical troubles.

(2) Fuel feed and carburetion troubles.

(3) Ignition troubles.

Q. What conditions are necessary for an engine to start? *A.* If the following conditions exist the engine should run:

(1) Engine turns freely without any indication of mechanical troubles and has compression.

(2) Gasoline reaches the cylinder, the cylinders being neither uncomfortably hot nor cold to the hand, the throttle being one-fourth open, and the intake clear and tight.

(3) There is a spark at the right time at the right place.

Q. In general, how are mechanical troubles remedied? *A.*

(1) By disassembling such parts of the engine as is necessary to get at the defective parts.

(2) By replacing broken or worn parts.

(3) By regrinding or replacing valves.

(4) By refitting or tightening loose bearings.

(5) By removing carbon.

Q. How should a bearing be refitted? *A.* So that it is in contact with the shaft at all points.

Q. What inspection should be made whenever an engine is disassembled? *A.* Inspect all parts for defects and make a list of all parts needed.

Q. Why is a small clearance left at the end of the valve stem? *A.* To allow for expansion and to insure that the valve is closed.

Q. What is the result if a valve does not close all the way? *A.* There is a loss of compression. If it is an exhaust valve, the seat will burn and warp, due to the hot escaping gases.

Q. What is meant by valve grinding? *A.* The grinding of the valve face and seat to a gastight fit, with valve-grinding compound.

Q. What is meant by a valve seat insert? *A.* A very hard steel ring inserted in the valve port to form the valve seat.

Q. Is it possible to reseat valve seat inserts? *A.* Only by the aid of special valve seat insert grinding stones.

Q. How often should they be reseated? *A.* About every 50,000 to 65,000 miles. In some cases, they last the life of the vehicle.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. How is the compression of an engine tested? *A.* Remove all spark plugs, open the throttle wide open, insert a compression gage in No. 1 cylinder and crank the engine either by hand or by battery about six revolutions. Take the reading of meter on a gage. If the reading is low, the compression is bad. Check each cylinder in the same manner. Compression in all cylinders should not vary more than 5 pounds. If no gage is available, leave all spark plugs in place. Crank the engine by hand. Each cylinder should have about the same resistance when cranked against compression. A cylinder with good compression will show a springy resistance and the engine can be rocked against compression.

Q. How much gap clearance should piston rings have? *A.* The top ring should have 0.003 of an inch per inch of piston diameter. The other rings should have 0.002 of an inch per inch of piston diameter.

Q. How are piston rings fitted? *A.* Place the rings in the cylinder, turn the piston upside down and push the ring down about 1 inch from the top of the cylinder. Check the gap with a feeler gage.

115. Carburetion.—*Q.* How is a carburetor adjusted? *A.* Start the engine and allow it to warm up. Retard the spark, close the throttle, and set the throttle-adjusting screw so the engine will idle. Adjust the idle-adjusting screw so that the engine runs smoothly without rolling or missing. Adjust the high-speed adjusting screw (if the carburetor has one) so that the engine, when suddenly accelerated, will spit back into the carburetor. It should spit back once and no more.

Q. Name the most frequent carburetor troubles. *A.* Strainers stopped up, jets stopped up, float too low or two high, and float punctured.

116. Battery ignition.—*Q.* Name the most frequent causes of ignition troubles in a battery ignition system. *A.*

(1) *Spark plugs.*—Dirty plugs, broken porcelain insulation, improper connections, and improper spark gap.

(2) *Cables.*—Defective insulation, not connected, connected to wrong spark plug or distributor contact, broken wire inside of insulation.

(3) *Breaker points.*—Do not close, do not open at proper time, do not open enough, points pitted, dirt between points.

(4) *Condenser.*—Short-circuited.

(5) *Battery.*—Run down, not connected, short-circuited or grounded.

Q. How is the ignition timed on the battery ignition system? *A.*

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

The piston of No. 1 cylinder is set at top dead center at the end of the compression stroke. The flywheel is usually marked to indicate this position by ignition timing marks, such as IGN 1–6 or D. C. The distributor housing clamping screw is loosened and the distributor cap is removed. The housing must be turned to where the rotor finger is in contact with No. 1 terminal and the breaker points are just beginning to open; the clamping screw should then be tightened.

117. Magneto ignition.—*Q.* Name the most frequent causes of ignition troubles in a magneto ignition system. *A.* Improper timing, short circuit, burnt armature, defective contact points or brushes, and weak magnets.

(1) *Coil.*—Short-circuited, broken insulation.

(2) *Distributor.*—Broken contacts or brushes, water or dirt in distributor, distributor (or rotor finger) removed or broken, distributor head cracked.

(3) *Switch.*—Open circuit, short circuit, improperly connected.

Q. How can the timing of the spark be regulated to vary with engine speed? *A.* By automatic spark control or by manual spark control.

Q. How are ignition troubles traced? *A.* By asking oneself the following questions and finding the answers: Test for a spark at the spark plug. If there is no spark, is the switch turned on? Is the battery all right? Are any wires disconnected or terminals corroded? Are wires connected correctly? Are any wires broken? Do the breaker points open and close properly? Is there a spark at the spark plug at the proper time? Are spark plug gaps of the proper width? Are porcelains and electrodes clean and unbroken? Is there too much gasoline in the cylinders so the spark plugs are fouled?

Q. If, when the breaker points open, there is an excessive spark or arc at the point of opening, what is the trouble? *A.* A disconnected or defective condenser.

118. Battery.—*Q.* When a new battery is received, what is the first thing to do? *A.* Unpack the battery, keeping the packing case right side up to avoid spilling the battery solution. Examine the battery carefully to see if there is any indication of injury during transit. Determine whether the battery has been shipped charged or unfilled.

Q. What care is necessary when installing a battery on a car? *A.* When connecting the battery to the battery cables, be sure they are connected properly and are tight, and the terminals are greased with vaseline or some lubrication grease.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. How can you determine whether the battery is connected properly? *A.* Look up the diagram in the service book, or turn the lights on and note the reading of the ammeter. If the engine is not running, the ammeter should indicate discharge if the battery is properly connected.

Q. What attention does the battery require in service? *A.* It requires very little attention but that little is absolutely necessary and vital. Add nothing but pure distilled water to replace that lost by evaporation. Do this often enough to keep the plates covered about ½ inch. In freezing weather do not add water until just before the battery is to be used or recharged. Keep the connections tight and covered with vaseline. Keep the filling plugs tight and battery dry, clean, and clamped down tightly in the carrier. Take hydrometer readings and check water every 2 weeks in the summer. If the vehicle is put in storage or for repairs, the battery should be removed, charged, and put into proper storage.

Q. How should corroded battery terminals be cleaned? *A.* By scrubbing thoroughly with ammonia, or a solution of baking soda and water.

Q. What should be the specific gravity of a fully charged, a half-charged, and a fully discharged battery? *A.* In normal temperatures they should be respectively: 1.300; 1.250; 1.130 or lower.

Q. At what temperature will, first, a fully charged, and second, a fully discharged battery freeze? *A.*

(1) Approximately 96° F. below zero.

(2) At about 32° F. above zero.

Q. Name some of the common lighting faults. *A.* Lamps in circuit will not burn because of—

(1) Lamps burned out.

(2) Blown fuse.

(3) Open circuit.

(4) Poor ground in single wire system.

(5) Battery discharged.

(6) Loose connections.

Q. What will cause the lights to burn out? *A.* Loose battery connection, reverse current relay points sticking, or lamp bulbs of the wrong voltage.

Q. If lights dim when engine is cranked with the electric starter, what is the trouble? *A.* Weak battery, or loose battery connections.

Q. If the generator does not charge the battery, what may be the trouble? *A.*

(1) Generator not building up, usually due to dirty commutator or worn brushes.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(2) Corroded or loose battery terminals.
(3) Defective battery.
(4) Ammeter burned out.
(5) Defective reverse current relay.

Q. If the batteries do not stay charged, what may be the fault? *A.*

(1) Charging rate too low.
(2) Ground in car wiring.
(3) Reverse current relay not operating properly.

Q. In case of trouble with the electric starter, what should be done? *A.*

(1) See that the battery is charged.
(2) See that there are no short circuits.
(3) See that the battery terminals are not loose, rusty, or corroded.
(4) Examine the starting switch for proper connections and operation.
(5) See that the brushes are properly seated on motor commutator.

119. Clutch and transmission, wheels and brakes.—*Q.* Name the most usual clutch troubles. *A.* Slipping, grabbing, and chattering.

Q. What are the causes? *A.*

(1) Slipping is usually caused by friction material of the disk being worn, the clutch springs failing to exert sufficient pressure, or from allowing the foot to rest on the clutch pedal while driving.
(2) Grabbing is caused by oil on the clutch plates, spring with too great a capacity, or faulty lining.
(3) Chattering is caused by the clutch shaft and driving members being out of alinement with the driven member.

Q. To what are most clutch troubles due? *A.* They are due to the clutch throw-out bearing becoming worn.

Q. Name the most usual transmission troubles and their causes. *A.*

(1) Difficulty in shifting gears, usually caused by broken parts, by oil which has become gummy, by insufficient or too much oil, or by the gear shift lever connections being out of order.
(2) Transmission gears stripped, caused by changing from a forward to a reverse gear when the vehicle is in motion.

Q. What troubles may develop in the drive? *A.* Broken drive shaft or universal joints. The drive shaft may break or be bent—

(1) By contact with road obstructions.
(2) By excessive differential gear clearance.
(3) By racing the engine and jerking the vehicle by suddenly applying the power to the axle shafts.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What are the usual causes of troubles which are experienced with wheel bearings? *A.* Improper adjustments and insufficient lubrication.

Q. How should wheel bearings be adjusted? *A.* The bearing adjusting nuts should be tight enough to prevent end play, but not so tight as to prevent the wheel from turning freely.

Q. What is the result of insufficient lubrication of the wheel bearings? *A.* Heat of the bearings, rapid wear, and breaking of the bearing balls or rollers.

Q. What troubles are experienced with brakes? *A.* Worn-out brake lining, unequal adjustment of the brake bands or shoes, scored drums, brake lining stripping from the shoes and rolling up at the ends, oil leaks in the lines, brakes, or master cylinders in the case of hydraulic brakes, unequal linkage and rod adjustments, and oil on brake lining.

Q. What precaution must be taken with brakes? *A.* Brakes must be tested and inspected frequently, worn lining must be replaced, and the brake bands kept in proper adjustment.

Q. How can the wear of the brakes be reduced? *A.* By using the engine to produce braking effect. In descending long, steep grades the vehicle should be run in second or low gear to help brake the vehicle.

Q. When does the greatest braking effect occur? *A.* Just before the wheels begin to slide.

Q. What troubles are experienced with the steering mechanism? *A.* Front wheels out of alinement, broken parts, and parts becoming worn and loose.

Q. What is the most common trouble? *A.* Wheels out of alinement, caused by wear, or by hitting curves or obstructions on rough roads and detours.

Q. What care should be taken of tires? *A.* Keep sufficient air pressure in them; keep rims tight; avoid running over glass or sharp stones as much as possible. Do not run on a flat tire. Never let a tire sit in oil or gasoline, as it will rot the rubber.

120. Cooling system.—*Q.* Should a water-cooled engine be run without water in the cooling system? Why? *A.* No, it will cause the engine to run hot, and the metal will expand and cause the pistons and rings to seize the cylinder walls due to the burning of oil from the cylinder walls.

Q. If the engine is overheated, how should water be added? *A.* The engine should be allowed to cool before water is added and then water should be added very slowly with the engine running.

Q. How should the radiator and water jackets be protected in cold

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

weather? *A.* A close check should be kept on the antifreeze solution. Unless sufficient antifreeze solution is used, the radiator and water jackets should be completely drained when the vehicle is not in use, and a "drained" sign should be hung on the radiator. Sometimes it will be necessary to protect the lower front half of the radiator with tin, cardboard, or canvas during operation.

121. Steering mechanisms.—*Q.* How are kingpins (steering knuckle pivots) generally set with respect to the plane of the wheel? *A.* They are generally set at an angle with the plane of the wheel. This angle is referred to as the kingpin (or pivot) inclination angle.

Q. What is the caster angle? *A.* It is the slight backward tilt of the front axle and the kingpins (or pivots), the top of the front axle having been rotated backward through that angle.

Q. What is camber? *A.* It is the angle (or distance) that the wheel leans outward at the top.

Q. Are the front wheels closer together at the rear of the wheels or at the front of the wheels? *A.* They are closer together at the front.

Q. What is this difference (or angle) called? *A.* It is called toe-in.

Q. How is it set? *A.* By means of the tie rod between the steering knuckles.

Q. What is this series of angles and adjustments called? *A.* Front wheel geometry.

Q. What should be the values of these angles for a particular vehicle? *A.* As specified by the manufacturer.

Q. What type of lubricant is required for steering gears? Why? *A.* A light, pressure-resistant lubricant is required because the slow sliding motion of the surfaces in contact tend to scrape off any film of lubricant and cause metal-to-metal contact.

Q. What is the usual method of lubricating the working parts? *A.* The inclosed oiltight steering gear housing is filled with steering gear lubricant so that the teeth and spirals are coated at all times.

122. Governors.—*Q.* What is the purpose of governors? *A.* To protect the vehicle engine and to insure economical, accident-free operation.

Q. How are governors tested? *A.* By giving the vehicle a road test.

Q. How much adjustment is possible with the common types of governor? *A.* Governors are designed to give speed adjustments over about a 10-mile-per-hour range. If wider adjustments are attempted, erratic operation may result because of broken springs, or cams in the governor.

Q. How are drivers prevented from tampering with the governor?

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

A. The governor is sealed. Frequent inspections are made to see that the governor has not been tampered with or that the governor has not been damaged.

SECTION V

SHOP PRACTICES AND SUPERVISION AND INSTRUCTION OF MECHANICS

Paragraph
Shop practices 123
Precautions as to fire in garages 124
Supervision and instruction of mechanics 125

123. Shop practices.—*Q.* What are some precautions to be taken in disassembling an automobile? *A.*

(1) Plan the quickest and easiest way to do the job.

(2) Drain oil, water, and gasoline.

(3) Plan to protect delicate parts and machined surfaces.

(4) Plan how to have gaskets from injury.

(5) Tag all electric wires.

(6) Look for any screws, bolts, or nuts which may allow any part to drop or otherwise be damaged before removing.

(7) Mark with a prick punch pieces which may be reassembled wrong.

(8) Provide containers for all parts.

(9) Secure proper tools and use them according to instructions.

(10) Inspect parts as taken down, so replacements can be secured promptly.

Q. How is a tight nut removed? *A.* Use as hard a direct pressure as can be applied safely with a wrench. Try jerking wrench first one way and then the other. Apply kerosene or penetrating oil, allowing time for it to soak in between the threads. If all of the above fail, split the nut with a cold chisel, backing it up with a heavy bar or hammer.

Q. Give, in brief, several points to be observed when engaged in overhauling. *A.* Every part removed must be replaced in exactly the same place occupied before overhaul. To do this, all parts should be either tagged or marked with a steel stencil so that they may be easily identified. Always use the proper tools.

Q. Mention some important things to avoid in the repair and maintenance of automotive vehicles. *A.*

(1) Do not use adjustable wrenches for hammers.

(2) Do not use screw drivers as cold chisels.

(3) Do not use pliers on nuts or bolt heads.

(4) Do not use Stillson wrenches on nuts or bolt heads.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(5) Do not attempt to loosen nuts with a hammer and cold chisel.

(6) Do not use screw drivers for prying.

(7) Do not use a wrench on a nut or bolt that it does not fit.

(8) Do not use a file without a handle.

(9) Do not strike polished parts of machinery with a steel hammer.

(10) Do not use a hammer on cast steel or iron.

(11) Do not use excessive force. If a part does not come off easily, investigate before using force.

(12) Do not use a hammer to separate parts which should be pulled or pressed apart.

(13) Do not neglect or mislay tools.

(14) Do not pound on the end of a shaft with a bare hammer. Use a babbit hammer or a piece of wood or brass over the end of the shaft.

(15) Do not smear oil or grease on seats or paint. Remove seats and cover fenders.

(16) Do not leave a vehicle standing in a pool of grease.

Q. How should oils and grease be kept and issued? Who should lubricate the vehicle? *A.* All lubricants should be issued by one man. Due to the specialized lubrication requirements of modern vehicles, it is considered the best practice to have the actual lubrication of vehicles performed by a trained man, rather than by the individual drivers.

Q. How are supplies, spare parts, and special tools kept and issued? *A.* Every repair shop, no matter how small, should have a stockroom with one man responsible for the issue of supplies and tools.

Q. How are open-end wrenches classed as to size? *A.* U. S. S. wrenches are numbered from 21 to 45 and the SAE type are marked as to size.

Q. Why are two systems necessary? *A.* Because of the two kinds of bolts; for example, a ½-inch U. S. S. nut is ⅞ inch on the outside while a ½-inch SAE nut is only three-quarters of an inch. SAE is the common type.

Q. What two kinds of threads are there on bolts? *A.* U. S. S. and SAE. They differ in the pitch or number of threads to the inch.

124. Precautions as to fire in garages.—*Q.* Name some of the precautions that should be taken to prevent fires in garages. *A.*

(1) No smoking should be allowed where there are gasoline fumes.

(2) Gasoline cleaning mixtures must not be used.

(3) Covered metal containers should be provided for discarded oily waste, and these containers should be emptied every day at closing time.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(4) Soiled overalls and fatigue clothes should be kept in metal lockers.

Q. What care should be taken when welding or repairing gasoline tanks? *A.* After the gasoline is drained off, the tank should be washed out several times and then live steam run through it to rid the tank of all liquid and vapor.

Q. What inspection should be made of portable light cords? *A.* They should be inspected for breaks and short circuits.

Q. Should gasoline be handled or used inside a building? *A.* Only when absolutely necessary, in which case the windows should be open.

Q. Should water be thrown on burning gasoline? *A.* No. It only spreads the fire.

Q. What means should be available to extinguish fires? *A.*

(1) Fire extinguishers should be hung in convenient places about the shop and tested frequently.

(2) Pails of sand should be provided.

Q. Should vehicles that are left in a garage be locked? *A.* No. They should be unlocked so they can be run out easily in case of fire. Keys should be in the vehicles or in some convenient nearby spot.

125. Supervision and instruction of mechanics.—*Q.* What texts are available for the basic training of mechanics? *A.* Technical Manuals of the 10-series.

Q. Where may the mechanic find instructions for performing jobs assigned to him? *A.* In the instruction manuals of the vehicles concerned.

Q. What briefly are the duties of the transportation sergeant in the supervision and instruction of mechanics? *A.*

(1) He assigns the mechanics to jobs according to their ability.

(2) He checks each job step by step.

(3) In case a mechanic gets into difficulty, he shows such mechanic how to do the job.

(4) He acts as the motor officer's executive.

SECTION VI

LOADS AND THEIR PROPER DISTRIBUTION

Paragraph
Loads and their proper distribution 126

126. Loads and their proper distribution.—*Q.* What information should be obtained at the time an order for transportation is taken? *A.* Orders should never be taken for transportation without learning the weight of the load it is desired to transport, the

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

points between which it is desired to transport it, and the nature of the load, in order that suitable vehicles may be furnished for the work.

Q. What are the duties of the convoy commander with respect to the cargo? *A.* Loading and unloading in the field will often require work under adverse conditions. Whatever the conditions are, it is the duty of the convoy commander to deliver the freight in the best possible condition, in the least possible time, with due regard to the condition of his command, and, when possible, to park the trucks so as to minimize the work of unloading and handling the cargoes.

Q. What is the effect of poor loading? *A.* A poorly loaded vehicle not only reduces the capacity of that truck, but endangers the safety of the entire convoy.

Q. What may be the effect of a swaying load? *A.* A poorly loaded truck with a swaying load is always in danger of overturning.

Q. Give some general rules for loading. *A.*

(1) Heavy goods should be placed at the bottom and near the rear of the truck and as close to the rear axle as possible.

(2) Loads should be distributed equally on both sides of the truck. Every load should be securely lashed and covered.

(3) Lumber should be loaded with heavy pieces on the bottom, grading up to lighter on top to a height of about twice the body; 2- by 4-inch uprights should be placed every 3 feet along the sides.

(4) Baled goods, sacks, and similar loads should be piled evenly over the body and, when they extend above the sides of the body, should be pyramided until there is a single row parallel to the body length.

(5) In mixed loads, common sense is the only rule that can be laid down.

(6) Never overload a vehicle.

Q. What precautions should be taken when loading ammunition? *A.*

(1) Do not load fuzes or detonators with explosives.

(2) Cover the iron strips of the truck body with wood or its equivalent.

(3) Cover the load with paulin to protect it from weather or possible sparks.

(4) Do not unload with engine running.

(5) Brace the load if the truck body is not full.

Q. What may result if a load is placed entirely on one side of a truck? *A.* Skidding into a ditch if roads are at all wet, or the breaking of a spring.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What may result if a load is placed entirely on the rear of the truck body? *A.* On dirt roads there are often bog holes in which the rear wheels will sink if load is entirely over rear axle or behind.

Q. How should a small but heavy object be loaded on a truck? *A.* Two pieces of timber about 4 by 4 inches should be placed on each side of the body running its entire length. Two other pieces of timber of the same size should be placed across the first two near the center of the truck body and near enough together to support the object to be loaded. This will give a well distributed load, the strain being divided among all the members.

Q. Where can the data giving the loading capacity of a truck be found? *A.* On a plate on the dash.

Q. What will be the result of overloading a truck? *A.* Excessive wear and strain on all parts, including the engine; springs will become weak and allow the load to rest on the axles.

Q. What equipment for lashing loads should be on each truck? *A.* Two 60-foot lengths of rope and the lash hooks or rings through which the lines are passed.

Q. How can the motor sergeant make a quick check on overloading? *A.* By noting the set of the springs.

Q. What determines the loads and distribution of loads for a motorized regiment in the field? *A.* The loading table which is based upon the Tables of Allowances of the regiment. Under such circumstances there will be no cargo space for items not on the Tables of Allowances.

SECTION VII

TRAINING OF DRIVERS

Paragraph
Procedure 127

127. Procedure.—*Q.* What, in general terms, determines the mobility and dependability of the motor vehicle fleet? *A.* The manner in which the individual drivers perform their duties.

Q. What should be the preliminary step to the training of drivers to operate motor vehicles? *A.* The preparation of a training schedule to include a systematic and progressive course of instruction.

Q. What relative time value should be given practical instruction and classroom work in your training schedule? *A.* Training schedules should include a maximum of practical instruction and a minimum of classroom work.

Q. What should be the qualifications of an individual selected for training as a motor vehicle driver? *A.* He should be dependable, alert, sober, steady, and ambitious, and should have good judgment

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

and mechanical sense. He should react quickly and properly in given test situations. He should be able to differentiate promptly between red, green, and amber lights.

Q. What is the principal object in the training of motor vehicle drivers? *A.* To turn out drivers who are capable of good performance under all reasonable operating conditions.

Q. What instruction should be given to cover subjects on organization and safety? *A.* Instruction regarding—

(1) Motor transport personnel and general duties.

(2) Organization of the motor park and the duties of the driver in connection therewith.

(3) Fire prevention and fire fighting to include precautions against fire, proper methods of fighting fire, location of fire-fighting equipment, and the method of reporting fire.

(4) Accident prevention, to include precautions against accidents, carbon monoxide poisoning, and whom to call to get assistance.

Q. What motor vehicle controls should be explained and demonstrated? *A.* Carburetor choke control, carburetor throttle control (to include accelerator), ignition switch, spark control, transmission gear shift lever, subtransmission gear shift lever, clutch pedal, steering wheel, and brakes (hand and foot).

Q. What procedure would you follow in this explanation and demonstration? *A.*

(1) Securely block up the motor vehicle with all wheels off the ground.

(2) Have the candidate familiarize himself with the location and manipulation of the clutch pedal, the transmission gear shift lever, the brake lever, and brake pedal.

(3) Start and warm up the engine.

(4) Demonstrate the operation of the accelerator; coordinated movements of the accelerator, clutch pedal, and transmission gear shift lever; gear shifting, to include reverse; operation of the brake controls; manipulation of the steering wheel; and the use of the engine as a brake.

(5) Upon completion of the demonstration, have the candidate assume the correct position in the driver's seat and practice manipulating the controls until he becomes reasonably proficient. Exercise careful supervision to insure correct performance.

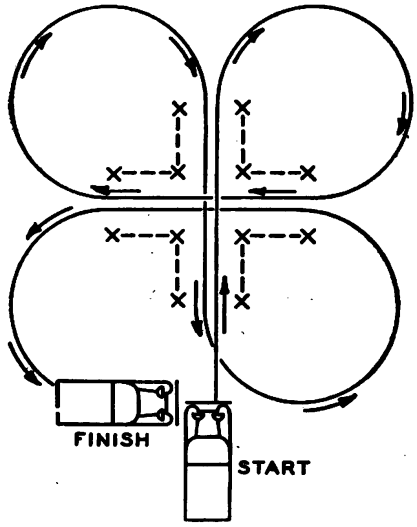
Q. Explain the correct position a driver should assume when in the driver's seat. *A.* He should sit erect, without stiffness, squarely behind the steering wheel; head erect, eyes looking to the front; hands on opposite sides of the steering wheel, on a horizontal line generally through the center of the wheel, grasping the steering wheel

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

rim firmly but without tenseness; both feet flat on the floor boards except when actually manipulating the accelerator, the clutch and brake pedals, or the starter switch.

Q. What aids to motor vehicle control should be explained and demonstrated? *A.* Light switches, horn button, rear-view mirror, windshield wiper, speedometer, and tachometer.

Q. What information should be given regarding the instrument-board gages? *A.* The purpose of each gage should be explained, its normal reading given, and the driver instructed as to what he should do when an abnormal reading is observed.



(The figure should be symmetrical, with the stakes placed to allow an over-all side clearance of approximately 18 inches.)

FIGURE 119.—Reverse turning course.

Q. Why is careful instruction and painstaking supervision necessary during the driving instruction period? *A.* To insure that the driver learns the correct performance of his duties and forms the proper habits.

Q. Name the subjects that should be covered during the driving instruction period. *A.* Gear shifting and use of clutch, use of transmissions, use of brakes, turning, backing, parking, starting engine under unusual operating conditions, signals, road rules and traffic regulations, chains and traction devices, marching, difficult and night driving, loads and loading, and map reading.

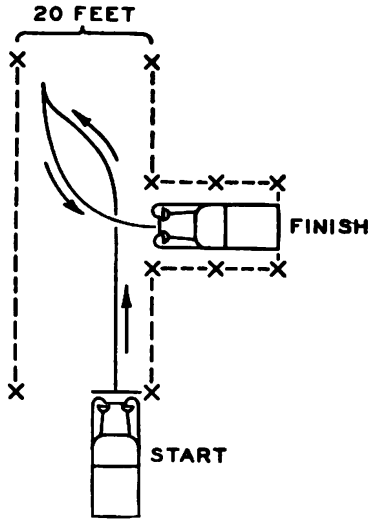
Q. How would you instruct a driver in gear shifting and use of clutch? *A.* Conduct the instruction on a large, open field where steering is of secondary importance. Explain procedure and demonstrate application. Permit the candidate to drive at will with the transmission in the lower gear ratios until he is reasonably familiar with

Digitized by Google
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

the operation and control of his vehicle. After he has become reasonably proficient in shifting from lower to higher gears, instruct him in the procedure of double clutching.

Q. How would you instruct drivers in turning, backing, and parking? *A.* By the use of stake driving courses. (See figs. 119, 120, and 121.)

Q. In what kinds of preventive maintenance would you instruct the drivers? *A.* Inspection, lubrication, tightening, servicing, cleaning of motor vehicles, the avoidance of vehicle abuse, and the performance of emergency adjustments and repairs.



(The figure should be symmetrical, with the stakes placed to allow an over-all side clearance of approximately 18 inches.)

FIGURE 120.—Backing course.

Q. In what routine inspections should the driver be instructed? *A.* Inspection before operation, both before starting engine and after starting engine; inspection during operation; inspection at the halt; and inspection after operation.

Q. What forms of vehicle abuse should be the subject of special instruction? *A.* Improper use of controls, particularly gear shift, clutch, brakes, and choke; racing engine, especially when cold; overspeeding, particularly over rough roads and across country; improper lubrication; deferred maintenance, including lack of proper servicing and adjustments; lack of systematic inspection and follow-up; overloading and improper loading.

Q. Name the driver's reports which are generally applicable to all arms and services operating and maintaining motor vehicles, the preparation and use of which would be covered in your instruction. *A.* Driver's Report—Accident, Motor Transportation (Standard

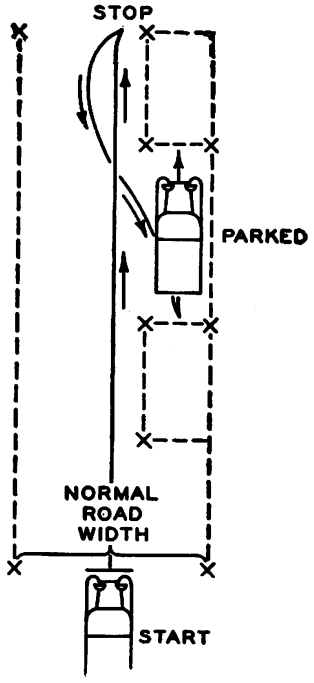
Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Form No. 26); Driver's Trip Ticket and Performance Record (W. D., Q. M. C. Form No. 237).

Q. To whom will motor vehicle operators' permits be issued? *A.* Only to individuals who have satisfactorily passed an examination conducted by a qualified commissioned officer.

Q. What subjects does this examination cover. *A.*

(1) *Mechanical.*—Nomenclature and functions of major units of the motor vehicle.



(Stakes should be placed so that when parked the vehicle will have an over-all longitudinal clearance of approximately 10 feet and a lateral clearance of approximately 3 feet.)

FIGURE 121.—Parking course.

(2) *Operation.*—Actual driving of the vehicle, involving use of controls, reversing, and parking under usual conditions of traffic and terrain; traffic regulations, road procedure, safety precautions, speed limits, and vehicle abuse.

(3) *Maintenance.*—First echelon (vehicle operator's) maintenance.

Q. What should the possession of a motor vehicle operator's permit guarantee? *A.* That the individual is a safe driver.

SECTION VIII

RECORDS AND REPORTS

Paragraph
Records and reports 128

128. Records and reports.—*Q.* Where may a descriptive list of records and reports pertaining to motor transportation be found? *A.* In AR 850–15, FM 25–10, and Circular 1–10, OQMG.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What is the purpose of the records and reports required for motor transportation? *A.*

(1) They protect driver, the Government, and the claimant in case of an accident.

(2) They insure that Government transportation is being used to the best interests of the Government.

(3) They aid the maintenance personnel in maintaining the motor transportation.

Q. List the forms that are used in connection with motor transportation. *A.*

(1) *Forms carried by driver.*

	Authority	Form No.
Driver's Report—Accident, Motor Transportation.	AR 850–15	Standard Form No. 26.
U. S. Army Motor Vehicle Operator's Permit.	AR 850–15	W. D., Q. M. C. Form No. 228.
Driver's Trip Ticket and Performance Record.	AR 850–15	W. D., Q. M. C. Form No. 237.

(2) *Forms required in second echelon.*

	Authority	Form No.
Investigating Officer's Report—Accident, Motor Transportation.	AR 850–15	Standard Form No. 27.
Delivery Order and Receipt (gasoline and lubricant issue slip).	AR 35–6560	W. D., Q. M. C. Form No. 437.
Motor Vehicle Service Record	AR 850–15	W. D., Q. M. C. Form No. 248.
Daily Dispatching Record of Motor Vehicles.	AR 850–15	W. D., Q. M. C. Form No. 254.
Motor Vehicle Technical Inspection Report.	AR 850–15	W. D., Q. M. C. Form No. 260.
Ordnance Motor Book	AR 850–15	W. D., O. O. Form No. 5956.
Lubrication, Work Order, and Bad Order Report Forms.	AR 850–15	Improvised.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(3) *Forms required by regimental supply officer or regimental motor officer.*

	Authority	Form No.
Data for U. S. Registration Number.	AR 850–15	W. D., Q. M. C. Form No. 220.
Motor Vehicle Transfer Form	AR 850–15	W. D., Q. M. C. Form No. 221.
Annual Physical Inventory Report of Motor Vehicles.	AR 850–15	W. D., Q. M. C. Form No. 252.
Annual Report of Motor Vehicle Changes of Accountability.	AR 850–15	W. D., Q. M. C. Form No. 253.
Abstract of Issues of Fuel, Forage, Gasoline and Oils, and Operating Supplies (daily and monthly).	AR 35–6560	W. D., Q. M. C. Form Nos. 438 and 440.
Forms pertaining to the receipt, shipment, and issue of property.	AR 35–6560	

Q. In case of an accident what forms must be made out by the driver? *A.* The accident report must be made out immediately at the scene of the accident.

Q. What should be the guiding factor in making out the reports required in case of an accident? *A.* They should be so clear that there is no doubt in the mind of any reviewing authority as to how the accident occurred. Charts, pictures, affidavits, and receipted bills are used to make the reports clear.

Q. In case a claimant inquires for forms to make a claim as the result of an accident, what do you do? *A.* Refer the claimant to the post adjutant who will furnish him the proper forms. It is contrary to regulations to furnish these forms or information concerning them except through official channels.

Q. Where can you find instructions as to how these forms are prepared and handled? *A.* Instructions for the preparation of a particular form are usually contained on the form itself. In addition, Army Regulations contain a complete description, the Army Regulations applying to a particular form usually being listed on that form.

Q. How are tools issued and accounted for? *A.* On memorandum receipt. But since the regular memorandum receipt form is too small and unsuited for this use, it is found more advantageous to use an improvised form for this purpose.

Q. How is replacement of parts secured? *A.* By means of requisition upon a higher echelon.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. Where can data be found as to the records needed to obtain and salvage supplies and equipment? *A*. In TM 10–310.

Q. What entries are made in the Motor Vehicle Service Record Book? *A*. The annual vehicle mileage and a record of assignments, repairs, accidents, and inspections. The service record book is designed to function also as a condensed instruction manual.

Q. What is the purpose of the form for routine scheduled lubrication? *A*. To insure that the vehicle is properly lubricated and that no parts are over-lubricated.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 16

COMMUNICATION

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	Systems of communication	129–132
II.	Installation and operation of message centers; encoding and decoding	133–134
III.	Installation of field telephone system	135–137
IV.	Visual signaling—panels	138
V.	Location of faults; tests for grounds and short circuits	139
VI.	Instruction of linemen and telephone and switchboard operators	140

SECTION I

SYSTEMS OF COMMUNICATION

	Paragraph
General	129
Telephones	130
Switchboards	131
Circuits	132

129. General.—*Q.* Name several of the means of communication commonly used by mobile artillery. *A.* Telephone; radio; visual signals including wigwag, semaphore, and panels; motorcyclists, orderlies, and runners.

Q. Which of the above means of communication is most suitable for fire control? *A.* The telephone. The other systems are supplementary and may be used in emergency.

Q. What two types of telephone systems are used? *A.* Common battery and local battery systems.

Q. What feature distinguishes the local battery telephone system from the common battery telephone system? *A.* In a local battery system batteries are connected locally to each telephone used. In a common battery system all telephones are energized by a storage battery at a central station.

Q. Which system is generally used in—

(1) Fixed seacoast artillery installations?

(2) Mobile seacoast artillery units?

(3) Antiaircraft artillery units?

A. The following systems are used:

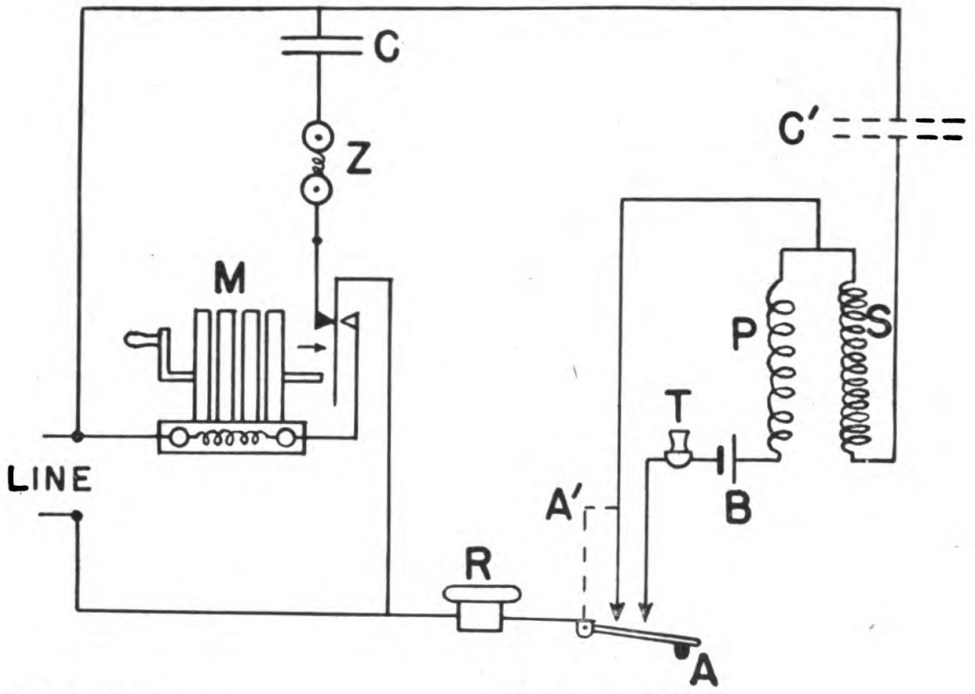
(1) Fixed installations generally use the common battery system.

(2) Mobile seacoast artillery units generally use the local battery system.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(3) Antiaircraft artillery units generally use the local battery sytem.

Q. Can the same type of telephone be used on local and common battery circuits? *A.* The internal circuits of common battery telephones differ from the circuits of the local battery type. Several types of local battery telephones can be connected to a common battery system, but it is necessary to use a local battery for each telephone so connected.



A. Push button.
A′. Jumper in handset of new type.
B. Local battery.
C. Condenser.
C′. Position of condenser in new type.
M. Magneto.
P. Primary coil.
R. Receiver.
S. Secondary coil.
T. Transmitter.
Z. Buzzer (substituted for bell or ringer).

FIGURE 122.—Simplified circuit of EE–5 telephone.

Q. Can the EE–5 telephone be used on a common battery system? *A.* Only the unmodified EE–5 telephone can be used on a common battery system. The modified EE–5 telephone requires the use of a condenser in series with the line in order to prevent direct current flow through the ringing circuit.

Q. Explain why a local battery is necessary when a local battery telephone is used on a common battery circuit. *A.* The local battery is necessary to energize the primary circuit, including the transmitter.

130. Telephones.—*Q.* Name the principal circuits of the telephone. *A.* The primary circuit, consisting of the battery, transmitter, and primary winding of the induction coil; the secondary circuit, con-

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

sisting of the secondary winding of the induction coil, the receiver, and the receiver condenser; and the ringing circuit, consisting of the magneto and ringer or buzzer.

Q. How are the magneto and buzzer connected? *A.* The circuits of both are bridged in parallel across the line. The magneto switch is so connected, however, that either the magneto or the buzzer will be connected at one time; both cannot be connected across the line at the same time.

Q. Is the current generated by the magneto transmitted through the receiver and transmitter? *A.* No. A button switch on the unmodified EE–5 telephone disconnects both receiver and transmitter from the magneto circuit. On the modified EE–5 and the EE–8 or

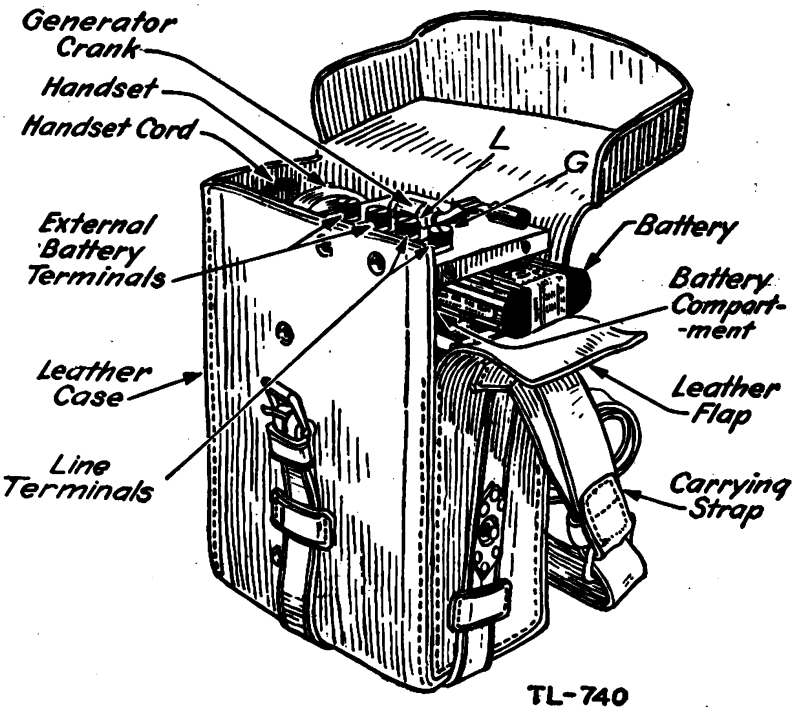


FIGURE 123.—Field telephone EE–5.

EE–8A, the handset switch disconnects the transmitter only, but the receiver condenser offers such high impedence to the low-frequency ringing current that in effect very little ringing current passes through the receiver.

Q. What type transmitter and receiver is used with the type EE–5 telephone? *A.* Handset type TS–7.

Q. Is the type TS–7 handset suitable for all conditions of service? *A.* No. For operation against naval targets when constant and prolonged telephone connections are necessary, the headset, type EE–70 should be used. However, this is to be considered exceptional, as the use of this headset necessitates internal connection to the telephone.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What is the distinguishing feature of the EE–8 telephone compared to other local battery telephones? *A.* The EE–8 telephone is an anti-side-tone telephone, in which an auxiliary receiver circuit partially suppresses side-tone in the receiver while the operator is using the transmitter.

Q. Can the EE–8 telephone be used on common battery systems? *A.* Yes. The EE–8 telephone may be used on common battery systems by simply changing the position of the "LB–CB" switch. Turning this switch to the "CB" position connects a holding coil in such a manner that lifting the handset from the lever switch will connect the holding coil across the line and thus signal the switchboard operator. The local battery must still be used for excitation of the transmitter circuit.

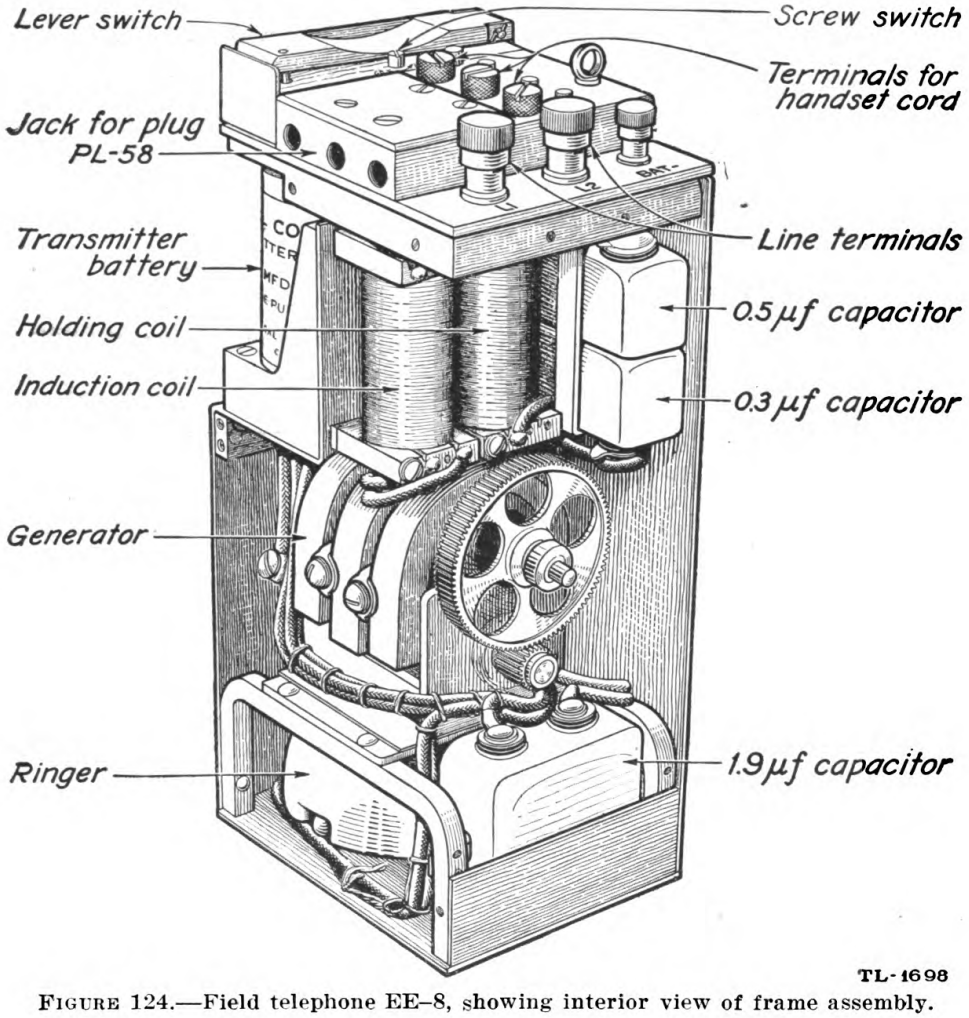


FIGURE 124.—Field telephone EE–8, showing interior view of frame assembly.

Q. What are the two principal advantages of the anti-side-tone feature of the EE–8 telephone? *A.*

(1) When no side tone is heard, the operator will speak louder.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(2) If no current flows through the receiver, there will be no loss in the receiver and more power will be available for operating the other telephone.

Q. How does the EE–8 telephone differ from the EE–8A? *A.* In the EE–8A telephone the small, flexible insert in the cover is omitted, and the three condensers are contained in a single case instead of being in three separate cases, as in the EE–8.

Q. Is it permissible to use a battery of more than 3 volts in the EE–8 telephone? *A.* This is never permissible, as any source of power of more than 3 volts will almost certainly damage the transmitter.

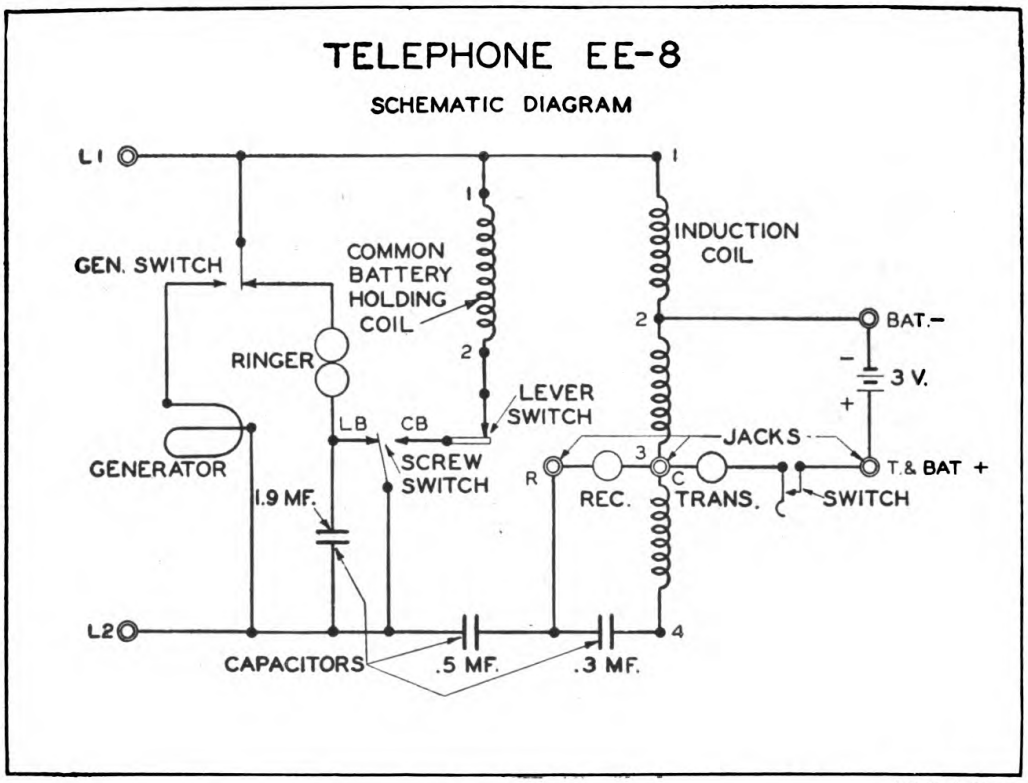


FIGURE 125.—Schematic diagram of EE–8 telephone.

Q. Is it necessary to hold the diaphragm of the transmitter in a vertical plane? *A.* No. The transmitter in the EE–8 telephone has been so improved over older transmitters that it will operate equally well in all positions.

Q. What will happen if the "LB–CB" switch is turned to "CB" and the generator operated with the lever switch up? *A.* The called ringer will not operate properly, due to the fact that a considerable part of the generator current will flow through the holding coil on the calling telephone.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. Where may detailed information on the EE–8 telephone be obtained? *A.* TM 11–333.

131. Switchboards.—*Q.* What type switchboard is used with the battalion and battery telephone system? *A.* Monocord switchboards are normally used. There are 4 types available: BD–9, a 4-drop monocord switchboard without operator's set or night alarm; BD–11, a 12-drop monocord switchboard without operator's set or night alarm; BD–71, a 6-drop monocord switchboard with operator's set, night alarm, and 2 repeating coils; and the BD–72, a 12-drop monocord switchboard with operator's set, night alarm, and 4 repeating coils.

Q. Name the principal parts of the switchboard, type BD–9. *A.* The switchboard frame; the three brass bars; seven binding clips, three on top and four on the bottom of the frame; and the switchboard units.

Q. What is the purpose of the binding clips? *A.* The three upper ones, marked A, A–1, and G, are used to connect the night bell and the ground. Of the four lower ones marked B, B–1, L–1, and L–2, B and B–1 are used to connect the night bell battery, and L–1 and L–2 are connected to the operator's telephone set and plug. By connecting L–1 and L–2 of one switchboard to L–1 and L–2 of another, two switchboards may be used together as one.

Q. What is the purpose of the brass bars? *A.* In addition to providing a mechanical support for the units, the top bars serve as a good ground connection, the center bar as night bell connection, and the bottom bar as battery connection for all units.

Q. Name the principal parts of a type EE–2 switchboard unit. *A.* Mounting screws, line terminals, lightning arresters, fuses, line signal shutter and electromagnet, night bell contact and spring, and jack and line plug.

Q. Explain the operation of a lightning arrester. *A.* It consists of a toothed washer held between the line binding posts by the upper mounting screw and ground through the upper brass bar. If lightning comes in over one of the line wires, the main portion jumps the gap between the binding post and washer and thence to the ground. If the small portion flowing through the switchboard units is at all heavy the fuses burn out, opening the circuit.

Q. Describe the fuses. *A.* Each unit is provided with two glass-inclosed fuses, which fit into spring contacts to protect each side of the line from excessive currents. The panel is painted white behind the fuses so that a burnt fuse, usually smoked up, can be readily noticed.

Q. Explain briefly the operation and construction of the signal shutter and coils. *A.* The shutter, or drop signal, is normally held

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

in a vertical position by a brass trip latch. The trip latch is attached to the armature of a small electromagnet. The coils of the magnet are connected through the jack to the line. The current from the calling station energizes the electromagnet. The latter attracts and

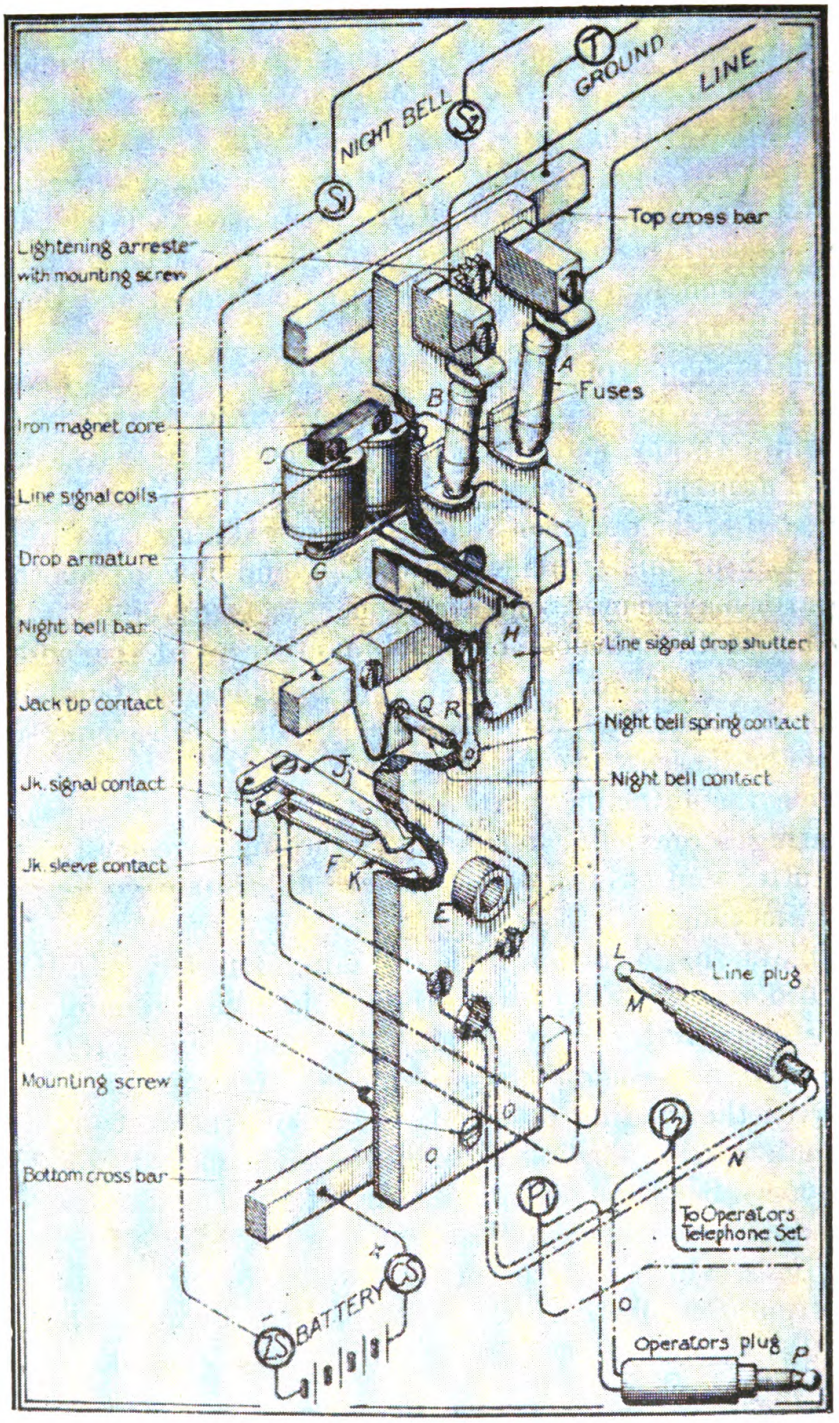


FIGURE 126.—Diagram of monocord switchboard unit.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

lifts the armature and trip latch. The shutter drops, by its own weight, to a horizontal position.

Q. Explain the operation of the night bell contact. *A.* When the signal shutter drops, the night bell spring and contact are brought together, completing a circuit from a battery to the lower brass bar, through the night bell spring and contacts to the center bar, thence to the night bell. The bell continues to ring until the shutter is raised or battery disconnected.

Q. Describe briefly the switchboard jack and plug. *A.* The jack consists of a cylindrical opening in the panel of the unit, behind which are mounted the tip contact, the sleeve contact, and the signal contact. The tip contact is connected through one of the fuses to one side of the line, the signal contact to the other through the magnet coils and the other fuse. The plug is cylindrical, having two contacts, one on the tip through the center of the plug and the other on a sleeve on the outside of the plug. These contacts are connected by two wires, inclosed in a single covering, to the tip and sleeve contacts of the jack, respectively.

Q. How do the plug and jack operate? *A.* When the plug of a unit is inserted in the jack of a second unit, the line of the first unit is connected to the line of the second unit. This completes the circuit between the two lines. In addition, the operator may plug into the unit having a vacant jack and listen in. When the plug is inserted the tip and signal contacts are separated. This opens the circuit to the coils of the shutter magnet.

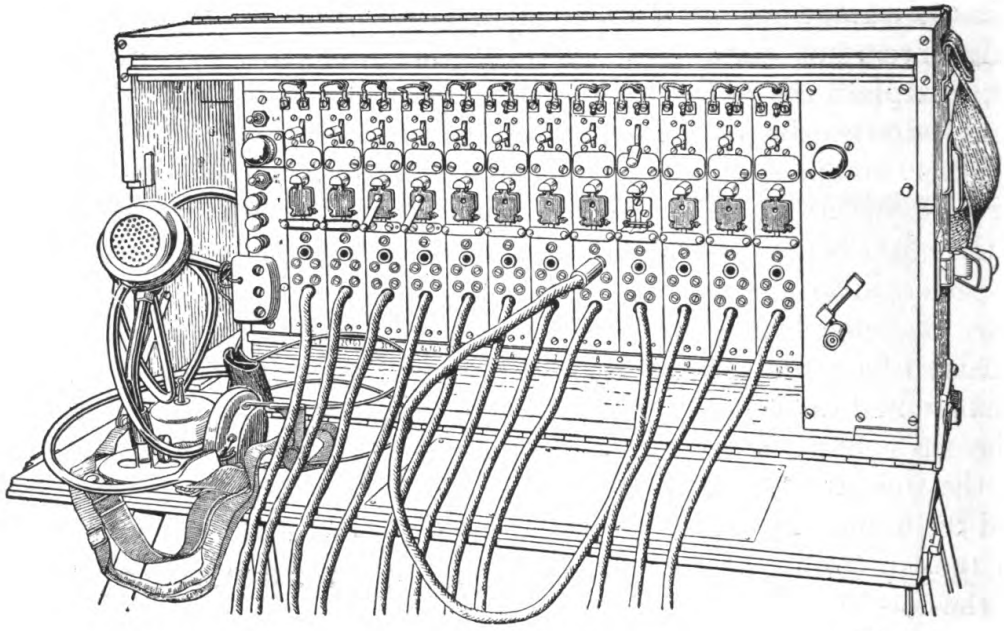
Q. What care is required in transporting, installing, and using the switchboard? *A.* In transporting and installing the board all shutters are held closed by the spring lever provided on each unit. When the switchboard is installed, it is necessary that the frame be held in a vertical and level position. In handling switchboard cords, they should be grasped by the plug and not by the cord, in order to prevent breaking the cord.

Q. What is the cause of a short circuit between lightning arrester and line? *A.* Particles of dirt. The small clearance between the arrester and line contacts must be kept clean.

Q. Should the night bell continue to ring after the shutter is raised, how is the trouble remedied? *A.* By adjusting the night bell contact spring so that a small space is left between it and the contact point.

Q. Should the signal shutter fail to drop when the magnet is energized, what remedy is applied? *A.* By removing the unit, the armature and trip catch may be adjusted so that the catch is clear of the shutter when the armature is raised; also be sure the face of the board is vertical.

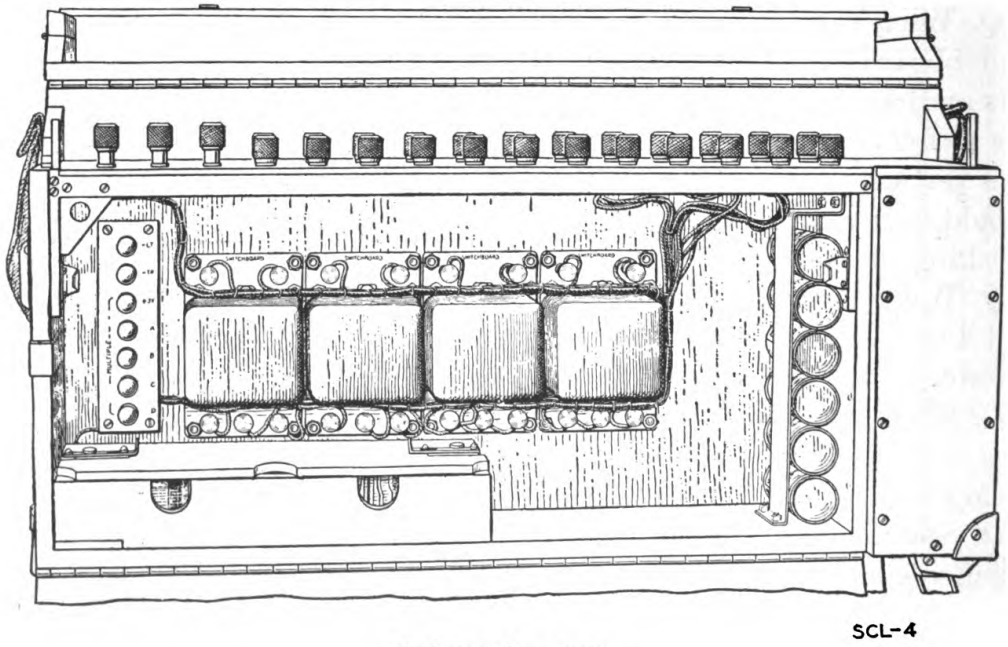
Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



① Front view, open.

Q. What should be done if an open circuit develops in one of the shutter coils? *A*. The switchboard unit should be replaced.

Q. What remedy is applied when the plug fails to make proper connections? *A*. The tip and sleeve contacts on the jack are cleaned and adjusted so that they come into firm contact with the plug when inserted.



② Rear view, open.

FIGURE 127.—Switchboard BD–72, showing front and rear views.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. How may a switchboard cord be tested to insure that the wires are in operating condition? *A.* Insert the plug of the operator's unit in the jack of the unit to be tested. Ring the operator's set, while

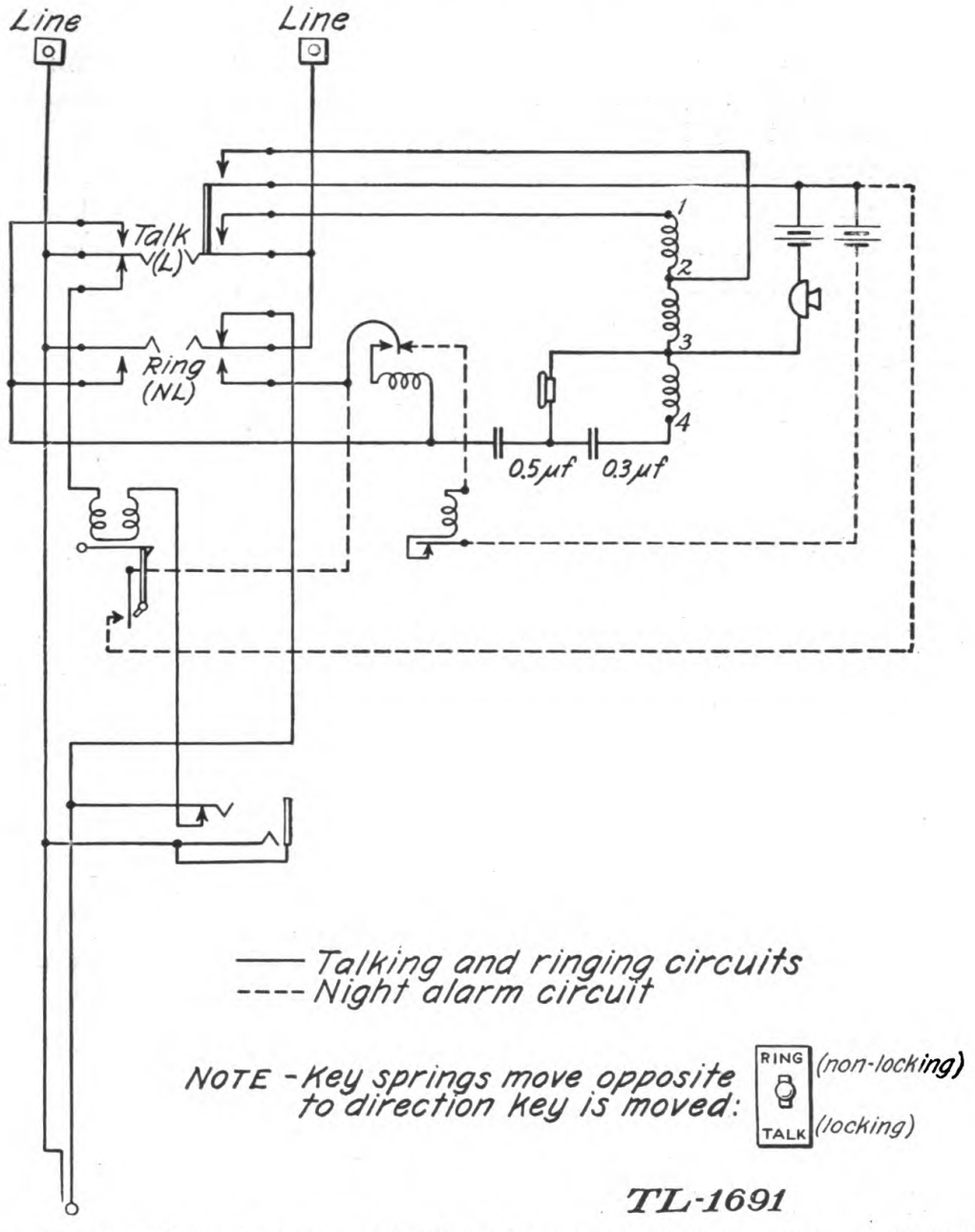


FIGURE 128.—Schematic diagram, EE–2B switchboard unit, with operator's set and night alarm circuits added.

holding the tip and sleeve of the cord jack. If the cord is good, the current will be felt by the fingers. If no current is felt, the cord may be open, in which case the magneto crank will turn easily, or it may be shorted, in which case the crank will be hard to turn.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. Should the operator's cord be found defective, how can operation of the board be continued? *A.* By three different methods, as follows:

(1) Transfer the wires from L–1 and L–2 to the line terminals of a unit not in use, and use the cord of that unit as the operator's cord while the latter is being replaced.

(2) Connect the terminals of an extra unit directly to the terminal of the operator's set, and use this as a master cord while replacing the defective one.

(3) If an extra plug is available but no extra cord, and there are no spare units on the board, remove the paper sleeve from the handle of the plug and transfer the wires from L–1 and L–2 to the terminals of this plug. This plug can then be used as a master plug until repairs are made.

Q. How is the operator's cord replaced? *A.* The cord connections are made accessible by removing two units to the right of the point where the cord goes up through the bottom of the board. The new cord is run up through the bottom of the board and connected. The two units are then replaced.

Q. What extra parts should be kept available at all times? *A.* Several extra fuses, extra cords with plugs, extra complete units, and some light, twisted repair wire. In addition, a lineman's repair kit should be available.

Q. What kind of telephone is used as an operator's set? *A.* Any local battery telephone is suitable for use as an operator's set.

Q. How does the EE–2B switchboard unit differ from the EE–2 switchboard unit? *A.* In the EE–2B switchboard unit, the fuses are omitted and a "Talk-Ring" switch substituted. With the "Talk-Ring" switch, it is possible for the switchboard operator to talk to or ring any telephone connected to the switchboard.

Q. How many dry cells are required for operation of the BD–71 and BD–72 switchboards? *A.* Six type BA–30 cells are required; two in the operator's telephone circuit, and four in the night alarm and auxiliary lighting circuit. In an emergency, two cells may be omitted in the night alarm and lighting circuit.

Q. What are the principal circuits of the BD–71 and BD–72 switchboards? *A.*

(1) Switchboard unit circuits (6 in the BD–71 and 12 in the BD–72).

(2) Operator's telephone circuit.

(3) Night alarm and lighting circuit.

Q. What additional equipment is furnished with these switchboards? *A.* Two repeating coils in the BD–71 switchboard and four in the BD–72 switchboard, plus a terminal strip for incoming tele-

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

phone lines, and a terminal strip for paralleling two switchboards.

Q. Should the operator bridge his telephone across two lines which are in use in order to assist in the transmission of information? *A.* No. The additional loss caused by the operator's telephone may make conversation impossible between the two parties connected through the switchboard. The operator should keep his telephone connected only long enough to supervise the connection.

Q. If two separate conversations are taking place through a BD–71 or BD–72 switchboard, what will happen if the operator depresses the "Talk-Ring" switches on two of the switchboard units, one of which is being used in one conversation and the other of which is being used in the second conversation? *A.* All four telephones will be connected to the switchboard operator's telephone and to each other, causing cross talk.

Q. Where may detailed information be obtained covering the BD–71 and BD–72 switchboards? *A.* Detailed information may be obtained in TM 11–330.

Q. Describe the operation of replacing a switchboard unit. *A.* The two line connections on the line terminals at the top of the unit are first disconnected. The two fillister-head screws are then removed, one at the top of the switchboard panel and the other at the bottom of the panel. The unit is removed carefully, and when it is clear of the frame the two connections to the bus bars are unscrewed and the unit withdrawn. To replace, reverse the above operations, being careful to make the bus connections exactly the same as on the other units. In both the above operations, care must be taken to protect the shutter drop. It should be locked in the closed position by means of the small locking lever.

Q. What is the use of the repeating coils? *A.* The repeating coils may be used in simplex circuits for telegraphy, or in phantom circuits for telephony. One repeating coil is required on each switchboard for each telegraph circuit with ground return, and two repeating coils are required on each board for a telephone phantom circuit.

Q. With the repeating coils used in a phantom circuit, is it possible to signal the switchboard from one of the telephones connected to the phantom portion of the circuit? *A.* No, because there will be no complete circuit through one of the switchboard shutter magnets.

Q. In case the operator's telephone becomes inoperative, what may be done to permit the use of the switchboard? *A.* An ordinary local battery field telephone may be used by connecting the spare switchboard cord to the line terminals of the telephone and either using the handset of the field telephone or the headset of the switchboard telephone. In this system the switchboard is used in a manner similar

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

to the BD–9 switchboard, and the "Talk-Ring" switches are not used. If a spare switchboard cord is not available, the field telephone may be connected to the line terminals of one of the switchboard units, and the cord of the unit so connected used as the operator's cord.

Q. What will happen if a lightning stroke hits a line connected to the BD–71 or BD–72 switchboard? *A.* Most of the energy of the lightning stroke will pass to ground over the lightning arrester gap from each line terminal to the ground strip in the switchboard.

132. Circuits.—*Q.* What is meant by ground return? *A.* When a single-wire line is used, the other terminal of the telephone is connected to a rod or other metallic substance set or buried in the ground or in a tree, thereby using the earth as a conductor for the return circuit.

Q. Why are ground returns seldom used? *A.* Because of interference due to earth currents, cross talk, and the possibility of the enemy "listening in" on such a system.

Q. Describe briefly a phantom circuit. *A.* A phantom circuit utilizes the two line wires connected to the line side of a repeating coil as one conductor of the phantom circuit, and the two lines similarly connected to another repeating coil as the other conductor. The connections from the phantom circuit are made to the center of the line side of the repeating coils. By use of this connection, no currents will be induced in the primaries of the repeating coils, and conversation may be carried on over the phantom circuit without disturbing or interfering with conversations over the normal, or side, circuits.

Q. Describe briefly a simplex circuit. *A.* A simplex circuit utilizes the two line wires connected to the line side of a repeating coil as one conductor of the simplex circuit. The return line is usually through the ground. The connection to the repeating coils is made to the center of the line side of the repeating-coil winding. By use of this connection, no currents will be induced in the primaries of the repeating coils due to telegraphic impulses in the secondaries, so that there will be no interference with conversation in the normal, or side circuit, due to telegraphic impulses in the simplex circuit.

Section II

INSTALLATION AND OPERATION OF MESSAGE CENTERS; ENCODING AND DECODING

Paragraph
Message centers 133
Encoding and decoding 134

133. Message centers.—*Q.* What is the purpose of a message center? *A.* To receive, transmit, or deliver all messages except the following:

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(1) Messages transmitted directly from the originator to addressee by telephone or messenger.

(2) Messages handled by postal service.

(3) Messages passing directly from the originator to a signal communication agency (such as a radio station) for immediate transmission, in cases authorized by the commander.

Q. Where is the message center located? *A.* At or near the command post of the unit it serves.

Q. What signal agencies are available to a message center? *A.* All established agencies; radio, telephone, messenger, and visual agencies are usually established.

Q. With respect to priority, how are messages classified? *A.*

(1) Urgent messages (O).

(2) Priority messages (P).

(3) Routine messages (no symbol).

Q. What is an urgent message? *A.* One where delay may result in unnecessary casualties or serious tactical disadvantages. This type of message is sent immediately upon receipt.

Q. What is a priority message? *A.* One of such importance or urgency that it is given precedence over routine messages.

Q. What is a routine message? *A.* One which requires no priority. Such messages are generally sent in the order in which filed.

Q. Who designates the means to be used for transmitting any message? *A.* The message center chief selects the most suitable means available for the transmission of any message.

Q. May the originator make this designation? *A.* The originator does not ordinarily designate the means used but if he desires it to go by messenger, he may so mark it and it will be delivered that way.

Q. What records are kept at a message center? *A.* A register showing time of receipt, dispatch, and delivery of every message. This record also shows the routing, to whom sent, and the means of transmission.

Q. If a messenger service is established, who operates it and how is it coordinated with those of other units? *A.* The messenger service is operated by the message center. Subordinate units time their service to agree with that of higher units.

134. Encoding and decoding.—*Q.* What is a code? *A.* A method of secret writing in which groups of symbols are substituted for sentences, phrases, words, letters, or numbers. To use a code, a complete list of groups of symbols and their meanings must first be prepared.

Q. What is a cipher? *A.* A method of secret writing in which the letters in a message are transposed, or other letters or numbers are

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

substituted for the letters in a message, according to a prearranged key. A mechanical device is often used for enciphering and deciphering messages.

Q. When are messages put in cipher or code? *A.* All messages transmitted by radio or other means which might be intercepted by the enemy are put in code or cipher, except, when in the opinion of the commander, the information contained therein is of no value to the enemy or when its urgency outweighs its value to the enemy. Such messages are marked "Send in clear" over the commander's signature.

Q. Give some rules to be observed in the use of codes and ciphers. *A.*

(1) Never encode a message unless it is necessary.

(2) Never encode a message that has already been sent in the clear.

(3) Make coded message short.

(4) Never use coded and uncoded words in the same message.

Q. Describe the cipher device type M–94. *A.* This device consists of a shaft upon which are placed 26 aluminum disks, each of which has a series of slots and projections for engaging the adjacent disks. Twenty-five of the disks show upon their rims the alphabet differently arranged, while the twenty-sixth carries a guide rule which may be revolved about the assembled cylinder and brought under any one of the 26 horizontal lines of letters. The disks are assembled on the shaft and held in place by a thumb nut.

Q. Is it necessary to place the disks on the shafts in any particular order? *A.* Yes. This is the way in which the key is employed.

Q. How is this order determined? *A.* Assume that the key phrase "United States of America" has been designated.

(1) Write the numbers from 1 to 25, inclusive, on a horizontal line.

(2) Under these numbers, write the letters of the key word or phrase, repeating if necessary, until a letter is beneath each number.

(1)-------	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
(2)-------	U	N	I	T	E	D	S	T	A	T	E	S	O	F	A	M	E	R	I	C	A	U	N	I	T
(3)-------	24	14	10	20	6	5	18	21	1	22	7	19	16	9	2	13	8	17	11	4	3	25	15	12	23

(3) Place numbers under the letters, from left to right in accordance with their relative position in the alphabet. Thus, under the first A, place 1; under the second A, 2; and under the third A, 3. Since B does not appear in the key phrase, C is the next letter con-

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

sidered, the number 4 being placed beneath it. Continue in a like manner until a number is written beneath each of the 25 letters of the key phrase. The last number should be 25; if not, an error has been made.

(4) The numbers in the bottom line determine the order in which the disks are assembled on the shaft. Thus, with the key phrase used in this example, disk No. 24 is placed on the shaft first, then No. 14, and so on, in order, with the last disk being No. 23.

Q. How is a message enciphered? *A.* After placing the disks on the shaft in the correct order as determined by the key word or phrase, revolve the disks one by one until the first 25 letters of the message are arranged in order from left to right on a horizontal line just above the guide rule. Disengage the guide rule disk so that it may revolve and set it under any one of the other 25 horizontal lines of letters. Write, in groups of five letters each, the letters appearing immediately above the rule. This will be the cipher equivalent of the first 25 letters of the message. The remainder of the message is enciphered in the same manner.

Q. Where is the cipher device used? *A.* At the message center.

Q. How is a message deciphered? *A.* Knowing the key word or phrase and having arranged the disks in their proper order, set up the first 25 letters of the cipher message in order from left to right on a horizontal line just above the guide rule. Revolve the guide rule slowly, looking for a line with an intelligible text of the first 25 letters of the message. The remainder of the message is deciphered in the same manner.

SECTION III

INSTALLATION OF FIELD TELEPHONE SYSTEM

Paragraph
General 135
Installation 136
Protection and concealment 137

135. General.—*Q.* How are military wire circuits classed according to their use? *A.* As trunk or local lines.

Q. What is a trunk line? *A.* A line which connects two telephone switchboards or centrals.

Q. What is a local line? *A.* A line which connects a switchboard to an individual telephone, or one between two individual telephones.

Q. How are wire circuits classed according to construction? *A.* As metallic or grounded.

Q. What is the difference between the two? *A.* In the metallic

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

circuit two wires are used to provide a complete path for the current; in grounded circuits the earth replaces one wire.

Q. Are grounded circuits satisfactory? Why? *A.* No, because of earth currents, cross talk, and the ease with which the enemy can pick up messages.

Q. What kinds of wire may be used? *A.* Bare wire, insulated single-conductor, insulated twisted-pair, and cables may be used.

136. Installation.—*Q.* What kind of wire is generally used for antiaircraft artillery systems? *A.* Twisted-pair, insulated, stranded field wire. Generally W–110 or W–110B wire is used.

Q. What is a line-route map? *A.* A map showing the positions of all switchboards, test stations, and telephones; also the route taken by the line and the number of circuits. This is usually prepared as an overlay on a standard map.



FIGURE 129.—Method of tying wire at ground level; (*a*) correct, (*b*) incorrect.

Q. What is a circuit diagram? *A.* An outline sketch showing all the circuits and their connections to each other and to the switchboards. Each circuit is given a number.

Q. In the case of wire lines between higher and lower units, who is responsible for their installation and maintenance? *A.* The higher unit is responsible for wire communications from its command post to the command post of the next lower unit.

Q. What test should be made when laying the line? *A.* Before the reels are taken out for laying wire, the wire should be tested for short and open circuits. For this purpose the wire on each reel should be continuous and have the ends exposed. Then as the lines are payed out they should be tested back to the starting point every quarter mile and at every splice made.

Q. Should there be any slack when wire is laid? Why? *A.* Wire should be laid slack so breaks can be repaired and small pieces cut out if necessary.

Q. In laying surface lines, what is done to prevent passing troops or vehicles from pulling the wire into traffic lines? *A.* They are laid

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

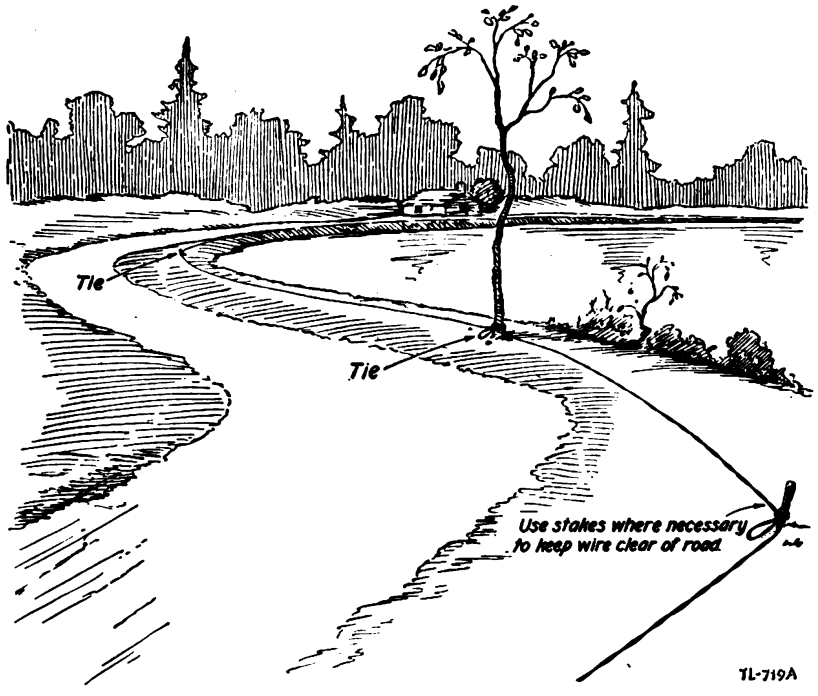


FIGURE 130.—Method of tying wire along curve in road.

loosely with plenty of slack and at suitable intervals are tied to objects such as trees or posts.

Q. Indicate the correct method of tying lines to a tree or post. *A.* They are tied at ground level as indicated in figure 129.

Q. On which side of a curved road should surface lines be laid? *A.* Along the inside edge.

Q. How are the lines kept out of traffic lines on a curve? *A.* By tying to trees or posts as shown in figure 130.

Q. How should surface lines be connected with overhead construction? *A.* The surface line should be securely tied and tagged at the

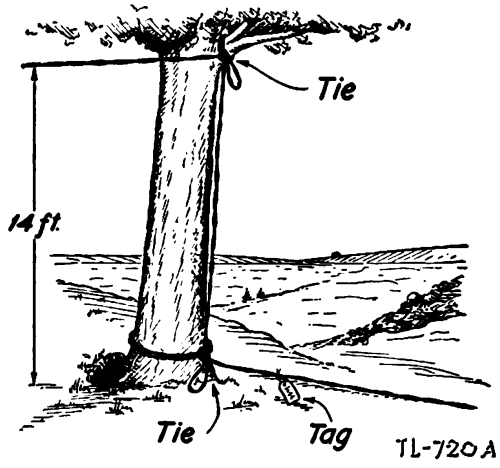


FIGURE 131.—Method of tying wire at junction of surface line with overhead construction.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

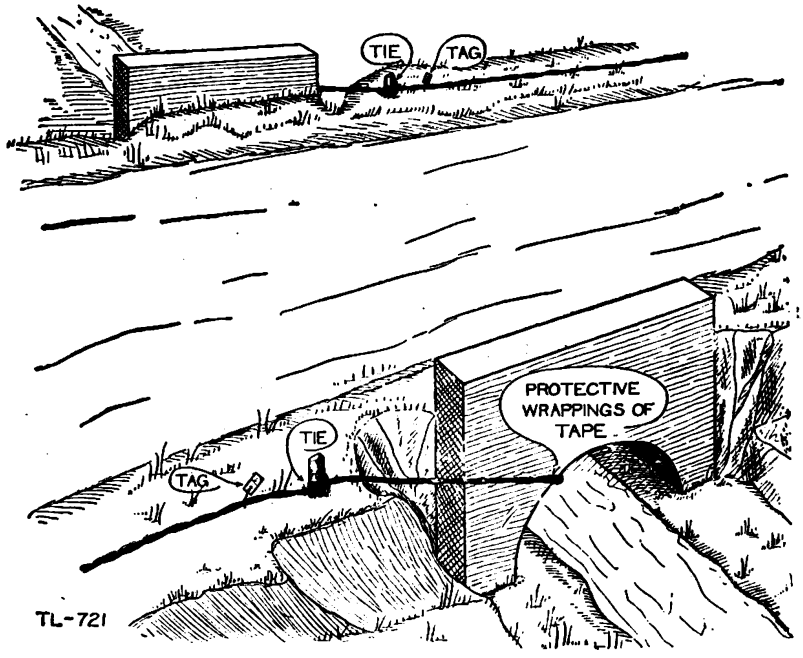


FIGURE 132.—Wire crossing road through culvert.

base of the pole at which the connection is made, and tied again just above the cross arm or terminal where the connection is to be made. (See fig. 131.)

Q. How should lines cross a road? *A.* Through a culvert, in a trench, or high enough to be clear of all traffic (see figs. 132, 133, and 134).

Q. How are lines laid across water? *A.* A single section of weatherproof wire in good condition is used and is weighted sufficiently to hold it against the movement of the current.

Q. What provision is made to maintain communication should a

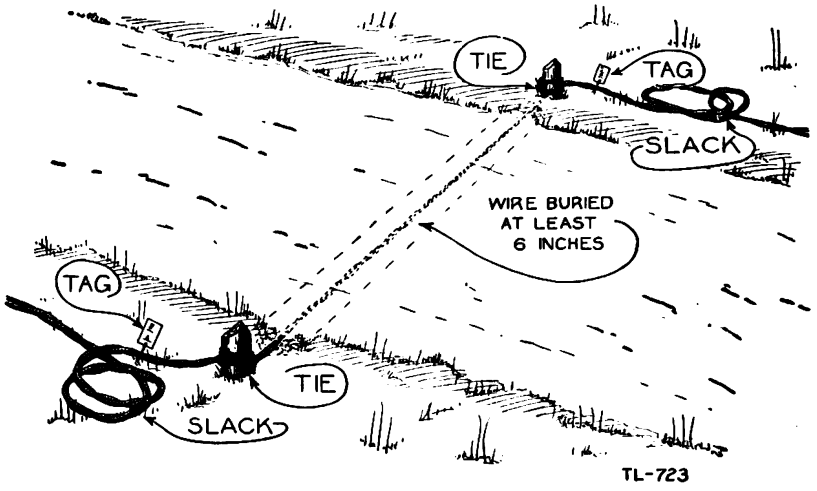


FIGURE 133.—Wire crossing under road in trench.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

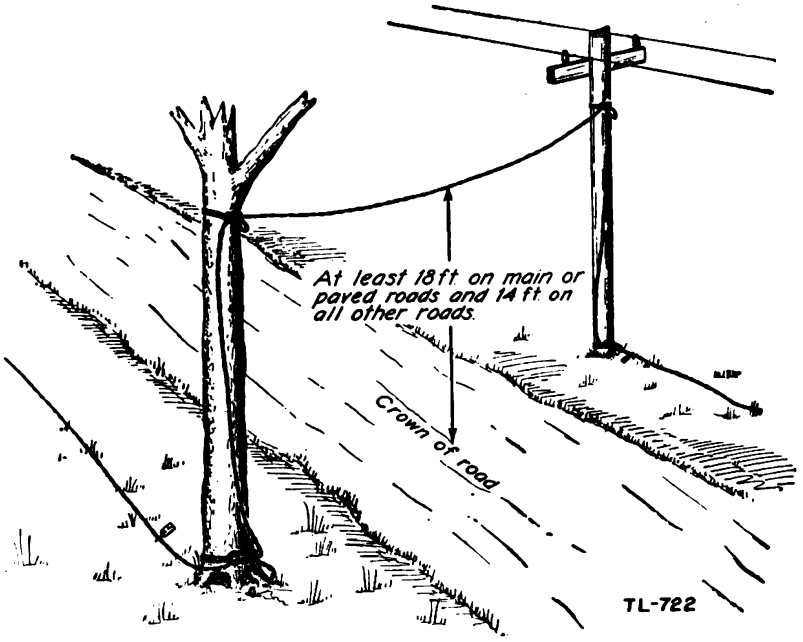


FIGURE 134.—Wire crossing road overhead.

line be broken by shell fire or other causes? *A.* Duplicate lines are run, whenever possible, by different routes, to distant and important OP's or CP's which are connected to the switchboard and thus readily substituted for defective lines.

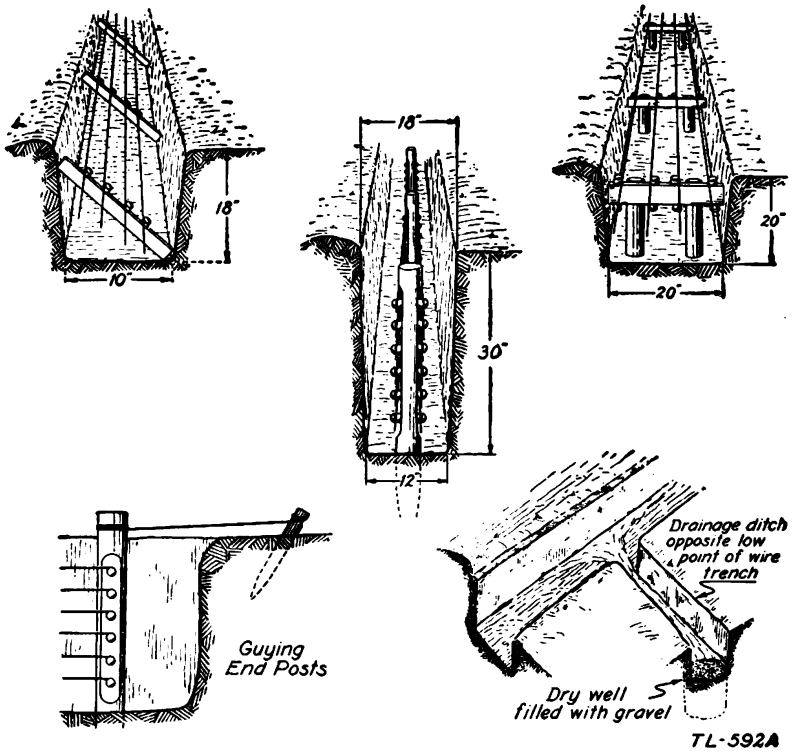


FIGURE 135.—Wire trench construction.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What is "short-stake construction"? *A*. Short stakes about 4½ feet in length are driven into the ground at intervals of about 15 to 20 feet. Small, insulated knobs, usually of wood or porcelain, are fastened to the stakes. Wires are attached to these knobs.

Q. What is "wire trench construction"? *A*. Short stakes are driven into the bottom of a small, wire trench at intervals of about 8 to 10 feet and wire attached as in the preceding case.

The candidate should be required to demonstrate, practically as far as possible, his ability to set up the telephone net required by his unit.

137. Protection and concealment.—*Q*. What would be a good telephone position? *A*. One free from enemy observation and protected from shell fire. It should not be necessary for the operator to lie down, nor should he be in a position where he is subject to repeated interruption because of the physical movement and conversation of others.

Q. Where should the switchboard be placed? *A*. At some quiet spot, centrally located, well protected from shell fire.

Q. Give some points to be observed in selecting a route for a telephone line. *A*. It should—

(1) Be as short as possible.
(2) Avoid main lines of travel.
(3) Avoid road junctions.
(4) Follow some natural line of concealment.
(5) Be camouflaged, if in view of the enemy.
(6) Avoid areas within range of hostile light artillery, where possible.

Q. What natural features can be utilized in laying a line? *A*. Reverse slopes of hills, trenches, ditches, and woods.

Q. How are telephones and operators protected? *A*. OP's are normally carefully concealed by camouflage and, if time permits, provided with some cover.

SECTION IV

VISUAL SIGNALING—PANELS

Paragraph
Visual signaling—panels 138

138. Visual signaling—panels.—*Q*. What important visual signals are used in the military service? *A*. Flags, panel signals, pyrotechnics, and signal lamps.

Q. For what are flags used? *A*. For emergency communication between nearby troops.

Q. For what are pyrotechnics and signal lamps commonly used?

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

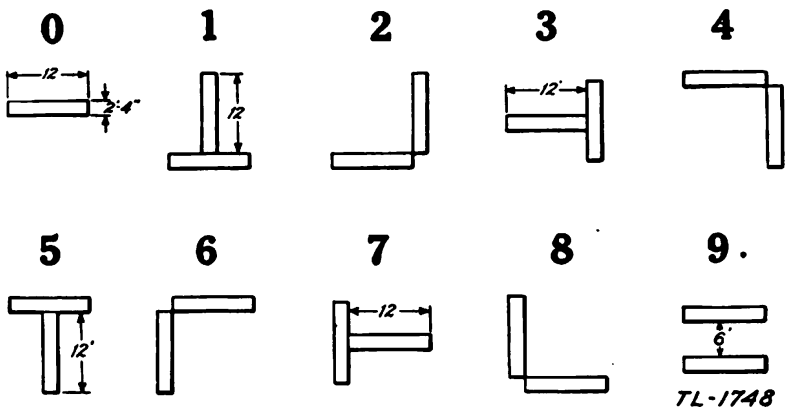


FIGURE 136.—Panel numerals.

A. For transmission of messages to aircraft and ground troops, especially at night. Signal lamps are also used to challenge aircraft at night.

Q. For what are panel signals used? *A.* For transmission of messages to friendly aircraft.

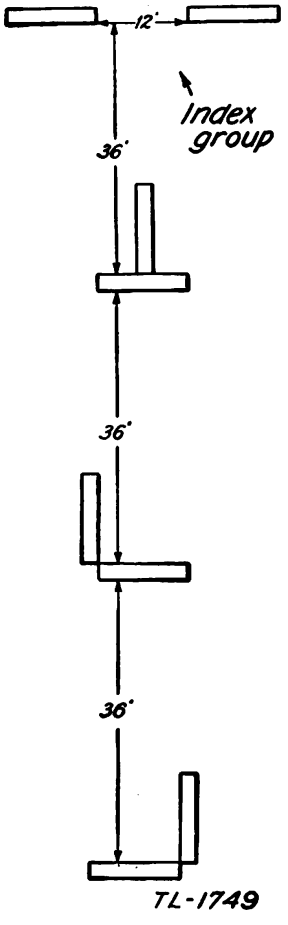
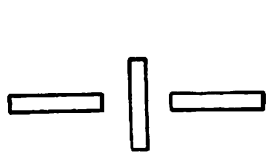
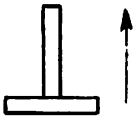


FIGURE 137.—Example of a code group, 182.

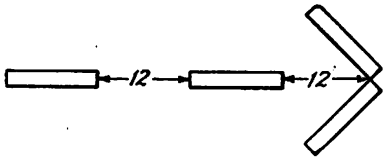
Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA



① Hostile plane near you.



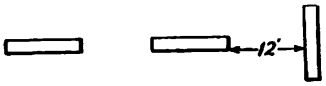
② Wind direction.

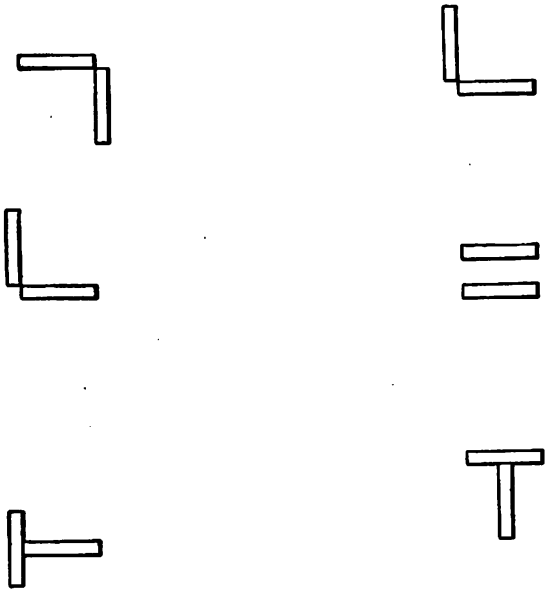


TL-1751

③ In this direction.



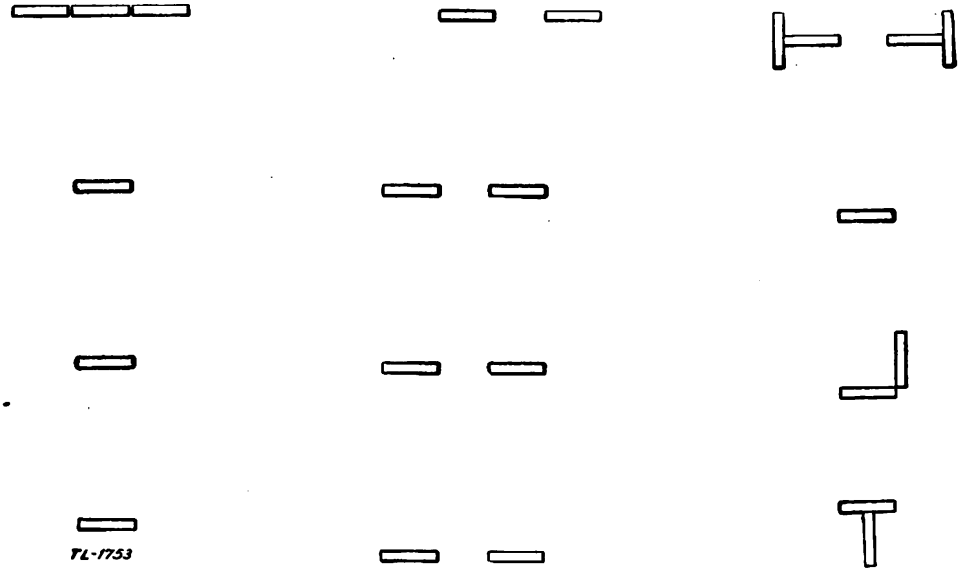




④ Numerals are being displayed, 487.

TL-1752

⑤ Coordinates are being displayed, 895.



TL-1753

⑥ More to follow.

⑦ Error, cancel last display of panels.

⑧ Reconnoiter 25 miles in the direction to be indicated by next display.

FIGURE 138.—Special panel signals.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. How are panels classified? *A.*

(1) Code panels.

(2) Marking panels.

Q. For what purpose are identification groups used? *A.* To designate or identify military units, and the message-dropping grounds and panel display stations of such units.

Q. When are identification groups displayed? *A.* When the ground troops wish to communicate with an approaching friendly airplane. When not definitely needed they are taken in.

Q. What are code panels and what size are they? *A.* Code panels are strips of cloth. For ordinary communication they are 12 feet by 2 feet 4 inches. For high-flying aircraft they are 30 by 6 feet.

Q. What panel codes are used? *A.*

(1) Air-ground liaison code, which is subject to frequent change for purposes of safety.

(2) Fire-control code, which is standard. Operators of a panel section must memorize panel numerals in figure 136 for use in codes.

SECTION V

LOCATION OF FAULTS; TESTS FOR GROUNDS AND SHORT CIRCUITS

Paragraph
Location of faults; tests for grounds and short circuits 139

139. Location of faults; tests for grounds and short circuits.—*Q.* How do you test a telephone to determine if it is in serviceable condition? *A.*

(1) *Ringing circuit.*—Crank the magneto and note the amount of effort required. Short-circuit the line terminals with a wire and again crank the magneto. If the ringing circuit is in order the effort required in the latter case will be much greater.

(2) *Transmitting and receiving circuits, and strength of battery.*—Place the receiver to the ear and short-circuit the terminals with a short piece of wire or other metal. Press the button several times and if there is a strong click in the receiver each time the button is released, the circuit and the battery are in good order. A weak click indicates a poor battery. Another test is to short-circuit the line terminals and blow in the transmitter. The blowing sound should be plainly heard in the receiver if the battery and circuits are in good order.

Q. What test may be made for a broken cord? *A.* One method is to short-circuit the line terminals and work the cord up and down, while holding the transmitter button closed. A clicking sound indi-

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

cates a broken cord. In case the cord has been broken by pulling on it, or if both wires in the cord are broken, the above test may not work, in which case it would be necessary to remove the cord and connect each wire separately between L1 and L2 on the test set. If the voltmeter shows a deflection when key No. 3 is moved to the lower position, the cord is good. While this test is being made, it is advisable to move the cord to be sure the wire is not making a momentary contact.

Q. What may be the trouble if it is impossible to ring a distant station? *A*.

(1) Broken wire or a loose connection in the ringing circuit of the telephone or distant telephone.

(2) Unserviceable magneto in your telephone.

(3) Unserviceable buzzer in the distant telephone.

(4) Open, shorted, or grounded wires in the line between telephones.

Q. What may be the trouble if it is possible to receive but not to transmit? *A*.

(1) Transmitter may be unserviceable.

(2) Receiver in distant telephone may be unserviceable.

(3) Transmitter cord in telephone may be unserviceable.

(4) Distant receiver cord may be broken.

(5) Thumb switch button on handset may be out of order, and not making proper contact.

(6) Battery may be deteriorated.

Q. What may be the trouble if it is possible to transmit but not to receive? *A*.

(1) Receiver may be unserviceable.

(2) Transmitter in distant telephone may be unserviceable.

(3) Receiver cord may be broken.

Q. What is the purpose of the universal test set? *A*. To test field wire circuits and locate troubles.

Q. Explain the tests indicated by figure 139. *A*. Test No. 1 shows how an open line is located. At positions *A* and *B* the tester can talk to telephone No. 1. At position *C* the tester cannot talk to telephone No. 1, but can talk to telephone No. 2, therefore the open line must lie between positions *B* and *C*. Test No. 2 shows how the approximate location of a short circuit may be obtained. As the tester moves from position *A* toward the short circuit, conservation with telephone No. 1 becomes more and more difficult. Depending on the type of line and the character of the short circuit, this test may or may not be possible of satisfactory accomplishment.

Q. What tests can be made with this set? *A*.

(1) Ringing substation or party.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(2) Talking to substation or party.
(3) Test for short circuits.
(4) Test for grounds.
(5) Test for crosses on lines carrying current.
(6) Test for crosses on other lines.
(7) Measuring voltage of auxiliary batteries.

Q. What batteries are required for this set? *A.* One type BA–1 for energizing the transmitter, and two type BA–2 in series for the voltmeter.

Q. How should the keys be set to ring? *A.* Key No. 1 set to "ring," all other neutral.

Q. How should the keys be set to test for shorts? *A.* Key No. 3 should be thrown to the lower position "VMB," and the reading on the voltmeter noted. If a reading appears, it shows a short. The full battery voltage indicates a dead short.

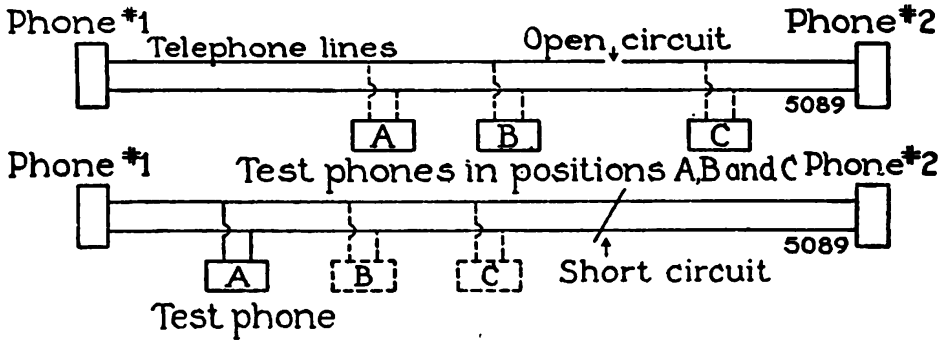


FIGURE 139.—Above: Test for open circuit. Below: Test for short circuit.

Q. How should the keys be set for talking or listening? *A.* Key No. 1 set to "Listen."

Q. How should the keys be set for ground tests? *A.* Key No. 3 should be thrown to upper position "VMG"; this tests one side of the line for grounds. Leaving No. 3 in that position, throw key No. 2 to "LR" position, which reverses the line and tests the other side for grounds. Any reading on voltmeter shows a ground. Full battery voltage shows a direct ground.

SECTION VI

INSTRUCTION OF LINEMEN AND TELEPHONE AND SWITCHBOARD OPERATORS

Paragraph
Instruction of linemen and telephone and switchboard operators 140

140. Instruction of linemen and telephone and switchboard operators.—The candidate should be required to demonstrate his ability to instruct in the duties of telephone linemen, telephone operators, and switchboard operators. Those duties are described in TM 4–305.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

CHAPTER 17

GENERAL SUBJECTS

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	Definitions and elementary principles for seacoast artillery	141
II.	Definitions and elementary principles for AA artillery	142–144
III.	Elementary principles of electricity, magnetism, and induction	145–146
IV.	Organization of a position	147–150
V.	Map reading	151–154
VI.	Dissemination of AA artillery alarms	155–156

SECTION I

DEFINITIONS AND ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES FOR SEACOAST ARTILLERY

Paragraph
Definitions and elementary principles 141

141. Definitions and elementary principles.—Definitions applying especially to nomenclature of matériel should be covered in connection with the appropriate topics in the text. The following terms are more general in their nature.

Absolute deviation.—*See* Deviation.

Accidental errors.—Those errors which are nonsystematic in nature and which, in artillery fire, cause the dispersion of shots about the center of impact. They may arise from such sources as the variation from round to round in the operation of instruments, in muzzle velocity, in the weight and shape of projectiles, and in the action of the gun and carriage.

Accuracy of fire.—Accuracy of fire is determined by dispersion and is measured by the closeness of the grouping of the points of impact or burst about their center of impact.

Accuracy of practice.—Accuracy of practice is measured by the distance of the center of impact from the center of the target; also known as accuracy of the shoot.

Adjusted range or adjusted range correction.—That range or range correction obtained or proved by actual firing which places the center of impact at or near the target.

Adjusting point.—The particular point on which fire is adjusted.

Adjustment corrections.—*See* Arbitrary corrections; Spot.

Adjustment of fire.—The process of determining and applying cor-

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

rections to firing data to bring the center of impact or of burst to the adjusting point and to keep it there.

Aerial observation.—Observation of fire from aircraft.

Aiming.—The operation of pointing the gun in range or direction by means of the sight.

Aiming point.—The point on which the gun pointer sights in pointing the gun.

Altitude.—The vertical distance above or below sea level (mean low water) or other datum level. Also called height of site.

Angle of approach.—The acute horizontal angle between the plane of position and the vertical plane containing the course of the target.

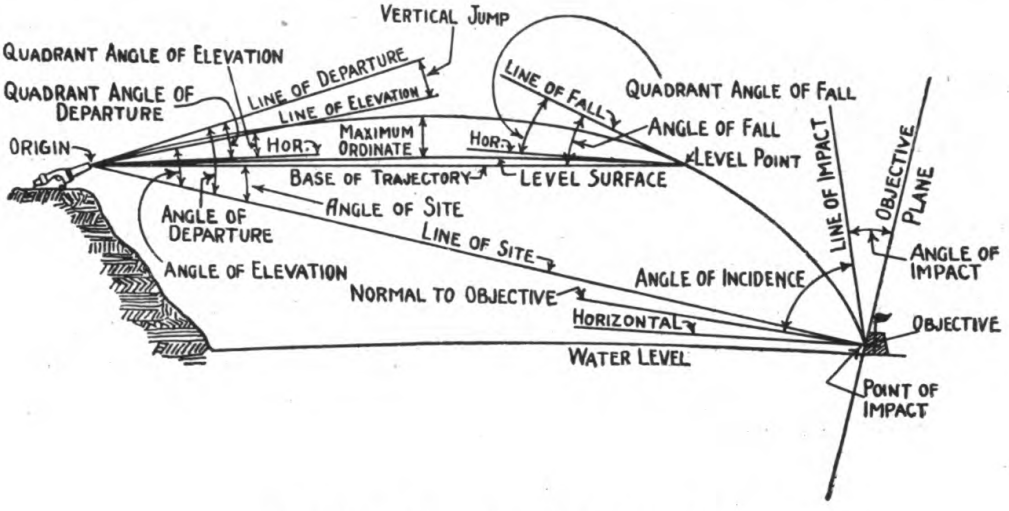


FIGURE 140.—Elements of trajectory in air.

Angle of departure.—The angle between the line of departure and the line of position.

Angle of depression.—The angular depression of the line of position below the horizontal plane.

Angle of elevation (or elevation).—The angle between the line of elevation and the line of position.

Angle of fall.—The angle between the line of fall and the base of the trajectory.

Angle of impact.—The acute angle between the line of impact and the plane tangent to the surface of the ground (or other object) at the point of impact.

Angle of incidence.—The acute angle between the line of impact and the normal to the surface of the ground (or other object) at the point of impact. It is the complement of the angle of impact.

Angle of jump.—The difference between the angle of departure and the angle of elevation. Its component in the vertical plane is called

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

the vertical jump, and its component in the horizontal plane is called the lateral jump.

Angle of site.—The angle between the line of site (position) and the base of the trajectory.

Angular height.—The vertical angle between the line of position and the horizontal.

Angular travel error.—The error which is introduced into a predicted angle obtained by multiplying an instantaneous angular velocity by a time of flight.

Angular velocity.—The rate of change of direction expressed in angular measure.

Arbitrary corrections.—Corrections to firing data which are applied to correct for conditions or observed deviations after having corrected for all known deviating causes.

Armament errors.—The divergence, stripped of all personnel errors and adjustment corrections, of an impact or burst from the center of impact of a series similarly stripped.

Ascending branch.—That portion of the trajectory between the origin and the summit.

Automatic weapon defense.—The particular class of defense provided by AA artillery automatic weapons.

Axial observation.—Observation of fire from a point on or near the gun-target line. Observation is said to be axial when the observing angle is 5° or less.

Axis of bore.—The center line of the bore of the gun.

Axis of trunnions.—The axis about which a gun is rotated in elevation.

Azimuth.—The horizontal angle, measured in a clockwise direction, from a selected reference line, usually grid south, passing through the position of the observer to the horizontal projection of the line of sight from the observer to the objective.

Azimuth difference.—The difference between the two azimuths of a point as measured from two other points. Also called parallax.

Backlash.—The lost motion or play in a mechanical system.

Ballistic coefficient.—The numerical measure of the ability of a projectile to overcome air resistance and maintain its velocity.

Ballistic density.—A fictitious constant density of the atmosphere which would have the same total effect on the projectile during its flight as the varying densities actually encountered.

Ballistic wind.—A fictitious wind, constant in velocity and direction, which would have the same total effect on a projectile during the flight as the true winds actually encountered.

Ballistics.—That branch of applied mechanics which treats of the motion of projectiles. It is divided into two main branches—inte-

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

rior ballistics and exterior ballistics. The former is concerned with the motion of the projectile while in the gun; the latter treats of the motion of the projectile after it has left the gun.

Barrage fire.—Fire having for its purpose the placing of a curtain or barrier of fire, executed on predetermined firing data, across the probable course of the enemy.

Base line.—A line of known length and direction between two observation or spotting stations, the positions of which with respect to the battery are known. The base line is called right-handed or left-handed depending on whether the secondary station is to the right or left of the primary from the point of view of a person facing the field of fire.

Base of trajectory.—The straight line joining the origin and the level point.

Base piece.—The gun selected after calibration fire, the center of burst or impact of which is taken as the reference point in determining calibration corrections for the remaining guns of the battery. No calibration corrections are applied to the base piece.

Base ring.—The metal ring which is bolted to the concrete of an emplacement and which supports the weight of the cannon and carriage.

Battle chart.—A chart used in group or higher commands, showing the water area covered by the armament of their respective commands.

Bilateral observation.—Observation of fire from two observation stations.

Biting angle.—The maximum angle of obliquity at which penetration of armor is secured.

Bore rest.—*See* Clinometer rest.

Bore sighting.—The process by which the axis of the bore and the line of sight are made parallel or are made to converge on a point.

Bracket.—The difference between two ranges or two adjustment corrections, one of which indicates a center of impact which is over the target and the other a center of impact which is short of the target. The term is also used in a similar manner with reference to direction.

Bracketing correction.—An adjustment correction which gives an equal number of overs and shorts.

Bracketing elevation.—An elevation which gives an equal number of overs and shorts.

Bracketing method of adjustment.—The method of fire adjustment used when the sense only and not the magnitude of the deviation is known.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Bracketing salvo.—A salvo in which the number of impacts sensed short is equal to the number of impacts sensed over.

Calibration.—*See* Calibration fire.

Calibration corrections.—Corrections which are applied on the guns as a result of calibration fire.

Calibration fire.—Preparatory fire having for its purpose the determination of the separate corrections to be applied to the individual guns of a battery in order to cause all the guns to hit the same point or the bursts or impacts to assume a desired pattern.

Calibration point.—A point at which the calibration fire is conducted.

Cant.—The angle made with the horizontal by the axis of the trunnions.

Case I, II, and III, pointing.—*See* Pointing.

Center of dispersion.—*See* Dispersion.

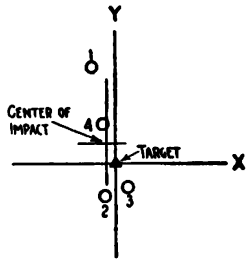


FIGURE 141.—Center of impact.

Center of impact.—The mean position of the points of impact of a particular series of shots fired with the same elevation (or with the same adjustment correction).

Chronograph.—An instrument for measuring and recording graphically short intervals of time. More specifically, an instrument for determining the velocity of projectiles.

Clinometer.—An instrument for measuring accurately vertical angles; for example, the inclination of the axis of the bore to the horizontal.

Clinometer rest.—A device inserted in the bore of the gun for supporting a clinometer. It is also called a bore rest.

Clinometring.—The process of adjusting the elevation-indicating device on a gun, using a clinometer, so that it indicates accurately the quadrant elevation of the gun when elevated to any position.

Coefficient of form.—A factor introduced into the ballistic coefficient to make its value conform to results obtained by firing.

Conduct of fire.—The employment of technical means to place accurate fire on a target.

Continuous fire.—Fire conducted at the normal rate without interruption, for the application of adjustment corrections or for other causes.

Continuously pointed fire.—Fire in which the fire-control devices are

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

directed on the target and the data vary continuously with the position of the target.

Contradiction.—A contradiction is obtained when two shots fired with the same elevation or with the same adjustment correction give impacts of opposite sense. A contradiction may also be obtained in direction.

Control station.—A device which permits a searchlight to be pointed in elevation and azimuth from a distant point. The station consists of a distant electric controller and a comparator or zero reader.

Controller.—*See* Distant electric control.

Corrected azimuth.—The azimuth from the directing point to the target corrected for all known variations from those conditions assumed as standard in the construction of firing tables.

Corrected deflection.—The deflection corrected for all known variations from those conditions assumed as standard in the construction of firing tables.

Corrected elevation.—The firing table elevation corresponding to the corrected range.

Corrected range.—The range corrected for all known variations in conditions from those assumed as standard in the construction of firing tables. It is the computed range at which the piece should be set.

Danger space.—That portion of the range within which a target of given dimensions would be hit by a projectile with a given angle of fall. It is the area indicated by projecting the target on the surface of the earth or water along lines parallel to the line of fall of the projectile.

Datum or datum level.—A spherical surface which represents mean sea level or other established reference level from which altitudes are measured.

Datum point.—A fixed point the azimuth and range of which have been accurately determined from one or more observation stations or other positions.

Dead areas.—Areas that cannot be reached by fire. These may be caused by masks in front of the battery as well as by obstructions in the descending path of the projectile.

Dead time.—The time interval represented by the travel of the target from its position at observation to its present position. It is the time necessary to compute and utilize an element of the firing data.

Defilade.—The vertical distance by which a position is concealed from enemy observation. If the smoke and flash of firing are also concealed, the battery is said to have smoke and flash defilade.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Deflection.—The horizontal angle between the line of sight to the target and the axis of the bore when the piece is pointed in direction. It is usually expressed in reference numbers and is set on the sight. The deflection due to travel alone is called the uncorrected deflection.

Deliberate fire.—Fire which is conducted at a rate intentionally less than the normal rate of fire of the battery in order that adjustment corrections may be applied between series or for tactical reasons.

Density.—Density of the air measures the mass that must be displaced by the projectile. It varies with the altitude, decreasing as the altitude increases. In practice, the density used is the ballistic density.

Density of loading.—The term employed to represent the density of the contents of the powder chamber. It is the ratio of the weight of the powder charge to the weight of a volume of distilled water at 39.2° F. which will fill the powder chamber.

Descending branch.—That part of the trajectory described by the projectile after it passes the summit.

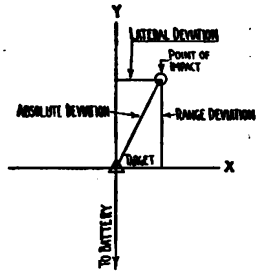


FIGURE 142.—Deviations.

Developed armament probable error (DAPE).—The probable armament error as computed from a finite series of shots. It is the average armament error of a particular series of shots multiplied by 0.845.

Deviation.—The distance of a point of impact or center of impact from the center of the target. If a set of axes is drawn through the target, the *Y* axis being along the line of position and the *X* axis perpendicular to the *Y* axis, then the *Y* coordinate of the point of impact is called its longitudinal deviation and the *X* coordinate is called its lateral deviation. The shortest distance from the center of the target to the point of impact is called the absolute deviation.

Difference chart.—A graphic device by means of which the range and azimuth of a target from a gun or station are obtained when the range and azimuth from some other gun or station are known.

Direct fire.—Fire conducted with direct pointing.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Direct pointing.—Pointing a piece in direction or in both range and direction by means of a sight directed at the target.

Directing point.—A point in or near a battery for which the firing data are computed. If a gun of the battery is the directing point, it is called the base piece or directing gun.

Directrix.—The center line of the field of fire of a gun.

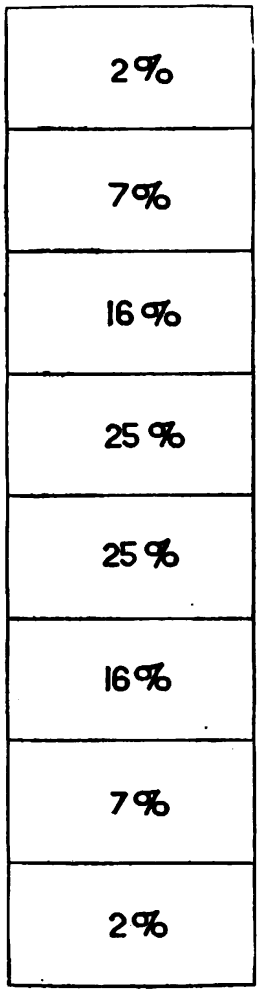


FIGURE 143.—Dispersion ladder for range.

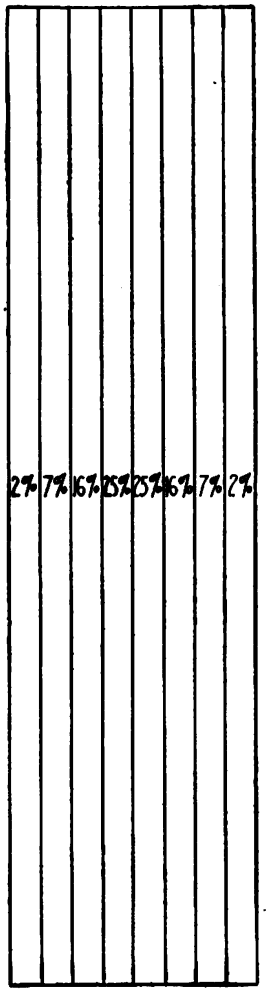


FIGURE 144.—Dispersion ladder for direction.

Dispersion.—The scattering of shots fired with the same data. The area over which the shots are scattered is called the zone of dispersion. The center of that area is called the center of dispersion.

Dispersion diagram.—A diagram made up by superimposing the dispersion ladder for direction on the dispersion ladder for range and indicating in each resulting rectangle the percentage of shots expected to fall therein.

Dispersion ladder.—A diagram made up of eight successive zones,

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

each equal in width to one probable error. The center of dispersion is on the line between the two central zones and in each zone is indicated the percentage of shots expected to fall therein.

Displacement.—The displacement of one point from another is the distance between these points. Gun displacement is the horizontal distance in yards from the pintle center of the gun to the directing point or the directing gun of the battery.

Distant electric control (D. E. C.)—A system for the control of the pointing of searchlights from a distance. The control consists of the controller and the necessary motors or receivers at the searchlight.

Drift.—The divergence of a projectile from the plane of departure due to the rotation of the projectile and the resistance of the air. It may be expressed either in linear or angular units. The drift listed in firing tables includes lateral jump.

Drop.—The vertical distance from a point on the trajectory to the line of elevation.

Elements of the trajectory.—The phrase applied to the various features of the trajectory.

Elevation.—*See* Angle of elevation; Quadrant elevation.

Elevation difference.—The angular units of quadrant elevation corresponding to a particular gun difference for a particular range.

Elevation table.—A table of ranges with corresponding quadrant elevations, used in graduating, and in checking the graduations of the range disk of a fixed cannon. The quadrant elevations listed are firing table elevations corrected for height of site.

Errors.—Divergences of points of impact or burst from the center of impact or burst. Practically, they are measured from the apparent center of impact or burst of a given series and when so measured are called apparent errors, as differentiated from true errors which would be measured from the true center of impact or burst.

Estimated data.—Firing data which are determined by estimation.

Exterior ballistics.—*See* Ballistics.

Field of fire.—That portion of the terrain or water area covered by the fire of a gun or battery.

Fifty percent zone.—The zone extending one probable error on each side of the center of impact within which 50 percent of the shots are expected to fall.

Fire control.—The exercise of fire direction and conduct of fire.

Fire direction.—The exercise of the tactical command of one or more units in the selection of objectives and in the concentration or distribution of fire thereon at the appropriate times.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Fire for effect.—Any fire conducted against a hostile target.
Firing azimuth.—The azimuth at which the gun is laid for firing.
Firing data.—All data necessary for firing a gun at a given objective.
Firing elevation.—The firing table elevation corresponding to the firing range.
Firing range.—The range at which the gun is laid for firing.
Firing tables.—A collection of data, chiefly in tabular form, intended to furnish the ballistic information necessary for conducting the fire of a particular model of gun with specified ammunition.
Fixed armament.—Seacoast artillery weapons that are emplaced in permanent firing positions.
Flank observation.—Observation of fire from a point where the observing angle is greater than 75°.
Flash defilade.—*See* Defilade.
Fork.—The difference in range, elevation, or direction required to change the center of impact by four probable errors.
Fuze.—A device which controls the time of burst of a projectile.
Grid azimuth.—Azimuth measured from grid north or south.
Gun difference.—The difference, due to displacement, between the range from a gun to the target and the range from the directing point to the target.
Gun displacement.—*See* Displacement.
Gunner's quadrant.—An instrument used on the quadrant seat of a cannon to measure the vertical angle between the axis of the bore and the horizontal.
Gunnery.—The art of firing guns. It includes the study of the flight of the projectile and of the technical considerations involved in the conduct of fire.
Height of site.—The altitude above or below the assumed datum level.
High-angle fire.—Fire delivered at elevations greater than the elevation corresponding to the maximum range. In high-angle fire the range decreases as the angle of elevation is increased.
Hit.—An impact actually on the target.
Horizontal base system.—A system of position finding in which the target is located from two observation stations.
Hundred percent rectangle.—A rectangle whose length is eight probable errors in range and whose breadth is eight probable errors in direction. Its center is the center of dispersion.
Indirect fire.—Fire conducted with indirect pointing.
Indirect pointing.—Pointing a piece in direction by the use of a sight and an aiming point other than the target, or by the azimuth circle on the carriage, and in elevation by range drum or quadrant.
Initial velocity.—*See* Muzzle velocity.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Interior ballistics.—*See* Ballistics.

Jump.—The angle between the axis of the bore when the piece is laid and the line of departure. Its component in the vertical plane is called the vertical jump and its component in the horizontal plane is called the lateral jump. In firing tables, quadrant elevation includes the effect of vertical jump, and drift includes the effect of lateral jump.

Lateral deviation.—*See* Deviation.

Lateral jump.—*See* Jump.

Laying.—The operation of pointing the gun in elevation or direction or in both elevation and direction without the use of a sight.

Level point.—A point on the descending branch of the trajectory at the same altitude as the muzzle of the gun. It is the same as the point of fall.

Leveling.—The process of adjusting the gun and mount or an instrument so that all vertical or horizontal angles will be measured in true vertical or horizontal planes.

Line of collimation.—The line from the center of the objective lens of a telescope through and perpendicular to the axis of vertical rotation.

Line of departure.—The prolongation of the axis of the bore as the projectile leaves the muzzle of the gun. It is the tangent to the trajectory at the origin.

Line of elevation.—The prolongation of the axis of the bore when the piece is laid.

Line of fall.—The tangent to the trajectory at the level point.

Line of impact.—The tangent to the trajectory at the point of impact.

Line of position.—The line of position of a point is the straight line connecting the origin with that point. Also called line of site. The point of origin is usually the gun or a position-finding instrument. Thus, corresponding to the three positions of the target, there are the line of position at observation, the line of present position, and the line of future position.

Line of sight.—The line of vision; the optical axis of an observation instrument.

Line of site.—*See* Line of position.

Longitudinal deviation.—*See* Deviation.

Low angle fire.—Fire delivered at angles of elevation at and below the elevation corresponding to the maximum range.

Magnitude method of adjustment.—A method of adjustment used when the actual magnitudes and senses of the deviations are known.

Manning table.—A table showing the assignment to duties of the personnel of an organization.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Map range.—The range from the piece to any point as scaled or computed from a map.

Mask.—Any natural or artificial feature of or on the terrain which affords shelter from view.

Maximum ordinate.—The difference in altitude between the origin and the highest point of the trajectory.

Mean error.—The arithmetical average of errors of a series of shots.

Meteorological datum plane.—The plane assumed as a basis or starting point for the data furnished to the artillery concerning atmospheric conditions. Its altitude is that of the meteorological station.

Mil.—*One sixty-four-hundredth* part of a circle. For practical purposes the arc which subtends a mil at the center of a circle is equal to the length of one one-thousandth of the radius.

Mistakes.—Those personnel errors which may be avoided by proper care.

Mobile armament.—Weapons that may be moved to and emplaced in temporary firing positions. In seacoast artillery this class consists of railway, truck-drawn, and tractor-drawn artillery.

Muzzle velocity.—The velocity of the projectile at the origin of the trajectory. Also called initial velocity.

Nonsystematic errors.—*See* Accidental errors.

Normal.—Geometrically the term means perpendicular to. When used in connection with reference scales of instruments the normal setting is that reference scale setting which corresponds with a true setting of zero.

Objective plane.—The plane tangent to the ground or other material object at the point of impact.

Observation of fire.—The process of observing artillery fire. (*See also* Spotting.)

Observing interval.—The time interval between two successive observations made on a moving target during tracking.

Observing line.—The line joining the observer and the observing point.

Observing point.—The point on which the observer sights.

Observing sector.—The sector between the lines to the right and left limiting the area visible to the observer or limiting the area assigned for surveillance.

Orientation.—The determination of the horizontal and vertical location of points and the establishment of orienting lines or lines of known direction. Also, the process of adjusting the azimuth circles of guns or instruments or both so that they will read correct azimuths.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Orienting line.—A line of known direction over one point of which it is possible to place an angle-measuring instrument.

Origin of trajectory.—The center of the muzzle of the gun at the instant of departure.

Parallax.—The angle subtended at a certain point by a line connecting two other points.

Pattern.—The distribution of the points of burst or impact of a salvo. Also the difference in range between the point of impact with the longest range and the point of impact with the shortest range, excluding wild shots. The pattern of a salvo in direction is the distance measured perpendicular to the line of position between the point of impact falling at the greatest distance to the right and that falling at the greatest distance to the left, excluding wild shots.

Penetration of armor.—The passage of any part of the projectile through all or any part of armor plate. When the projectile passes completely through the armor, complete penetration or perforation is said to have occurred.

Perforation of armor.—Complete penetration of armor.

Pintle center.—The vertical axis about which a gun and its carriage are traversed.

Plane of departure.—The vertical plane containing the line of departure.

Plane of fire.—The vertical plane containing the axis of the bore when the piece is laid.

Plane of position.—The vertical plane containing a line of position. It is designated in a manner similar to that followed for lines of position.

Plane of site.—A plane containing the line of site and a horizontal line perpendicular to it.

Plotted point.—A point on the plotted course of the target located by plotting the position of the target at a particular instant.

Point of fall.—*See* Level point.

Point of impact.—The point where the projectile first strikes the ground or other material object.

Pointing.—The operation of giving the piece a designated elevation and direction. There are four cases of pointing:

Case I.—In which the direction and quadrant elevation are both given by means of the sight.

Case I½.—In which the direction is given by the sight and the quadrant elevation is given by a combination of the sight and an elevation scale or graduated drum.

Case II.—In which the direction is given by the sight and the

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

quadrant elevation is given by means of a scale or graduated drum.

Case III.—In which the direction is given by means of an azimuth scale and the quadrant elevation is given by means of an elevation scale or graduated drum.

Position finding.—The process of determining the position of a target with relation to the battery and the determination of a future position upon which to direct the fire.

Position of the target.—Three different positions of the target are considered:

Position of the target as predicted—future position of target.—The predicted position of the target at the end of the predicted time of flight.

Position of target at instant of firing—present position of target.—The position of the target at the instant the gun is fired.

Position of target at instant or observation.—The observed position of the target.

Predicted point.—A point at which it is expected the target will arrive at the end of the dead time.

Predicting.—The process of determining the position of the target at some future time.

Predicting interval.—The interval between successive predictions of future positions of the target.

Preparatory fire.—Fire that is conducted for the purpose of determining or verifying corrections to firing data.

Primary armament.—Seacoast artillery weapons of 12-inch or greater caliber, and submarine mines.

Probability factor.—A factor used as an argument in entering the probability tables. It is equal to the error not to be exceeded divided by the probable error.

Probable error.—The error which is as likely as not to be exceeded. A value which in the long run will be exceeded half the time and not exceeded half the time.

Quadrant angle of departure.—The angle between the line of departure and the horizontal.

Quadrant angle of fall.—The angle between the line of fall and the horizontal plane at the level point.

Quadrant angle of site.—The angle between the line of site and the horizontal plane at the origin.

Quadrant elevation.—The vertical angle between the horizontal and the axis of the bore when the gun is pointed in elevation.

Radian.—The angle at the center of a circle subtended by an arc equal

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

in length to the radius. A convenient angular unit of measure equal to 1018.5 mils.

Range.—The horizontal distance from the gun, observation station, or directing point of a battery to the target, splash, datum point, or other specified point.

Range deviation.—*See* Deviation.

Range difference.—The difference, due to displacement, between the ranges from any two points to a third point.

Range table.—*See* Firing tables.

Ranging shots.—Trial shots fired at a moving target for the purpose of obtaining an adjustment correction.

Reference numbers.—Arbitrary numbers used in place of actual values in the graduation of certain scales. Their purpose is to avoid the use of positive and negative values.

Relocation.—The process of determining the range and azimuth from one station to a point (or target) when the range and azimuth from another station to this point are known.

Remaining velocity.—The remaining velocity at any point in the trajectory is the actual velocity in foot-seconds at that point.

Retardation.—The negative acceleration of the projectile.

Ricochet.—A glancing rebound of a projectile on impact.

Round.—All of the component parts of ammunition necessary in the firing of one shot.

Salvo.—One round per gun fired simultaneously or fired in a certain order with a specified time interval between rounds.

Salvo point.—A point of known range and azimuth at which fire from one or more batteries may be directed.

Seacoast artillery.—All artillery weapons used primarily for fire upon hostile naval vessels. It includes both fixed and mobile armament.

Secondary armament.—Seacoast artillery weapons of less than 12-inch caliber.

Self-contained base system.—A system of position finding in which the target is located in azimuth and range from a single station using a self-contained range finder.

Self-contained range finder.—An instrument used to obtain ranges by either the stereoscopic or the coincidence principle.

Sense.—The direction of a point of impact (or center of impact of a salvo) with respect to the target, that is; over or short, right or left.

Set-forward point.—A point on the expected course of the target at which it is predicted the target will arrive at the end of the time of flight.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Sight.—A device by which the gun pointer gives the gun the proper direction for firing.

Site.—*See* Angle of site.

Slope of fall.—The degree of inclination of the line of fall to the horizontal. It is usually expressed as a gradient, for instance 1 on 5, meaning that the projectile drops vertically 1 yard while it is moving horizontally through 5 yards.

Smoke defilade.—See Defilade.

Sound ranging.—The process of locating a target by means of the sounds emitted.

Spot.—An adjustment correction based upon observation of fire, that is "spotting." The measured deviation of an impact or center of impact.

Spotting.—The process of determining the position of a point of impact or burst with respect to the adjusting point.

Straddle.—A salvo which has impacts of opposite sense. Also called a mixed salvo.

Striking velocity.—The remaining velocity at the point of impact.

Stripped deviation.—The deviation that would have resulted had there been no personnel errors and no adjustment correction applied.

Subareas.—Subdivisions of the water area in the field of fire used to assist in the indication, identification, and assignment of targets.

Summit of trajectory.—The point on the trajectory of maximum altitude.

Synchronization.—A process in which the values indicated by all receiver pointers of an electrical data transmission system are made to agree exactly with the values set on the corresponding transmitters.

Systematic errors.—Errors of a constant or progressively changing nature that cause the center of impact or burst initially to deviate from the target.

Target angle.—The angle of the target subtended by the observing base line. Also, the acute angle between the vertical plane containing the gun-target line and the vertical plane parallel to the longitudinal axis of a naval target.

Target-designating system.—A system for designating to one instrument a target which has already been located by a second instrument. It employs electrical data transmitters and receivers which indicate on one instrument the pointing of another.

Terminal velocity.—The remaining velocity at the point of fall.

Time interval.—The interval of time between two successive observations made on a moving target during continuous tracking.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Time of flight.—The elapsed time from the instant of departure of the projectile to the instant of impact or to the instant of burst.

Tracking.—The process of making successive observations on a moving target for the purpose of plotting its course.

Trajectory.—The curve described by the center of gravity of the projectile in its flight.

Trajectory chart.—A graphical representation of the elements of the trajectory in the vertical plane.

Trial fire.—Preparatory fire having for its purpose the determination of corrections for the battery as a whole to compensate for deviations not corrected for in the normal operations of data computation.

Trial shot corrections.—Corrections made as the result of trial fire which seek to move the center of impact or burst to the trial shot point.

Trial shot point.—A point at which trial fire is conducted.

Trial shots.—Shots fired at a fixed point or target during trial fire.

Twenty-five percent rectangle.—That portion of the dispersion diagram the dimensions of which are two probable errors in range by two probable errors in deflection and the center of which is on the center of impact.

Unilateral observation.—Observation of fire from one station only when the target angle is greater than 5° and less than 75°.

Verification fire.—Preparatory fire having for its purpose the test of the mechanical adjustment of all guns and fire-control equipment of the battery and of the accuracy of the corrections determined as a result of calibration and trial fire.

Vertical base system.—A system of position finding for moving targets which uses only one observation station equipped with a depression position finder.

Vertical deviation.—*See* Deviation.

Vertical jump.—*See* Jump.

Volley fire.—Fire in which each piece included in the command fires a specified number of rounds without regard to the other pieces and as rapidly as is consistent with accuracy.

Wild shot.—A shot the armament error of which is greater than four developed probable armament errors and also is greater than six firing table probable errors either in range or direction.

Wind.—*See* Ballistic wind.

Wind velocity.—The velocity of the ballistic wind.

Wind fire angle.—The horizontal angle measured clockwise from the plane of fire to the direction from which the ballistic wind is blow-

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

ing. It is obtained by subtracting the azimuth of the plane of fire from the wind azimuth.

Yaw.—The angle between the longitudinal axis of the projectile and the tangent to the trajectory at the center of gravity of the projectile.

Zone.—When used with reference to mortar fire or fire from guns or howitzers using more than one size of powder charge, it refers to the area in which projectiles will fall when one particular size of powder charge is used and the elevation is varied from the minimum to the maximum.

Zone of dispersion.—The zone which would include all impacts of an infinite number of shots fired from a gun using the same firing data for each shot. Practically, the zone is considered to extend four probable errors on each side of the center of impact, and such a zone will include over 99 percent of all shots fired with the same data. The zone of dispersion is also called the hundred percent zone.

SECTION II

DEFINITIONS AND ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES FOR AA ARTILLERY

Paragraph
General terms 142
Searchlights and sound locators 143
Supply and ammunition 144

142. General terms.—The following definitions have been selected as typical of the class of definitions with which the AA artilleryman should be familiar. Additional terms will be found in FM 4–155.

Air speed.—The speed of an airplane with reference to the air through which it is flying. The air speed differs from the ground speed by the effect of the wind on the movement of the airplane.

Altitude.—The vertical distance of a target or point in space above the horizontal or level plane through the directing point of the battery.

Angle of approach.—The acute (lesser) horizontal angle between the plane of position and the vertical plane containing the course of the target.

Angular height.—The vertical angle between the line of position (site) and the horizontal.

Angular travel method.—A method of determining firing data based on the lateral and vertical rates of angular travel of a target.

Axis of bore.—The center line of the bore of the gun.

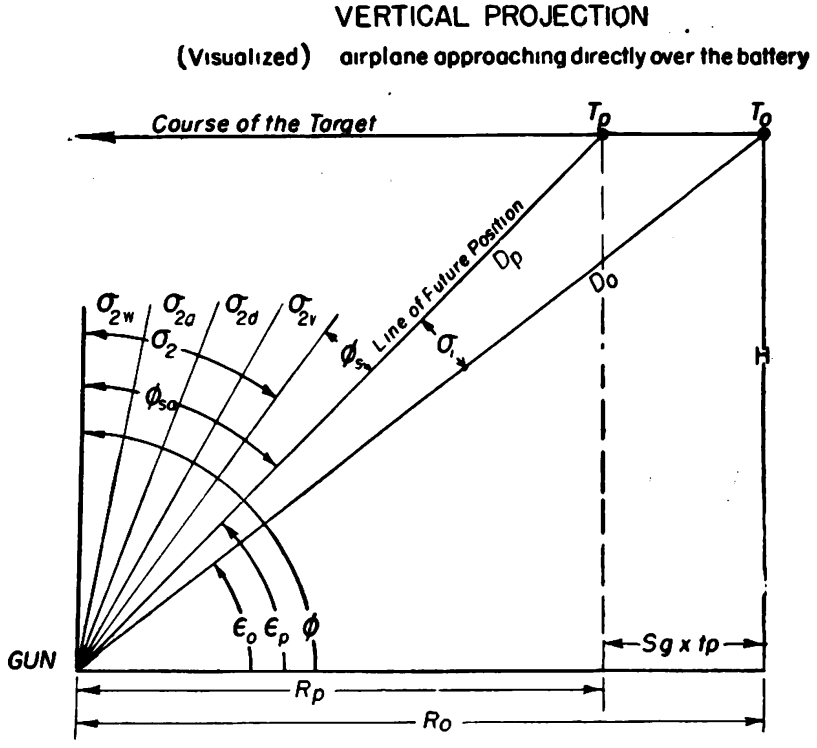
Azimuth.—The horizontal angle measured in a clockwise direction, from a selected reference line (usually the grid north line) passing

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

through the position of the observer, to the horizontal projection of the line of sight from the observer to the objective.

Back azimuth.—The azimuth plus or minus 180° or 3,200 mils. The opposite direction.

Ballistic density.—A fictitious constant density of the atmosphere which will have the same total effect on the projectile during its flight as the actual density conditions. Ballistic wind is a similar fictitious wind value.



D_p	Slant range to target at future position (T_p).
D_o	Slant range to targe at present position (T_o).
ϵ_p	Angular height of target at future position (T_p).
ϵ_o	Angular height of target at present postion (T_o).
H	Altitude of target.
ϕ	Quadrant elevation.
ϕ_s	Superelevation under firing table conditions.
ϕ_{sa}	Superelevation under actual conditions.
R_p	Horizontal range to target at future position (T_p).
R_o	Horizontal range to target at present position (T_o).
S_g	Ground speed of target.
$S_g \times t_p$	Linear travel of target in horizontal plane during time of flight.
σ_1	Principal vertical deflection angle.
σ_2	Vertical pointing correction.
σ_{2a}	Vertical adjustment correction (arbitrary).
σ_{2d}	Vertical pointing correction due to density.
σ_{2v}	Vertical pointing correction due to muzzle velocity.
σ_{2w}	Vertical pointing correction due to range wind.
T_p	Predicted position of target (future position).
T_o	Present position of target (instant of firing).
t_p	Time of flight to future position of target (T_p).

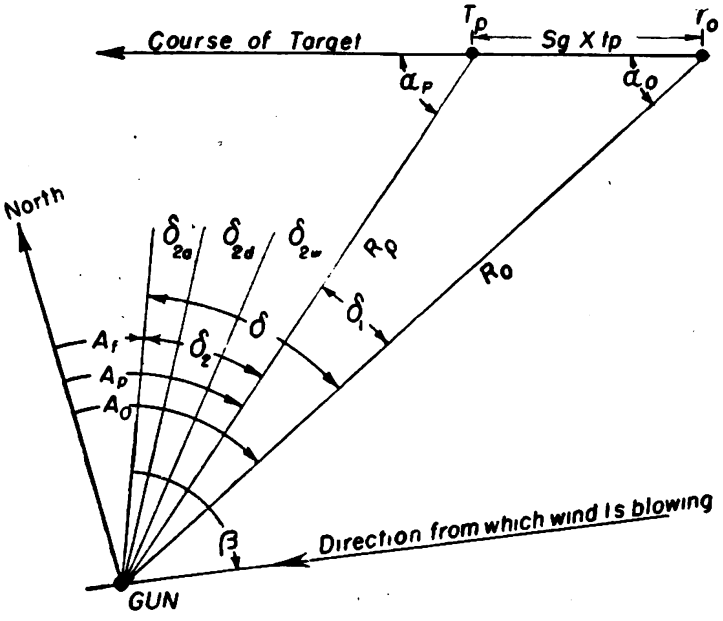
FIGURE 145.—Elements of data, angular travel method (vertical projection).

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Base line.—A line of known length and direction between the primary (battery) and one of the secondary (flank) observation or spotting stations, the position of which with respect to the battery is known. The base line is called right-handed or left-handed, depending on whether the secondary station is to the right or left of the primary station from the point of view of a person facing the field of fire.

Base piece.—*See* Directing point.

Bore.—The interior of a cannon forward of the front face of the breechblock (or bolt). The length of the bore is the distance from the front face of the breechblock proper to the muzzle, measured along the axis of the bore.



HORIZONTAL PROJECTION

A_p	Azimuth of target at future position (T_p).
A_o	Azimuth of target at present position (T_o).
A_f	Firing azimuth.
α_p	Angle of approach at future position (T_p).
α_o	Angle of approach at present position (T_o).
β	Wind-fire angle.
δ	Lateral deflection angle.
δ_1	Principal lateral deflection angle.
δ_2	Lateral pointing correction.
δ_{2a}	Lateral adjustment correction (arbitrary).
δ_{2d}	Lateral pointing correction due to drift.
δ_{2w}	Lateral pointing correction due to cross wind.
R_p	Horizontal range to target at future position (T_p).
R_o	Horizontal range to target at present position (T_o).
S_g	Ground speed of target.
$S_g \times t_p$	Linear travel of target in horizontal plane during time of flight.
T_p	Predicted position of target (future position).
T_o	Present position of target (instant of firing).
t_p	Time of flight to future position of target (T_p).

FIGURE 146.—Elements of data, angular travel method (horizontal projection).

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Center of burst.—The mean position in space of a series of bursts.

Dead time.—The time necessary to compute and utilize an element of the firing data.

Deflection.—The angular amount by which the gun must lead the target at the instant of firing in order to hit the target.

Degree.—A unit of angular measure; a circle is divided into 360 equal parts or degrees.

Deviation.—The angular or linear displacement of a point of burst, center of burst, or center of a cone of fire from the target or adjusting point.

Directing point.—A point in or near a battery for which the firing data are determined. If a gun of the battery is the directing point, it is called the base piece or directing gun.

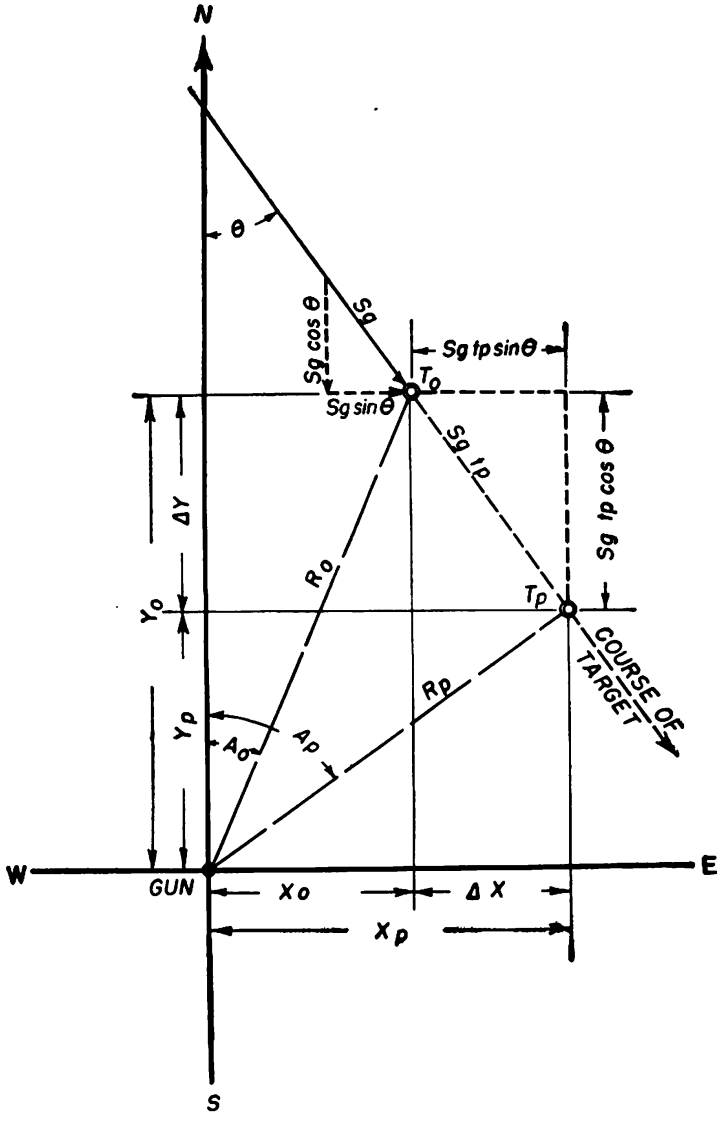


FIGURE 147.—Elements of data, linear speed method (horizontal projection).
(See reference on opposite page.)

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Dispersion.—The scattering of shots fired with the same data.

Displacement.—The distance from one point to another point. Gun displacement is the horizontal distance in yards from the pintle center of the gun to the directing point or directing gun of the battery.

Drift.—The departure of a projectile from the vertical plane in which it is fired, caused by the rotation of the projectile and the resistance of the air. In the United States service, drift is always to the right.

Firing data.—All data necessary to give a gun the proper elevation, direction, and fuze setting for firing at a given target.

Fuze.—A device attached to a projectile which controls the time of burst of the projectile.

Fuze range.—The fuze setting necessary to produce a burst at the desired point along the trajectory.

Ground speed.—The speed or linear velocity of the target with reference to the ground. The ground speed of the target is its air speed plus or minus the effect of the wind.

Gunner's quadrant.—An instrument used on the quadrant seat of a cannon to measure the vertical angle between the axis of the bore and the horizontal.

Lateral deflection.—The horizontal angle value which allows for the lateral travel of the target during the time of flight and for lateral pointing corrections. It is the angle between the vertical plane of present position and the axis of the bore when the gun is laid.

Laying.—*See* Pointing.

Leveling.—The process of adjusting a gun and mount or any fire-

---

A_o	Azimuth of target at present position (T_o).
A_p	Azimuth of target at future position (T_p).
ΔX or $S_g \times t_p \sin \Theta$	East-west component of travel of target during time of flight of projectile.
ΔY or $S_g \times t_p \cos \Theta$	North-south component of travel of target during time of flight of projectile.
R_o	Horizontal range to target at present position (T_o).
R_p	Horizontal range to target at future position (T_p).
S_g	Ground speed of target.
$S_g \cos \Theta$ or N–S rate	North-south component of ground speed of target.
$S_g \sin \Theta$ or E–W rate	East-west component of ground speed of target.
$S_g \times t_p$	Linear travel of target in horizontal plane during time of flight.
Θ	Angle between vertical planes containing course of target and north-south axis of data computor. (Never greater than 90°.)
T_o	Present position of target at instant of firing.
T_p	Future or predicted position of target.
t_p	Time of flight to future position of target.
X_o	East-west component of horizontal range to present position.
X_p	East-west component of horizontal range to future position.
Y_o	North-south component of horizontal range to present position.
Y_p	North-south component of horizontal range to future position.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

control or observation instrument, so that all horizontal or vertical angles will be measured or applied in truly horizontal or vertical planes.

Linear speed method.—A method of determining firing data based upon linear speed of the target.

Line of position.—The line of position of a point is the straight line connecting the origin with that point. Also called the "line of site." The point of origin is usually the gun or a position-finding instrument.

Mil.—A unit of angular measure, commonly used in gunnery. There are 6,400 mils in a circle, or 1,600 in a right angle. A mil is approximately the angle subtended by 1 yard at a distance of 1,000 yards.

Orientation.—The establishment of true horizontal directions. Guns and instruments are said to be oriented when they are so leveled and adjusted that they will read correct azimuth or point in the right direction when an azimuth is set on them. A map is oriented when the meridian shown on the map is pointing towards north on the ground.

Parallax.—The difference in azimuth or direction of a point as viewed from two other points.

Plane of fire.—The vertical plane containing the axis of the bore when the gun is ready to fire.

Plane of position.—A vertical plane containing a line of position.

Pointing.—The operation of giving a piece a designated elevation and a direction for firing. When a sight is used to perform either of these operations it is called aiming; if a sight is not used, the method is called laying.

Pointing corrections.—That part of either the lateral or vertical deflection which corrects for factors other than the travel of the target, such as wind, drift, and density and muzzle velocity as they apply. It includes adjustment corrections.

Position finding.—The process of determining the present and future positions of a target (range and direction) for the purpose of directing fire upon it.

Positions of the target.—Two positions of the target are considered. They are: Position of target at instant of firing or present position (T-sub-o); position of target as predicted (T-sub-p). This is the predicted position of the target at the end of the predicted time of flight. There is a corresponding value of angular height, slant range, and horizontal range for each position.

Predicting.—The process of determining the expected position of the target at some future time.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Quadrant elevation.—The vertical angle between the horizontal and the axis of the bore when the gun is ready to fire.

Sense.—The direction of a point of impact (burst), center of impact (burst), or center of a cone of fire with respect to the target; as, over or short, right or left, above or below.

Slant range.—The distance from the origin (usually a gun or position-finding instrument) to the target along the line of position.

Spotting.—The process of determining from observation the position of a burst or of the center of a cone of fire with respect to a target or adjusting point.

Superelevation.—That part of the quadrant elevation which allows for the curvature of the trajectory.

Symbols.—Letters used to represent certain elements of firing data, angles, or position of the target. For example: ϵ represents angular height; ϕ, quadrant elevation; H, altitude; F, fuze range; and R, horizontal range.

Time of flight.—The elapsed time from the instant the projectile leaves the bore to the instant of impact (burst).

Trajectory.—The curve described by the center of gravity of a projectile in its flight.

Trial fire.—Deliberate fire at a point in space to determine corrections for firing data. Normally five rounds are fired, all from the same gun.

Trial shot point.—A point in the field of fire, visible from observation stations, at which trial shots are fired.

Vertical deflection.—That vertical angle which must be added or subtracted from the present angular height to allow for the vertical travel of the target during the time of flight and for vertical pointing corrections.

Wind fire angle.—The horizontal angle, measured clockwise from the plane of fire to the direction from which the ballistic wind is blowing.

Q. Draw a figure (vertical projection) and indicate the following:

Present position. Vertical deflection. Altitude.
Future position. Superelevation.
Present angular height. Quadrant elevation.

A. (Practical demonstration.)

Q. Draw a figure (horizontal projection) and indicate the following:

Present horizontal range. Lateral deflection. Wind fire angle.
Present azimuth. Angle of approach.

A. (Practical demonstration.)

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

143. Searchlights and sound locators.—The following definitions pertain to searchlights and sound locators:

Ampere.—A unit for measuring the quantity of an electric current.

Apparent sound source.—The position from which the sound of a target seems to come.

Arc.—The luminous flame occurring between the two electrodes (carbons) of a searchlight when connected to a source of electricity.

Circuit.—The entire path of an electric current from its source back to the same source. When it is completed so that current will flow it is said to be closed; when it is interrupted so current stops it is said to be broken or open.

Control, distant.—A system, electrically operated, by which the pointing of searchlights may be controlled from a distance. The system includes a controller at the control station, the necessary electrical circuits, and the necessary motors at the searchlights.

Control station.—A device which permits the searchlight to be pointed in elevation and azimuth from a distant point. The station consists of a distant electric controller and a zero reader mounted on a tripod.

Current, electric.—The flow of electricity along a conductor, which is like the flow of water through a pipe. The pressure which causes the current to flow is called "electromotive force (EMF), potential, or voltage." The amount of current that flows is measured in amperes.

Data.—All information necessary for pointing a searchlight at a given objective.

Electrode.—Either of the two carbons, positive and negative, across which the arc is formed in a searchlight.

Focus.—To move the light source in a searchlight with reference to the focal point of the reflector.

Focal point.—The position of the arc at the proper distance from the mirror so that the light rays are properly reflected parallel to each other as a compact beam.

Illumination.—The lighting of a target by a searchlight beam directed and held on the target. A momentary catching of the target in the beam is called a flick.

Occulter.—A shutter for hiding the beam of a searchlight, so that it cannot be seen and located by an enemy when the beam is not needed.

Orientation.—As applied to a searchlight, adjusting the searchlight and sound locator so both will point in the same (parallel) direction when a certain azimuth is set on both.

Parabolic.—The shape of the searchlight mirror which causes light

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

from a source at the focal point of the mirror to be reflected in parallel rays.

Prediction data.—The azimuth and elevation which the searchlight receives from the sound locator after they have been corrected by the acoustic corrector.

Sound.—The vibrations of a sounding body, which set up sound waves, by which the sound is carried to the ear. Sound requires a noticeable time to travel through the air (1,100 feet per second).

Sound lag.—The angular difference between the actual (present) position of the target and the apparent position as indicated by sound.

Sound lag corrections.—The corrections applied to the azimuth and elevation to take care of sound lag.

True sound source.—The actual azimuth and elevation of the sound source at the instant the sound is produced.

Terminal voltage.—The voltage of the electrical current at the electrodes in the searchlight.

Velocity of sound.—Sound travels very slowly—at a rate of about 1,100 feet per second.

Volt.—A unit for measuring the potential of an electric current. (*See* Current, electric.)

Wind drift.—The effect of wind on the sound waves which changes their direction and increases or decreases sound lag.

Zero reader.—A device for indicating when the searchlight is properly pointed on corrected sound locator data.

144. Supply and ammunition.—The following definitions pertain to supply and ammunition:

Ammunition train.—A train organized particularly for supply of ammunition for the battalion.

Classes of supplies.—Supplies are divided into classes:

Class I.—Rations and items required daily, irrespective of operations.

Class II.—Individual and organizational equipment as established by Tables of Organization and Tables of Allowances, such as clothing and gas masks.

Class III.—Engine fuels and lubricants, including gasoline for all vehicles and aircraft, Diesel oil, fuel oil, and coal.

Class IV.—Exceptional items not covered in Tables of Allowances, such as construction materials and machinery.

Class V.—Ammunition, including chemicals.

Distributing point.—A place, other than a depot or a railhead, where supplies are issued to regiments and smaller units.

Dump.—A place for the temporary storage of supplies. Dumps may be specially named, depending on the kind of supplies they contain,

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

as: ammunition dump, ration dump, and engineer dump. When supplies are issued from a dump, it becomes a distributing point.

Memorandum receipt.—A receipt given to the supply officer by the person drawing supplies from him or a receipt given by the supply officer to the person returning supplies to him.

Railhead.—A supply point where loads are transferred from rail transportation to organization trains.

Ration.—The allowance of food for one man or one animal for 1 day. There are several classes of rations, according to the conditions of service, as garrison, field, and emergency.

Requisition.—A request for supplies to a higher commander, which, when approved by him, is an order for issue of supplies by the proper supply department to the supply officer of the unit which submitted the requisition.

Shipping ticket.—A form which accompanies a shipment of supplies to a supply officer and which he must sign and return to the shipping officer to accomplish transfer of accountability.

Train.—That portion of a unit's transportation, including personnel, operating under the immediate orders of the unit commander, primarily for supply, evacuation, and maintenance.

Unit of fire.—The quantity in rounds or tons of ammunition, bombs, grenades, and pyrotechnics which a designated organization or weapon may be expected to expend, on the average, in 1 day of combat.

SECTION III

ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF ELECTRICITY, MAGNETISM, AND INDUCTION

Paragraph
Electricity 145
Magnetism and induction 146

145. Electricity.—*Q.* What is the term by which we designate the pressure that causes a current of electricity to flow? *A.* It is called electromotive force, potential or, more commonly, voltage.

Q. What is a volt? *A.* The unit for measuring electromotive force.

Q. What is an ampere? *A.* The unit for measuring the magnitude (amount) of an electric current.

Q. What is resistance? What is the unit of resistance? *A.* Resistance is the opposition offered by a conductor to the flow of an electric current. The unit of resistance is the ohm.

Q. What is Ohm's law? *A.* The electric current in a conductor equals the voltage applied to the conductor divided by the resistance of the conductor.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What are three simple formulas by which Ohm's law may be expressed? *A.*

(1) $\text{Amperes}=\frac{\text{volts}}{\text{ohms}}$ $\left\{I=\frac{E}{R}\right\}$.

(2) Volts=amperes×ohms (E=IR).

(3) $\text{Ohms}=\frac{\text{volts}}{\text{amperes}}$ $\left\{R=\frac{E}{I}\right\}$.

Q. What are the common sources of electrical power? *A.* Batteries, generators, and magnetos.

Q. What are the two principle types of batteries? *A.* Storage (wet) batteries and dry batteries.

Q. What is a conductor? *A.* Any substance offering very little resistance to the flow of electric current is known as a conductor.

Q. What is insulation? *A.* Insulation is any substance that restricts or prevents the flow of an electric current. Rubber, porcelain, enamels, linen, and paper are used extensively for insulation.

Q. What is an insulated conductor? *A.* A conductor covered with insulation to prevent grounds or short circuits.

Q. What is direct current? *A.* A current flowing constantly in one direction.

Q. What is alternating current? *A.* A current flowing first in one direction, then in the opposite direction, changing direction many times every second.

Q. What is a cycle? *A.* A complete change or alteration from a current in one direction to the opposite direction and back to the original direction, is known as a "cycle." The "frequency" of an alternating current means the number of cycles that occur in a second, as 25 (sometimes employed on power lines) or 60 (commonly employed).

Q. What is a circuit? *A.* A circuit is the complete path through which current can flow, including the source of power, the conductors, and electrical devices such as lamps, bells, or motors.

Q. What is a closed circuit? *A.* A continuous path with a return to the source of power.

Q. What is an open circuit? *A.* An incomplete or broken circuit in which no current can flow.

Q. What is a switch? *A.* A mechanical means by which an electric circuit is closed or opened.

Q. What kind of current is obtained from a battery? *A.* Direct current only.

Q. What are the poles or terminals of a battery? *A.* The two connections between the battery and its circuit. They are known as the positive (+) and negative (−) poles. The positive pole is that

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

from which the electrical current flows out of the battery, and the negative pole the one by which it returns again to the battery.

Q. Which is the positive and which the negative pole of a dry cell? *A.* The carbon is the positive pole and the zinc is the negative pole.

Q. What is the voltage of a dry cell? *A.* About 1½ volts.

Q. What is the voltage of one cell of a storage battery? *A.* About 2 volts.

Q. What is meant by the expression "in series"? Show how to connect a battery in series. *A.* (See fig. 148, upper.) The cells of a battery are said to be in series when the positive terminal of each cell is connected to the negative terminal of the next cell. The cells are thus in tandem, the entire current generated by all of them passing through each cell.

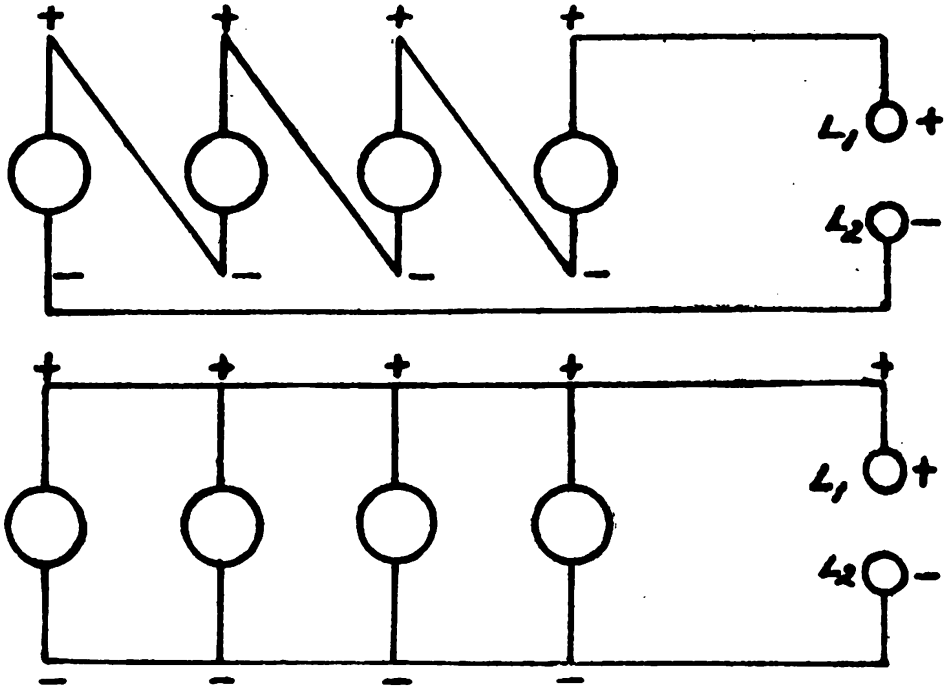


FIGURE 148.—Upper: Batteries connected in series. Lower: Batteries connected in parallel or multiple.

Q. What is the voltage of a battery with the cells connected in series? *A.* The sum of the voltages of the separate cells. Thus, if each cell has a voltage of 2, a battery of 4 cells connected in series has a voltage of $(2\times4)8$.

Q. What is the current of a battery with the cells connected in series? *A.* The average current of the separate cells of a battery. Thus, if each cell produces a current of 20 amperes, a battery of 4 cells connected in series will also produce a current of 20 amperes.

Q. Assume that each of the cells in figure 148, upper, is a dry cell with a voltage of 1½ volts. What is the voltage of the combination?

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

A. The electromotive force or voltage of the combination of cells will be 6 volts ($4 \times 1\frac{1}{2}$).

Q. What is meant by the expression "in parallel" or "in multiple"? Show how to connect four batteries in parallel. *A.* (See fig. 148, lower.) Batteries are said to be in parallel when all their positive terminals are connected to a common point (L_1), and all their negative terminals to another point (L_2). The batteries are thus abreast, a portion only of the resultant current passing through each battery.

Q. What is the voltage of a battery with the cells connected in parallel? *A.* The average voltage of the separate cells of the battery. Thus, if the voltage of each cell is 2, a battery of 4 cells connected in parallel will also have a voltage of 2.

Q. What current will be obtained from a battery with the cells connected in parallel? *A.* The sum of the currents of the undivided cells. Thus, if each cell produces a current of 20 amperes, a battery of 4 cells connected in parallel will produce a current of (4×20)80 amperes.

Q. Assume that each of the cells in figure 148, lower, is a dry cell with a voltage of $1\frac{1}{2}$ volts. What is the voltage of the combination? *A.* The electromotive force or voltage of the combination of cells will be $1\frac{1}{2}$ volts.

Q. How is the capacity of a storage battery stated? *A.* In ampere hours.

Q. What is an ampere hour? *A.* A steady current of 1 ampere flowing for 1 hour.

Q. What is meant by saying that a battery has a capacity of 60 ampere hours? *A.* It means that it can furnish 60 amperes for 1 hour or 1 ampere for 60 hours.

Q. What is electrolyte? *A.* The fluid content of a wet (storage) battery.

Q. What care is necessary to preserve a storage battery? *A.*

(1) Refill the battery with distilled water so that the plates are always covered with electrolyte.

(2) Never allow the battery to discharge fully.

(3) Do not add sulfuric acid to the battery.

(4) Keep battery always in an upright position.

(5) Never leave a battery connected when current is not required.

(6) Keep battery fully charged as much as possible.

(7) Handle the battery with care to prevent breaking the container.

(8) Treat terminals with vaseline or grease to prevent corrosion.

(9) Keep battery, battery room, and all accessories clean.

Q. Why is it necessary to use distilled water in a storage battery? *A.* Because ordinary water usually contains minerals, which are acted

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

upon by the acid and form combinations which soon render the battery useless.

Q. How is it determined whether a storage battery is charged or discharged? *A*. By measuring the specific gravity of the electrolyte (liquid) with a hydrometer. When fully charged the specific gravity is 1,280, when fully discharged 1,150. A battery should never be discharged so that its specific gravity is below 1,200.

Q. What is the meaning of the term specific gravity as applied to an electrolyte? *A*. It means the weight of the fluid as compared to the weight of an equal volume of water. The specific gravity of water is taken as 1,000.

146. Magnetism and induction.—*Q*. What is a permanent magnet? *A*. A bar of iron or steel which possesses the property of attracting or repelling other pieces of iron or steel.

Q. What is an electromagnet? *A*. A coil of wire through which a current is flowing. Its magnetism is increased by placing it about a core of soft iron.

Q. Explain briefly the principle of electromagnetic induction. *A*. (1) If an electric circuit is moved in the vicinity of a magnet, or if a magnet is moved in the vicinity of an electric circuit, a current of electricity is set up or induced in the circuit. This is the principle used in the generator and magneto.

(2) If two electric circuits are placed close to each other, any variation in the current passing through one circuit will set up or induce a current in the other circuit. This principle is used in the induction coil and transformer.

Q. Explain the construction of an induction coil. *A*. To construct an induction coil, two separate coils of insulated wire are wound spirally about an iron core. Each coil forms a circuit by itself. One of the coils, called the primary, consists of a relatively small number of turns of coarse wire. The other coil, called the secondary, consists of a relatively large number of turns of fine wire.

Q. Explain the operation of an induction coil. *A*. An electric current is passed through the primary coil. If this current be varied or changed in any way, either by turning it on or off, increasing or decreasing its intensity, or reversing its direction, an induced current will be set up in the secondary coil, which lasts as long as the change of current in the primary coil continues.

Q. How can the voltage in the secondary coil of an induction coil be determined? *A*. The voltage (EMF) of the current induced in the secondary coil is approximately equal to the voltage in the primary coil, multiplied by the ratio between the number of turns in the two coils. Thus if the number of turns in the primary coil is

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

8 and in the secondary coil 96, and the voltage in the primary coil is 10, the voltage of the induced current in the secondary coil will be $10 \times 96 \div 8 = 120$ volts.

Q. Will an alternating current passing through the primary coil induce a current in the secondary coil? *A.* Yes, because the voltage in the primary coil is constantly changing in direction and intensity, which is the condition necessary to induce a current in the secondary.

SECTION IV

ORGANIZATION OF A POSITION

Paragraph
Camouflage and camouflage discipline 147
Protection against sabotage and raids 148
Protection against low-flying aircraft 149
Construction of shelters 150

147. Camouflage and camouflage discipline.—*a. General.*—*Q.* What is military camouflage? *A.* Military camouflage is the art of deceiving the enemy as to the existence, nature, or extent of military works or bodies of troops.

Q. How may camouflage be effected? *A.*

(1) By simple concealment.

(2) By making an object or area blend with surrounding objects or areas.

(3) By making an object appear like something else.

(4) By avoiding regularity of form or spacing, and breaking up straight lines of artificial works.

(5) By suppressing telltale shadows.

(6) By avoiding sky-lining.

(7) By erecting dummy installations to divert attention from real objects.

(8) By avoiding noticeable changes in previous appearance of the terrain.

(9) By suppressing all signs of military activity.

Q. What points should be remembered when erecting camouflage? *A.* That not only must the position or object be camouflaged from observers on the ground, but especially from observers in the air, and most particularly it must be so camouflaged as not to appear on photographs taken from airplanes. It must be especially noted that points which the human eye may not pick up or notice often stand out most prominently on a photograph, or may be detected on a photograph by use of a magnifying glass.

Q. What are some things that betray a position, and how are they to be avoided? *A.*

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(1) *Tracks.*—Beaten tracks, or even footprints in the snow, or in a grassy field, are very noticeable on a photograph. To avoid tracks, insist that men keep to paths and do not cut the corners.

(2) *Paths.*—Keep paths close to fences, hedges, houses, and along the edges of a field if possible. Never allow a path to lead to a position and end there. Always have it lead past the position and stop in a wood, at a dummy position several hundred yards away, or join another path or a road. Have this path used as much as the real one.

(3) *Allowing men to wander about in daytime.*—They should stay under cover, to prevent detection from the air.

(4) *Camouflage which does not blend with its surroundings.*—If in a wooded area, do not camouflage a position as a house or ruins.

(5) *Regularity.*—Remember that nothing regular occurs in nature. Therefore, if using painted canvas or burlap, have jagged splotches, rather than straight lines or regular shapes and figures.

(6) *Shadows.*—Avoid regular shapes. In covering a gun with fish-net, interlace the material thinly, toward the edges, so as to break up and conceal the shadow of the net.

(7) *Changes in previous appearance of terrain.*—The enemy may be expected to take successive photographs of the terrain. Any object which might appear innocent in itself is sure to invite scrutiny if it appears on one photograph when it was not visible on a previous photograph of the same terrain. Noticeable changes must be avoided.

b. Fixed seacoast artillery.—Q. How can fixed seacoast artillery installations be made less conspicuous? *A.*

(1) By breaking up straight lines of all artificial works, such as battery emplacements and fire-control stations.

(2) By use of irregular vegetation.

(3) By use of irregularly shaped fins made of camouflage material.

(4) By dotting the smooth slopes of earthworks with shrubs to cast uneven shadows.

(5) By planting trees and arranging vegetation to prevent skylining.

(6) By use of shrubs in tubs on horizontal concrete surfaces where they will not interfere with normal battery activities.

(7) By coating matériel and concrete with a dark, neutral color. As oil paints create reflecting surfaces, an asphalt emulsion should be used.

(8) By use of nets.

Q. How should nets be used to camouflage a disappearing gun

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

battery? *A.* The nets should cover the whole space of the emplacement. On account of the blast effect they must be substantially constructed, and it must be possible to roll them back out of the way when the battery is to go into action. Small metal posts with pulley wheels or rings at the top must be secured into the concrete to carry the cable which supports the net.

Q. How should nets be used to camouflage a barbette battery without parapets? *A.* A central framework for the nets may be erected on the racer or on the ground outside. It should be readily dismountable.

c. Searchlights.—Q.[1] What steps can be taken to prevent the use by the enemy of fixed searchlights as aids to navigation in night operations? *A.*[1] Lights in widely different positions can be used in succession. No one light should be used for extended periods. It should be occulted and after it is entirely dark another light should go on in a different location.

Q.[2] How may camouflage of mobile searchlight equipment best be accomplished? *A.*[2] By concealment of the equipment in woods or buildings during daylight hours.

Q.[2] In the selection of positions for concealment of mobile searchlights, how may the creation of new tracks be avoided? *A.*[2] By selecting positions near roads and by changing positions frequently.

Q.[2] What steps can be taken to reduce the chances of an enemy locating accurately the operating positions of mobile lights? *A.*[2] Light positions can be changed from night to night.

148. Protection against sabotage and raids.—*Q.* For what purposes may attacks by hostile mechanized forces be conducted. *A.* Such attacks may be used by the enemy while conducting reconnaissance missions, on raids to destroy important installations, to harass the defense forces, to disrupt the communication system, or in support of an attack by other forces.

Q. Who is responsible for the antimechanized defense of a command? *A.* The commander of every unit is responsible for the security of his command against mechanized attacks and raids. The measures for this defense are carefully coordinated, all available means being included in the defense plan. The measures taken to provide a defense against this type of attack will depend upon the estimated ability of the enemy to conduct this type of operation.

Q. What factors should be considered in siting antimechanized weapons? *A.* These weapons are sited to defend the natural and artificial obstacles which protect a position, and primarily to cover

[1] Fixed searchlights only.
[2] Mobile searchlights only.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

likely avenues of approach. The organic automatic weapons of coast artillery units are provided primarily for defense against air attack. When employed as antimechanized weapons, positions should be selected and the guns sited to provide the maximum protection against mechanized attack. The positions so selected may not be the best positions to provide a defense against air attack. Therefore, the employment of the automatic weapons available must be given careful consideration in order to provide the best protection against the type of attack which is considered most dangerous to the defense. The plans for the defense will be coordinated by higher commanders.

Q. What are some of the requirements of a suitable position for antimechanized weapons? *A.* Good fields of fire up to 1,000 yards, possibilities of flanking fire, protection against direct mechanized attack, covered routes to the firing position, availability of alternate positions which can be occupied quickly by manhandling the gun, and nearby cover for ammunition. The position should permit shifting fire to any direction from which attack may be probable.

Q. Name three means of attaining security against hostile ground attacks and raids. *A.*

(1) Information of the enemy.
(2) Concealment.
(3) Organization of the ground.

Q. What elements of enemy information should be procured for the attainment of security against hostile ground attacks and raids? *A.* Timely, accurate, complete, and continuous information of enemy dispositions, movements, composition, strength, and capabilities.

Q. In the attainment of security against hostile ground attacks and raids, what is meant by organization of the ground? *A.* Organization of the ground includes construction or improvement of obstacles, clearing of fields of fire, selection and preparation of defensive positions, and construction of bombproof, splinterproof, and gasproof shelters.

Q. What is sabotage? *A.* Malicious destruction of or injury to property by enemy sympathizers.

Q. What acts of sabotage might be expected against seacoast artillery installations? *A.* Acts of sabotage to be expected vary from simple depredations, such as the cutting of telephone lines, to attempts at demolition of matériel.

Q. During what stages of a conflict is the danger of sabotage greatest? *A.* During the early stages.

Q. What special precautions should be taken against sabotage, and

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

to avoid surprise by raiding parties? *A.* Such precautions should include—

(1) Continuous effective employment of the intelligence agencies and the communication systems of the command.

(2) Effective patrolling to cover bridges, causeways, swamp crossings, roads and trails, and other avenues of approach to forts, batteries, bivouacs, and other installations.

(3) Constant vigilance maintained at remote base-end stations, and searchlights, mining casemates, power plants, cable huts, switchboard rooms, and storehouses. Installations should, where necessary, be surrounded by barbed wire entanglements.

(4) Protection of closely grouped installations by interior guards.

(5) With reference to beach defense they should include—

(*a*) Patrols on adjacent beaches, if not protected by the outpost forces of the other arms which have been charged with the responsibility for this protection.

(*b*) Preparations for close defense of batteries and installations, including defense against troops transported by air, regardless of whether or not supporting troops of the other arms are present.

(*c*) Underwater listening devices.

(*d*) Small boat patrols equipped with means of radio and visual signal communication.

149. Protection against low-flying aircraft.—*Q.* What types of attack may be delivered by low-flying aircraft against harbor defense personnel and matériel? *A.* Attacks by light and dive bombardment, or equivalent naval aviation, employing demolition and fragmentation bombs, all types of aircraft automatic weapons, and gas.

Q. What active means of defense available to the ground forces are most effective against this type of attack? *A.* The antiaircraft automatic weapons.

Q. What passive means are most effective against this type of attack? *A.* Adequate cover, concealment, dispersion, and individual and collective gas protection.

Q. How are the personnel warned of an impending attack? *A.* By individual and collective alertness, and the use of suitable sound-making devices such as sirens, gongs, and whistles.

Q. How is such an attack met? *A.* All available automatic weapons should be set up to protect the position, and should be manned as soon as the alarm is given. Maximum use is made of all small arms available. Personnel not engaged in firing should scatter and make full use of available cover and concealment.

150. Construction of shelters.—*Q.* What is a shelter? *A.* A shelter is any cover, natural or artificial, that protects troops, am-

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

munition, and supplies from fire, including gas and aerial bombs.

Q. Should large quantities of ammunition be stored in one shelter? *A.* No. It is preferable to have several shelters in order to limit the damage that may result from a single hit.

Q. Against what kind of shells should artillery troops be protected? *A.* High-explosive shells, gas shells, and bombs dropped from airplanes.

Q. How are shelters classified according to their depth? *A.*

(1) Surface shelters, constructed above ground.

(2) Cut-and-cover shelters, made by digging an open pit which is then provided with overhead cover, usually extending above the surface.

(3) Cave shelters, which are subterranean chambers protected by the undisturbed earth above them.

Q. What determines the type and strength of shelter to be constructed? *A.* The terrain, the time and material available, the amount of protection required, and the probable length of time the position will be occupied.

Q. If the position is liable to come under fire of guns of 5-inch caliber and above, what type of shelters should be provided? *A.* Cut-and-cover or cave shelters.

Q. Which type of shelter requires the greatest amount of concealment? *A.* Surface, cut-and-cover, and cave, in the order named.

Q. How near should shelters be to the gun positions? *A.* Just as near as possible, consistent with safety and concealment (usually not over 100 yards). The purpose of shelters is to afford the troops protection close to their combat positions.

Q. Mention some other requirements for shelters. *A.* They should have at least two exits, proper drainage and ventilation, and protection against gas.

Q. How are shelters protected against gas? *A.* By placing a curtain of canvas, blanket, or other suitable material, weighted at the bottom, across each entrance. If it is possible, a gas trap or lock should be made by means of a short passageway into the shelter with a gas curtain at the inner end and another at the outer end of the passageway.

Q. What precautions should be taken in using old shelters? *A.* Inspect them carefully to be certain there is no gas in them.

Q. Are large or small shelters preferable? *A.* From a tactical point of view several small shelters are preferable to one large one, as they permit troops to get out to their positions more quickly.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

SECTION V

MAP READING

Paragraph
Scales, contours, and conventional signs 151
Location of position by coordinates 152
Following route indicated on map 153
Data as to roads, bridges, fords, grades, and swamps 154

151. Scales, contours, and conventional signs.—*Q.* What is a map? *A.* A map is a picture of an area of ground, showing certain important features accurately to scale.

Q. Do the features shown on a map appear as they do on the ground? *A.* No. They are represented by symbols called conventional signs, which resemble the actual features as nearly as practicable.

Q. What is a topographical map? *A.* One which (according to its scale) shows all the natural and artificial features of the terrain, such as hills, valleys, streams, woods, roads, towns, houses, and bridges.

Q. What is a military map? *A.* A military map is one which shows particularly those features, and conveys that information, which are important for military purposes.

Q. What is meant by map reading? *A.* Map reading is the art of understanding the information given by the map.

Q. What is meant by the scale of a map? *A.* The scale of a map is the relation between any distance shown on the map and the corresponding distance on the ground. It is always the same for any one map.

Q. How is the scale of a map indicated or expressed? *A.*

(1) As a representative fraction (R. F.), such as 1/5000 (or 1:5,000), which means that any distance on the map is 1/5000 of the corresponding distance on the ground. The R. F. is always expressed with a numerator of unity. The R. F. is always the ratio of a map distance to the actual or ground distance it represents. For example, if 2 inches on the map represent 10 miles on the ground, we can at once express the relation thus:

$$\frac{\text{Map distance}}{\text{Ground distance}} = \frac{2 \text{ inches}}{10 \text{ miles}}$$

We must then reduce the numerator and denominator to the same unit, and then reduce the numerator to unity to get the R. F., as follows:

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

$$\frac{2 \text{ inches}}{10 \text{ miles}} = \frac{2 \text{ inches}}{10 \text{ miles} \times 5{,}280 \text{ feet} \times 12 \text{ inches}}$$

$$= \frac{2 \text{ inches}}{633{,}600 \text{ inches}} = \frac{1}{316{,}800} = \text{R. F.}$$

(2) In words and figures, such as 6 inches=1 mile, meaning that 6 inches on the map represents 1 mile on the ground. From this we can easily get the R. F., thus:

$$\frac{6 \text{ inches}}{1 \text{ mile}} = \frac{6 \text{ inches}}{1 \text{ mile} \times 5{,}280 \text{ feet} \times 12 \text{ inches}}$$

$$= \frac{6 \text{ inches}}{63{,}360 \text{ inches}} = \frac{1}{10{,}560} = \text{R. F.}$$

(3) By a graphical scale drawn on the map, which shows ground distances in their usual units, such as miles, thousands of yards, or hundreds of feet, as they appear on the map. A graphical scale is easily made if we know the R. F. of the map. Thus suppose the R. F. is 1:5,000 and we wish a graphical scale to read to 1,000 yards. Since any distance on the map is 1/5000 of the same distance on the ground, 1,000 yards on the map will be as follows:

$$\frac{1{,}000 \text{ yards}}{5{,}000} = \frac{1 \text{ yard}}{5} = 0.2 \text{ yard} = 0.2 \text{ yard} \times 36 \text{ inches} = 7.2 \text{ inches},$$

that is, one 1,000-yard division of our scale will be 7.2 inches long. This can be divided into 10 equal parts, each of which will represent 100 yards. (See fig. 151 for examples of graphical scales).

Q. Why do we have maps of different scales? *A.* The scale of a map must be large enough to show the particular features about which we need information. Thus, a map showing the positions of all buildings and streets in a town must be of much larger scale than a map intended only to show the size and positions of the various counties in a State. A small-scale map is one which shows a large area in a small space. Thus 1 inch=100 miles would be a very small scale map on which very little detail could be shown. A map on a scale of 1 inch=25 feet would be a very large-scale map on which individual trees could be shown in their exact positions. The first map could be used by a general planning a large campaign, the second by an architect laying out a plan of a house and grounds.

Q. What determines the proper scale of a map? *A.* It should be just large enough to show the detail necessary to serve the purpose for which it is to be used.

Q. How do you determine direction on a map? *A.* By referring to an arrow on the map which points due north. It is called the meridian.

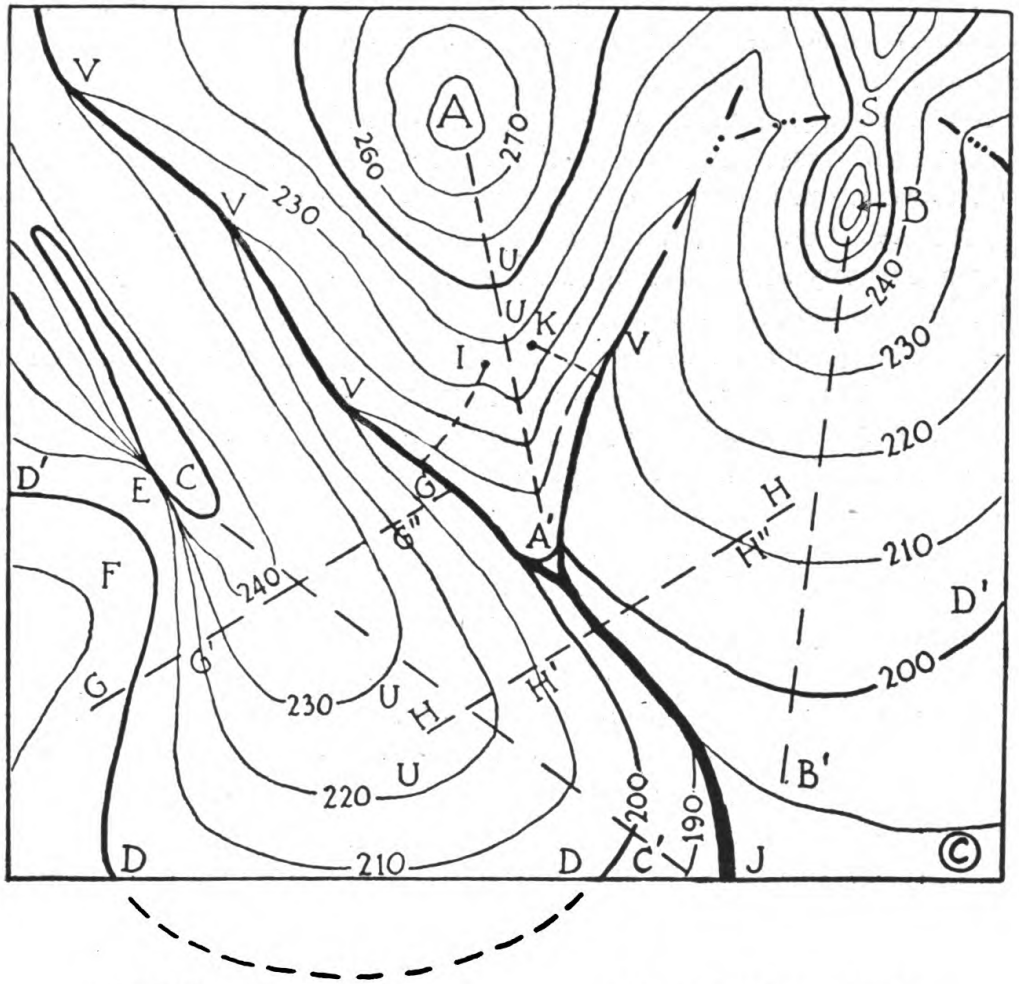
Q. How is direction measured and indicated on a map? *A.* By

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

azimuth as in gunnery. Azimuth on a map is measured from the north point of the meridian, clockwise around the horizon. It is measured in degrees, minutes, and seconds, or in mils.

Q. What are the cardinal points of direction, and what are their azimuths? *A.* North, east, south, and west. Moving clockwise around the horizon: north, the origin, is azimuth 0°; east is azimuth 90°; south is azimuth 180°; west is azimuth 270°.



A, B. Hilltops or peaks.
C. Ridge.
DD. Contours close on themselves.
E. Cliff.
AA′. Uniform slope.
BB′. Concave slope.
CC′. Convex slope.
IG. Line of steepest slope.
B. Steep slope.
B′. Gentle slope.
S. Saddle.
UU. Hill contours.
VV. Valley contours.
A′. Stream junction.

FIGURE 149.—Typical ground forms as shown by contours.

Q. What is meant by orienting a map? *A.* Placing the map in such a position that the meridian or arrow on the map points to north on the ground. Every line on the map will then be parallel to the line on the ground which it represents, and all the features on the map will

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

be in the same relative positions as the actual objects on the ground.

Q. What is elevation? *A.* The elevation of any point is its vertical height in feet above some level, usually sea level.

Q. How is elevation indicated on a map on a flat piece of paper? *A.* By means of contours.

Q. What is a contour? *A.* An irregular line joining all points at the same elevation. A contour is thus a level or horizontal line.

Q. How are contours separated vertically? *A.* By some definite interval, such as 5, 10, 20, 50, or 100 feet, depending on the scale of the map and the nature of the ground. This constant interval is known as the "vertical interval" or "contour interval" of the map. Certain contours are numbered with their height (in feet) above sea level.

Q. Do contours show the ground forms, such as hills, valleys, and ridges? *A.* Yes. When one has become familiar with them, they show accurately all the forms of nature.

Q. Mention briefly the principal characteristics of contours. *A.*

(1) A contour is a horizontal line joining points of equal elevation.

(2) Contours are spread at uniform vertical intervals.

(3) Every contour is a continuous closed curve. (It may not close within the limits of the map.)

(4) There may be any number of separate contours of the same elevation.

(5) A small, closed contour indicates either a hilltop or a depression.

(6) Contours never touch or cross each other except in the case of a vertical or overhanging cliff.

(7) Contours are at right angles to the lines of steepest slope.

(8) The horizontal spacing of contours indicates the degree of slope—steep if they are close together, gentle if they are far apart. They also indicate the kind of slope—uniform, concave, or convex.

(9) Valley contours are usually V-shaped, and hill or ridge contours U-shaped.

(10) Adjacent contours resemble each other.

Q. How is the elevation of a point between two contours determined? *A.* By its relative distance from the contours on either side. Thus in figure 151, the elevation of the number "46" is about 527 feet.

Q. Point out the characteristic ground forms in figure 149 and explain how they are shown by the contours. *A.* (See fig. 149.)

Q. What is a slope? *A.* The inclination of ground to the horizontal. The slope of a road is called its grade.

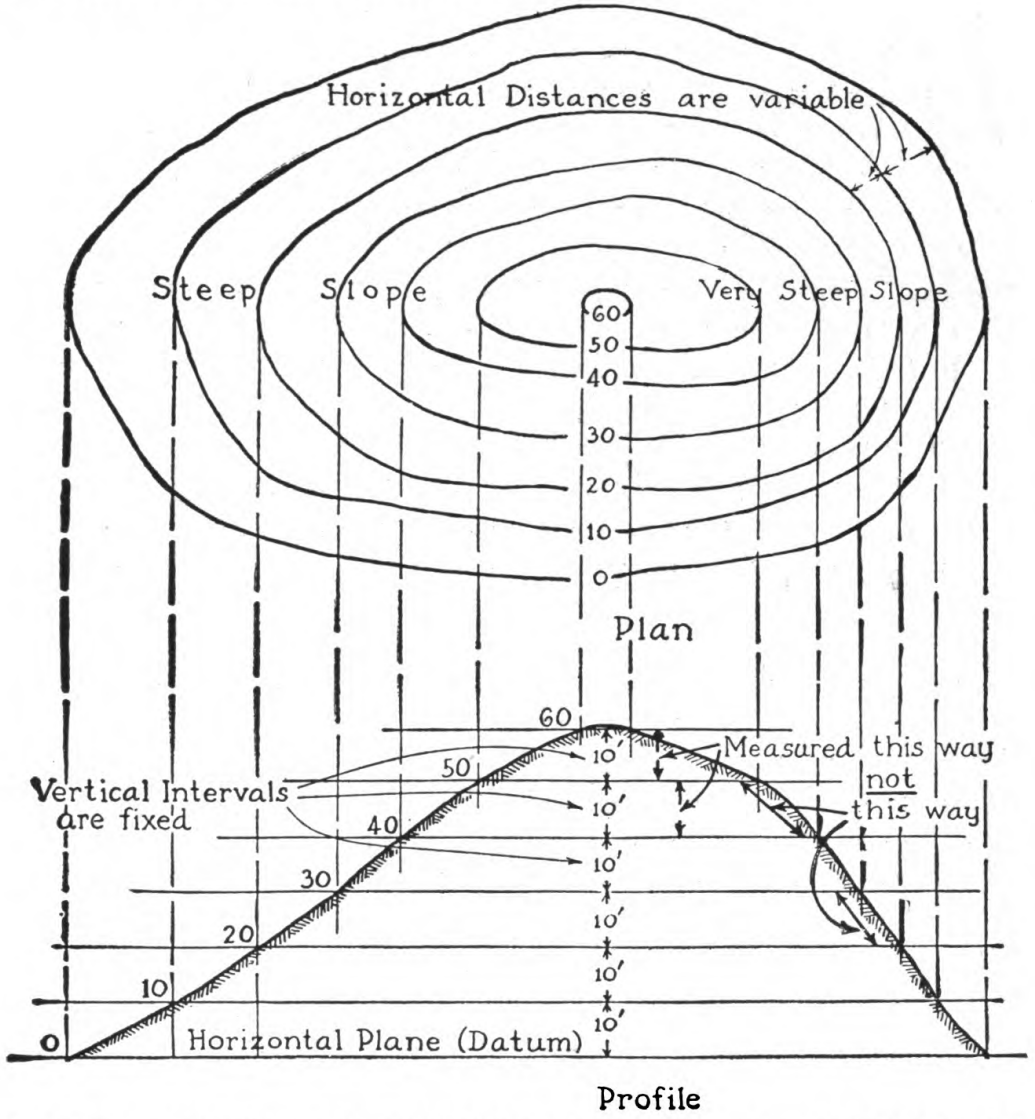
Q. How can you determine the average grade of a length of road from a contoured map? *A.* Measure the horizontal distance along the road in feet, using the scale of the map. Find from the contours the difference in elevation between the two ends. The difference in

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

elevation of the two ends, divided by the length of the road (both in feet), will give the average grade in percent.

Q. How is a steep grade indicated on a map? *A.* By contours close together, showing a considerable change of elevation in a short distance.

Q. What is a profile? *A.* It is a section of the ground as it would appear if it were sliced vertically with a huge knife.



The contours are the lines that would be left on the ground by successive horizontal slices, 10 feet thick.

FIGURE 150.—Plan and profile of a hill.

Q. Give a simple method of making a profile. *A.* To make a profile of the hill shown in figure 150, along the line of the words "Steep slope," and "Very steep slope," draw a number of parallel lines at uniform intervals, as in the lower figure, numbering them at 10-foot

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

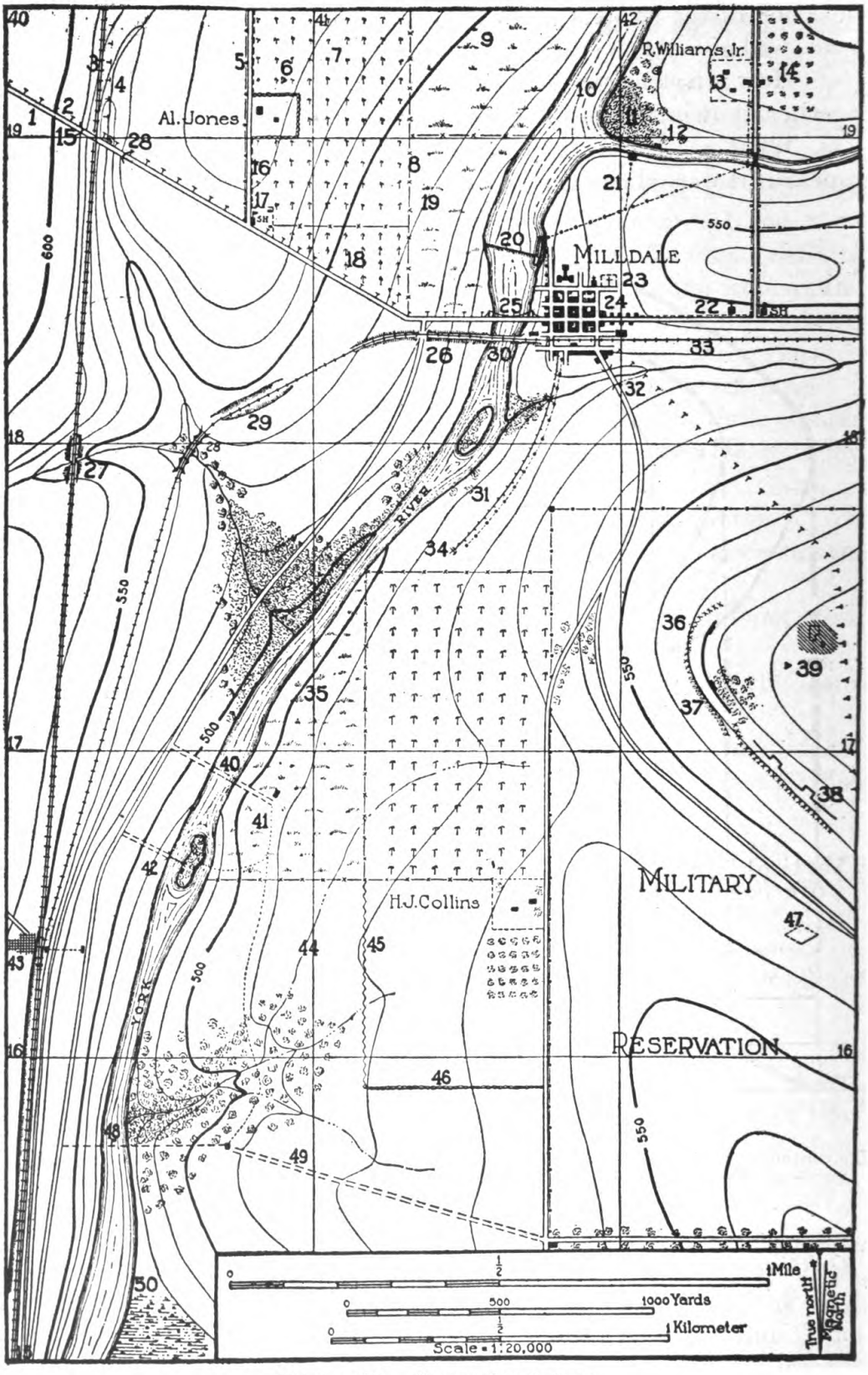


FIGURE 151.—Conventional signs.

(See keys on opposite page.)

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Numerical key

1. Good motor road.
2. Telephone or telegraph line.
3. Double-track standard-gage railroad.
4. Stream or creek (blue on a four-color map).
5. Fence, smooth wire.
6. Triangulation point or primary traverse station.
7. Cornfield.
8. Fence, barbed wire.
9. Tall tropical grass.
10. River (blue on a four-color map).
11. Woodland (deciduous trees).
12. Lone trees.
13. Buildings in general.
14. Orchard.
15. Railroad crossings, railroad beneath.
16. Fence of any kind (or board fence).
17. Schoolhouse.
18. Cultivated field, sugarcane.
19. Grassland in general.
20. Dam.
21. Electric power transmission line.
22. Church.
23. Cemetery.
24. City, town, or village.
25. Bridge, suspension.
26. Railroad crossing, railroad above.
27. Fill.
28. Bridge, steel.
29. Cut, railroad.
30. Bridge, truss, for standard-gage railroad.
31. Narrow-gage railroad.
32. Bridge, highway.
33. Railroad, single-track, standard-gage.
34. Mine or quarry of any kind (or open cut).
35. Pasture or grassland in general.
36. Wire entanglement.
37. Low or concealed entanglement.
38. Trenches (dotted when proposed).
39. Demolitions.
40. Ford, general symbol for vehicle ford.
41. Good pack trail or footpath.
42. Bridge, foot.
43. City, town, or village (generalized).
44. Intermittent stream.
45. Worm fence.
46. Stone fence.
47. Tank trap.
48. Equestrian ford.
49. Road, poor motor or private.
50. Marsh in general.

Alphabetical key

Bridge, foot	42
Bridge, highway	32
Bridge, highway, made of steel	28
Bridge, suspension	25
Bridge, truss	30
Buildings in general	13
Cemetery	23
Church	22
City, town, or village (generalized)	43
Combination showing city, town, or village	24
Crossing, railroad (railroad above)	26
Crossing, railroad (railroad beneath)	15
Cultivated field, corn	7
Cultivated field, sugarcane	18
Cut	29
Dam	20
Demolitions	39
Electric power transmission line	21
Fence of any kind (or board fence)	16
Fence, barbed wire	8
Fence, smooth wire	5
Fence, stone	46
Fence, worm	45
Fill	27
Ford, equestrian	48
Ford, for vehicles	40
Grassland in general	19
Grass, tall tropical	9
Marsh in general	50
Mine or quarry of any kind (or open cut)	34
Orchard	14
Pasture or grassland in general	35
Railroad, double-track, standard-gage	3
Railroad, narrow-gage	31
Railroad, single-track, standard-gage	33
River (blue on a four-color map)	10
Road, good motor	1
Road, poor motor or private	49
Schoolhouse	17
Stream or creek, intermittent	44
Stream or creek (blue on a four-color map)	4
Tank trap	47
Telephone or telegraph line	2
Trail or footpath	41
Trees, lone	12
Trenches (dotted when proposed)	38
Triangulation point or primary traverse station	6
Wire entanglement	36
Wire entanglement (low or concealed)	37
Woodland (deciduous trees)	11

intervals from 0 to 60 feet (the limiting elevations of the hill). Mark each point where a contour cuts the line "Steep slope," and project these points vertically down to the correspondingly numbered lines. Join the points thus found by a line. It will be the contour of the hill on the line "Steep slope."

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What are conventional signs? *A*. They are the symbols used by map makers to show the various features of the terrain. As nearly as practicable they resemble or suggest the features they are intended to show.

Q. Point out and name the conventional signs shown in figure 151. *A*. (See fig. 151.)

Q. What colors are used on standard topographical maps and what do these colors mean? *A*. Colors are used to show certain classes of features. On the standard topographical map they show the following:

(1) *Black*.—All artificial features, such as houses and roads.
(2) *Blue*.—All water, such as streams, ponds, and lakes.
(3) *Green*.—Vegetation, such as woods and grassland.
(4) *Brown*.—The ground forms as shown by contours.

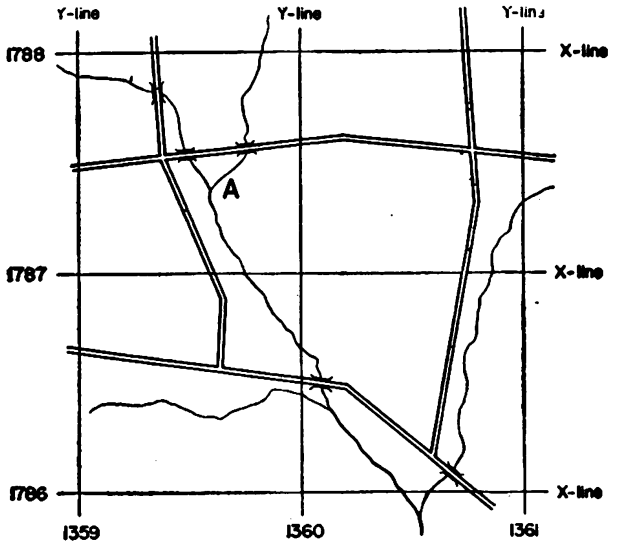


FIGURE 152.—Rectangular coordinates. A 1,000-yard grid printed upon a terrain map (1 : 20,000 scale). (Not reproduced to scale.)

152. Location of position by coordinates.—*Q*. How are military maps divided? *A*. Into squares 1,000 yards on a side by two sets of parallel lines, one of these sets being at right angles to the other. (See fig. 152.)

Q. What is this system of lines or squares called? *A*. A grid system, or system of rectangular coordinates.

Q. What is the use of this grid or coordinate system? *A*. It is used to make it possible to describe and locate points on a map by referring their positions to the coordinate lines.

Q. What are the coordinate lines running from left to right called? *A*. X lines.

Q. What are the other coordinate lines called? *A*. Y lines.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. Describe the grid system for the continental United States. *A.* The country is divided into zones running north and south, each covering 9° of latitude. The central true meridians of adjacent zones are 8° apart, hence there is an overlap of 1° at the boundaries, included in both adjacent zones. The west longitudes of the central meridians of the zones are 73°, 81°, 89°, 97°, 105°, 113°, and 121°. In each zone the Y lines are all parallel to the central true meridian. The direction of the Y line at any point is called grid north; it is the same as true north only at the center of the zone. The X lines are perpendicular to the Y lines, and so they are true east and west lines only at the center of the zone. In each zone the origin of coordinates, or zero point, is to the west and south of the zone, and hence all coordinates are positive. (See fig. 152.)

Q. What is the X distance or X coordinate of a point on a map? *A.* The distance of that point to the right of the origin of measurement measured along an X line.

Q. What is the Y distance or Y coordinate of a point on a map? *A.* The distance of that point upward from the origin of measurement measured along a Y line.

Q. What is the origin or point from which measurements are made? *A.* A point off the map to the west and south. The distance from this origin, in thousands of yards, is indicated on each X line and each Y line.

Q. In order to locate a point on a map, what information is useful? *A.* The X and Y coordinates of that point.

Q. In what order are the coordinates of a point always given? *A.* First the X coordinate and then the Y coordinate.

Q. How can their order be remembered easily? *A.* Remember that in the alphabet *X* comes before *Y* or remember the rule "Read right up."

Q. How can one X line be distinguished from the other X lines or one Y line from the other Y lines? *A.* Each set of lines is numbered.

Q. How are the X lines numbered? *A.* In the left- and right-hand margins, increasing upwards from the bottom of the map.

Q. How are the Y lines numbered? *A.* Along the upper and lower margins, increasing from left to right of the map.

Q. Is the number of a coordinate line given in the margin of a map the full number of that line? *A.* No. It is only a part of its full number.

Q. Are there any coordinate lines on a map that have their full numbers given? *A.* Yes. The first X line at the bottom of the map and the first Y line at the left of the map.

Q. Explain in detail how to read the coordinates of any point on

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

a gridded map. *A.* The coordinates of any square in the grid system are the X- and Y-coordinates of the lower left-hand (southwest) corner of the square. The coordinates of the lower left-hand square in figure 153 are (1,364,000–1,790,000) but are usually written (1364–1790), it being understood that each number represents thousands of yards. These coordinates also locate to the nearest thousand yards any point in the lower left-hand square of figure 153. To locate a point more closely, we can assume that each side of the square in question is divided into 10 equal parts, each of which represents 100 yards. Then the coordinates of the center of the lower left-hand square would be expressed as (1364.5–1790.5), which locates the center to the nearest hundred yards in each direction.

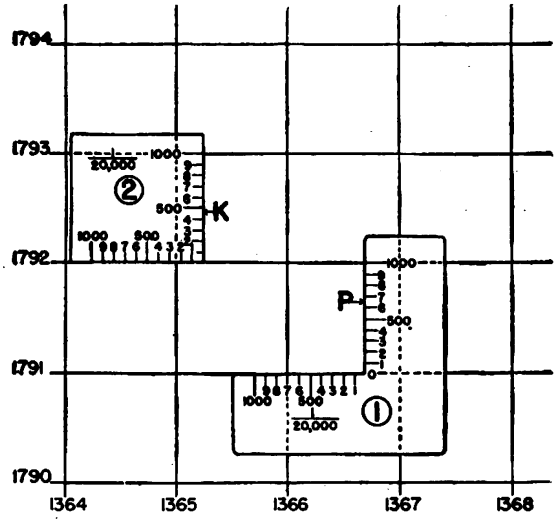


FIGURE 153.—To plot the position of a point with a coordinate scale on a terrain map (1 : 20,000 scale) having a 1,000-yard grid. (Not reproduced to scale.)

The method may be further refined to read to the nearest 10 yards.

Q. What is a coordinate scale? Explain its use. *A.* A coordinate scale is a right-angled ruler made of thin metal, celluloid, or other material with scales on it equal in length to the grid interval of the map being used (fig. 153). To plot any point on the map, for instance the point "P" of which the coordinates are given as (66.70–91.65), place the coordinate scale on the map in position 1 as shown in figure 153. The position of "P" can be marked at once with a pin or sharp pencil. It should be noted here that the first two numbers of the coordinate expression (1366.70–1791.65) have been dropped because they are common to all points in the section of map under consideration. The process of reading the coordinates of a point appearing on the map is the reverse of the method given for plotting a point on the map.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. How many norths are indicated on an artillery map? *A.* Three. True north, magnetic north, and grid north. (See fig. 153.)

Q. Define each. *A.*

(1) True north is geographic north or the direction of the North Pole.

(2) Magnetic north is the direction in which the compass points when used in the area covered by the map. The angular difference between true north and magnetic north is called the magnetic declination.

(3) Grid north is the direction in which the *Y* lines of the coordinate system point.

Q. When indicating direction, which north is generally used? *A.* Grid north.

Q. On what kind of maps is such a system of coordinates usually found? *A.* On topographical maps.

Q. What type of maps are often used to cover harbors and water areas? *A.* Coast and Geodetic Survey maps.

Q. Do these maps generally have a system of grid coordinates? *A.* No. There is, however, a local system of grid coordinates placed on these maps so points can be located in the same way.

Q. What do these maps show? *A.* Coast line, channels, depths of water, location of lights, channel markers, and certain permanent features of the terrain along the shore.

NOTE.—In addition, the candidate should be required to give the coordinates of certain points on a map.

153. Following route indicated on map.—*Q.* How is a route, selected from a map, usually indicated? *A.* It is indicated by naming successive points along the route that can easily be identified locally.

Q. How are the best roads identified on the ground? *A.* Usually they will be paved, and will be wider, straighter, and have easier grades than secondary roads. If not paved, they will at least be wide and show signs of traffic. They usually have telegraph or telephone lines running parallel to them. Except in very sparsely settled country, the principal roads will also be indicated by signposts at intersections and by Federal and State numbers, which are shown on commercial route maps.

Q. What points along a route are most easily identified? *A.*

(1) Large towns.
(2) Villages.
(3) Important crossroads or junctions.
(4) Crossings of large streams.
(5) Railroad crossings.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

(6) Crests of important hills or ridges.

(7) Passes or gaps through lines of hills.

Q. How may an indicated route be traced on a map? *A.* By locating in succession the towns, crossroads, and other important points named.

Q. How are crossroads and road junctions indicated on a map? *A.* By numbers sometimes followed by a letter, as 423 or 423–A.

Q. How would crossroad 418–A be written in indicating a route? Road Junction 403? *A.* CR 418–A. RJ 403.

Q. To what do the numbers in the previous answer refer? *A.* To the elevation of the crossroad or road junction.

Q. In case a crossroad or junction is not plainly marked on the map, how would it be indicated? *A.* By its coordinates, as CR (4365.5–6427.3) or RJ (7295.4–8665.4).

NOTE.—The candidate should be able to trace out on a map a route that has been indicated to him.

154. Data as to roads, bridges, fords, grades, and swamps.—*Q.* What information concerning a road can usually be obtained from a good topographical map? *A.*

(1) The distance between any two points.

(2) Whether or not the road is paved, and often the kind of pavement.

(3) The width of the road, that is, whether narrow, wide, or quite wide.

(4) The steepness and length of important grades.

(5) The stream crossings, whether bridges, fords, or ferries, and sometimes the kind and principal dimensions of bridges; width, depth, nature of bottom, and velocity of current in the case of fords; and the kind of ferry.

Q. What is usually the most critical question in the selection of a route? *A.* The stream crossings.

Q. How would you decide the question as to whether a certain bridge was safe for the transport accompanying your organization. *A.* Reports on the practicability of all bridges should be secured in advance if possible. If not, the following observations will indicate the safety of bridges in most cases.

(1) Bridges on important routes habitually carry heavy commercial trucks and busses moving at high speed, and are therefore safe for artillery transport moving slowly.

(2) If a bridge is massive, and reasonably new, or apparently in good condition as to flooring, paint, etc., it is probably safe.

(3) Bridges may be compared with similiar bridges that have been

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

crossed. If they look too light or appear to be of older design than other bridges, they should be regarded with suspicion.

(4) If there is any chance that the enemy may have tampered with a bridge, its abutments, piers, flooring, and truss members or cables should be examined to make sure they are intact.

(5) If in doubt about any bridge, send across some lighter vehicle and watch the bridge as it crosses. If there is no excessive sway or vibration the bridge is probably safe for the next heavier load. Send loads across one at a time and at very slow speed.

Q. How may the practicability of a ford be determined? *A.* Note the swiftness of the current. Send a line of men to wade across, preferably barefoot, to determine the depths, nature of the bottom, and whether the banks are steep or slippery or both. Some of the lighter vehicles may then be sent across, and these can assist the heavier vehicles by pulling them out on the far side if necessary.

Q. In case a bridge or ford proves impassable, what should be done? *A.* Detour to another crossing.

Q. What in general can you say as to the practicability of routes? *A.* In general, important main routes are practicable for artillery transport; in the case of less important routes it is desirable to have a reconnaissance made in advance by competent experts; any route that lacks a bridge at an important crossing is of doubtful practicability.

NOTE.—The candidate should be required to examine a route shown on a map, to give all the information concerning it that can be obtained from the map, and his opinion as to the practicability of the route.

SECTION VI

DISSEMINATION OF AA ARTILLERY ALARMS

	Paragraph
Flash messages	155
Records and reports	156

155. Flash messages.—*Q.* From what sources do AA artillery intelligence alarms come? *A.* From the observers of the AA regiment, from adjacent and higher units, and from the aircraft warning service.

Q. In what form are these messages sent? *A.* As flash messages.

Q. For what purpose are they sent? *A.* To alert the batteries of the regiment upon the approach of enemy aircraft.

Q. Explain the uses of the gun battery observation posts. *A.* They are located one on each side of the gun battery and are primarily spotting stations, but also possible sources of flash messages.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. Who establishes the outer ring of observation posts? *A.* The various batteries of the regiment, under the direction of the regimental commander. He designates the number and general location of these posts and assigns their installation to such batteries as are best able to install and maintain them.

Q. How do personnel in observation posts normally send in flash messages? *A.* They use field telephones.

Q. To what units are their telephone lines connected? *A.* They are connected to the nearest installations. Usually they are connected into the searchlight platoon net at one of the forward lights. They may in some cases connect to a gun or machine-gun battery switchboard.

Q. When an observer sends in a flash message, how is it routed? *A.* It is picked up by the platoon or battery operator who, during daylight hours, connects the observer with the proper gun battery immediately. At night the searchlights nearest the approching aircraft are connected first. The message is relayed to the gun battalion and thence to the regimental message center. These two will give further proper distribution to the message.

Q. When an observer can only partially identify an enemy formation, what report should he make? *A.* He should send a partial flash message and complete it later when he can secure more information. It is a general rule that partial, prompt information is more valuable than delayed, complete information.

Q. Are flash messages sent to higher headquarters? *A.* They are not sent as such. The intelligence officer may order that the information contained in them be sent to neighboring antiaircraft regiments, to higher headquarters, or to friendly Air Corps troops. In the same manner, such information may be received from higher headquarters and the intelligence officer may order it sent out as a flash message.

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Q. What information is contained in a flash message? *A.*

FORM FOR FLASH MESSAGE

(AAAIS)

Serial No_____ Date_____ Organization_____
Time sent_____ To_____ How sent_____

Observation post	Number of airplanes	Type of airplanes	Time seen or heard	Altitude	Sector in which flying	Direction of flight
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
	One_____	Heavy bombardment.	_____	Very low_	_____	North.
	Two_____	Observation _	_____	Low_____	_____	Northeast.
	Three____	Pursuit_____	_____	Medium _	_____	East.
		Light bombardment.	_____	High_____	_____	Southeast.
OP—____	Several___	Airplane_____	_____	_____	_____	South.
	Many____	_____	_____	_____	_____	Southwest.
						West.
						Northwest.

NOTE.—Very low: below 500 yards; low: 500 to 2,000 yards; medium: 2,000 to 4,000 yards; high: above 4,000 yards.

Both sender and receiver check off items where possible and save time.

156. Records and reports.—*Q.* What record is made of flash messages? *A.* The sender and all operators receiving it record it, usually by checking appropriate words on a flash message form.

Q. What files of AA artillery intelligence reports are kept at regimental headquarters? *A.* The intelligence officer has a file of battery unit reports for use in preparing his daily intelligence report for higher headquarters. He also maintains other files of data required for his periodic reports.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

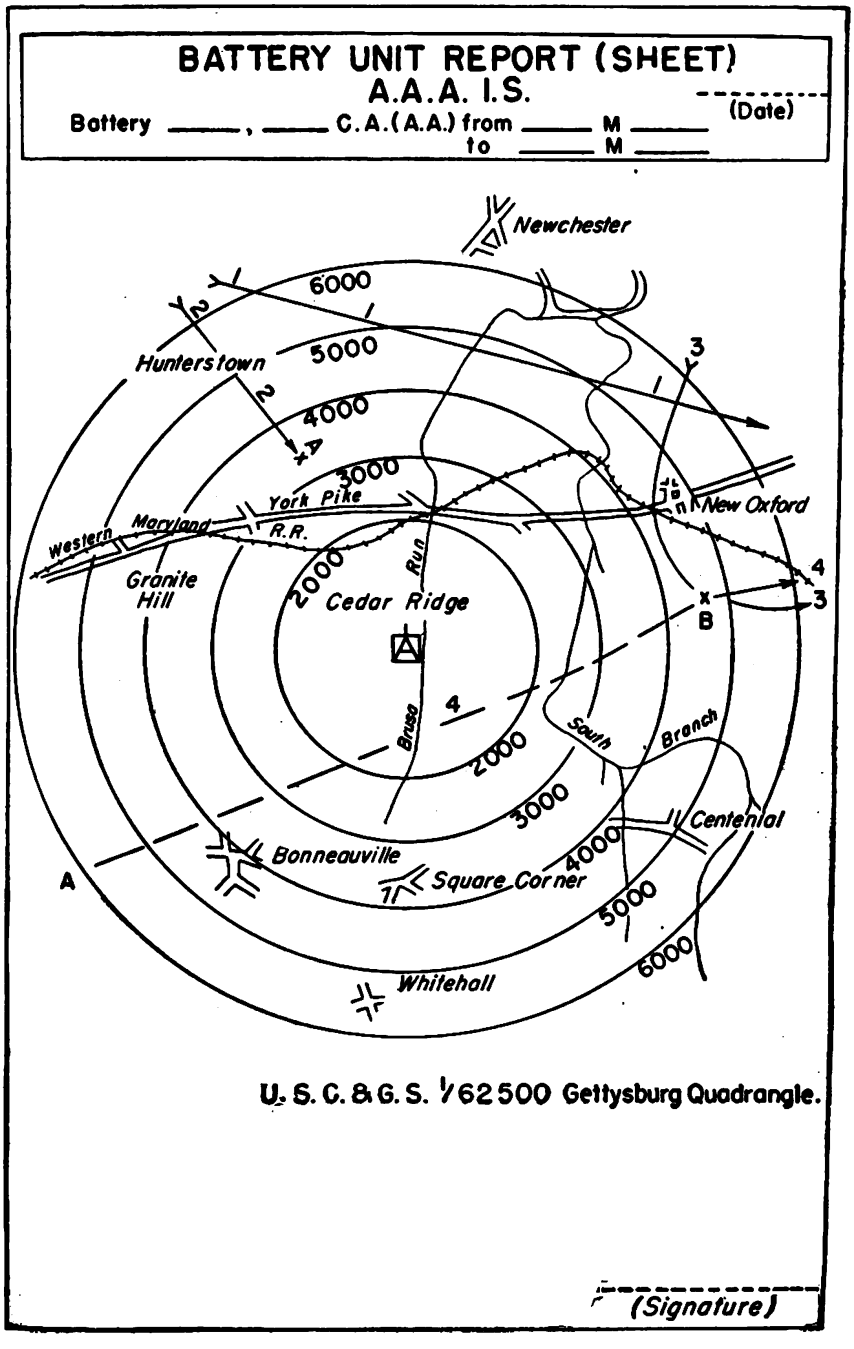


FIGURE 154.—Battery unit report (graphical).

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

BATTERY UNIT REPORT (TABULAR)
(AAAIS)

_____
(Date)

From _____

Battery _____ To _____

Serial No. of flight crossing area	Time of—		Description			Altitude (yards)		Rounds fired	Remarks
	Arrival	Departure	Formation	Number	Type	Maximum	Minimum		
	AM	AM							
1	10:28	10:31	Closed V	9	Pursuit	3,800	3,500	12	Intermittent clouds obscured target.
2	11:03	11:05		1	Reconnaissance	3,200	3,200	16	Shot down at A, Battery C firing on same target at same time.
3	11:21	11:28	Closed V	9	Pursuit	3,800	3,000		Apparently same formation as No. 1. Attacked by 7 PW–8's at B with result 2 (type) pursuits fell in flames. Remainder lost in clouds.
4	11:20	11:30	Open V	7	Pursuit (friendly)	4,500	3,000		See remarks under No. 3.

_____
(Signature)

Q. Who assists the intelligence officer in preparing intelligence reports? *A.* He is assisted by clerks detailed from the headquarters battery.

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Digitized by Google
Original from
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

INDEX

	Paragraph	Page
Acoustic corrector	83	157
Adjustment:		
Fire	56	97
Observation instruments	46	82
Searchlight unit, parts	74	147
Sights and quadrants	22	39
Sound-locator unit, parts	84	162
Aircraft:		
Classes and types	91	194
Identification	94	196
Indication	94	196
Low-flying, protection against	149	315
Missions	92	195
Naval	93	195
Alarms, AA artillery:		
Flash messages	155	329
Records and reports	156	331
Ammeters	78	151
Ammunition:		
Definition and elementary principles	144	305
Powder charges, preparation	4	9
Projectiles:		
Painting	6	16
Preparation for firing	5	13
Storage and care	3	6
Analysis, drill and target practice	62	111
Angular-travel computer	42	76
Antiaircraft artillery, definitions and elementary principles:		
General terms	142	297
Searchlights and sound locators	143	304
Supply and ammunition	144	305
Assignment of topics	2	3
Axles	111	232
Azimuth instruments	47	83
Batteries, storage	108, 118	229, 237
Boresighting	20	38
Brakes, motor vehicle	112, 119	233, 239
Calculation, firing data	26	48
Camouflage	147	311
Carburetor	104, 115	223, 236
Care:		
Ammunition	3	6
Instruments	53	93
Searchlight units	74	147
Sound-locator apparatus	84	162

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

INDEX

	Paragraph	Page
Charges, powder, preparation	4	9
Charts and scales:		
Fire-control instruments	14	30
Special use	18	35
Circuits:		
Searchlight	75	148
Telephone	132	266
Clinometering	20	38
Clutch trouble	119	239
Codes	134	267
Communication:		
Coding	134	267
Message centers	133	266
Systems	129	254
Telephone. (See Telephones.)		
Visual signaling	138	274
Computer, angular-travel	42	76
Concealment, telephone lines	137	274
Control stations:		
General Electric	71	137
Sperry	70	133
Control system, distant electric	65	120
Convoy, motor transport	95, 99	210, 215
Cooling system, engine	107, 120	228, 240
Corrections:		
Elementary gunnery:		
Direction	16	32
Range	15	31
Fire adjustment	56	97
Sound	80, 81, 83	152, 153, 157
Correctors:		
Acoustic	83	157
Percentage	44	78
Data transmission	21	39
Daytime employment, searchlight section	86	163
Definitions and elementary principles:		
Antiaircraft artillery:		
Ammunition	144	305
General terms	142	297
Searchlights	143	304
Sound locators	143	304
Supply	144	305
Electricity	145	306
Induction coil	146	310
Magnetism	146	310
Motor transport	95	210
Seacoast artillery	141	280
Deflection boards:		
M1	38	64
M1905 (gun)	39	69

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

INDEX

	Paragraph	Page
Deflection boards—Continued.		
M1906 (mortar)	40	71
Universal	41	73
Depression position finders:		
General	48	85
M1	51	89
M1907	49	86
Swasey	50	89
Diesel engine. (*See* Motor vehicles.)		
Direction, correction for variations in	16	32
Discipline:		
Camouflage	147	311
Motor transport	99	215
Distant electric control, fixed searchlight	65	120
Driving motor vehicles, training in	127	246
Electricity, elementary principles	145	306
Engines. (*See* Motor vehicles.)		
Fire:		
Adjustment	56	97
Observation	55	96
Fire prevention in garages	124	243
Firing tables	13, 18	30, 35
Fixed searchlights. (*See* Searchlight apparatus.)		
Flash messages	155, 156	329, 331
Forms, motor transportation	128	250
Fuel pump, gasoline engine	104	223
Functioning of parts:		
Guns:		
Barbette carriage	10	26
Disappearing carriage	8	21
General	7	18
Mortars and carriages	9	22
Gasoline engines. (*See* Motor vehicles.)		
General Electric equipment:		
Control stations	71	137
Power plants	72	139
Searchlight	69	127
Generator, searchlight unit	79	151
Governor, motor vehicle	122	241
Gun section, instruction	12	29
Gunnery:		
Elementary:		
Direction, correction for variations in	16	32
Fire-control instruments, charts and scales	14	30
Firing tables	13	30
Meteorological message	17	33
Range, corrections for variations in	15	31
Special charts and scales	18	35
Guns and carriages:		
Functioning of parts:		
Barbette	10	26
Disappearing	8	21

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

	Paragraph	Page
Guns and carriages—Continued.		
Functioning of parts—Continued.		
General	7	18
Mortars	9	22
Inspection and maintenance	11	27
Hearing acuity	81	153
Identification:		
Aircraft	94	196
Naval targets	89	168
Ignition, motor vehicle	105, 116, 117	225, 236, 237
Indication:		
Aircraft	94	196
Naval targets	88	168
Indicator, wind-component	45	79
Induction coil, elementary principles	146	310
Inspection:		
Guns and mortars	11	27
Motor vehicles. (*See* Motor vehicles.)		
Instruments:		
Observation. (*See* Observation instruments.)		
Plotting room. (*See* Plotting-room apparatus.)		
Internal combustion engines. (*See* Motor vehicles.)		
Lamp-control mechanism	64	115
Lamps	76	148
Loads and their proper distribution	126	244
Local shipping and water areas	90	194
Lubrication system, engine	106	227
Magnetism and induction, elementary principles	146	310
Maintenance:		
Guns and mortars	11	27
Motor vehicles. (*See* Motor vehicles.)		
Searchlight unit	74	147
Sound-locator apparatus	84	162
Map reading:		
Data as to roads, bridges, fords, grades and swamps	154	328
Following route indicated	153	327
Location of position by coordinates	152	324
Scales, contours, and conventional signs	151	317
March rules and discipline:		
Convoy	95	210
Signals	96	212
Traffic	97	213
Mechanics, motor. (*See* Motor vehicles.)		
Message centers	133	266
Meteorological message	17	33
Missions, aircraft	92	195
Mobile searchlight apparatus. (*See* Searchlight apparatus.)		
Mortars:		
Functioning of parts	9	22
Inspection and maintenance	11	27

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

INDEX

	Paragraph	Page
Motor transport (*see also* Motor vehicles):		
Convoy regulations	95, 99	210, 215
Drivers, training	127	246
Inspections, road	102	220
Loads	126	244
March rules and discipline:		
General	95	210
Signals	96	212
Traffic	97	213
Parking	101	219
Records and reports	128	250
Rules of road	98	214
Speed laws	100	219
Motor vehicles (*see also* Motor transport):		
Axles	111	232
Brakes	112	233
Engines:		
Batteries	108	229
Cooling system	107	228
Gasoline feed system	104	223
Ignition system	105	225
Internal combustion theory	103	221
Lubrication system	106	227
Gear	110	229
Loads	126	244
Maintenance and inspection:		
Battery	118	237
Brakes	119	239
Carburetion	115	236
Causes of engine trouble	114	235
Clutch	119	239
Cooling system	120	240
Fire precautions	124	243
Governors	122	241
Ignition:		
Battery	116	236
Magneto	117	237
Instruction supervision	125	244
Shop practice	123	242
Steering mechanism	121	241
Transmission	119	237
Wheels	119	237
Steering gear	113	233
Tires	111	232
Transmission	110	229
Wheels	111	232
Naval aircraft	93	195
Naval targets:		
Classification	89	168
Identification	89	168
Indication	88	168
Nomenclature, airplane parts	94	196

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

INDEX

	Paragraph	Page
Observation:		
Duties	59	106
Fire adjustment	56	97
Spotting	55	96
Spotting boards	57, 58	103
Observation instruments:		
Adjustment	46	82
Azimuth	47	83
Care	53	93
Depression position finders:		
General	48	85
M1	51	89
M1907	49	86
Swasey	50	89
Orientation	46	82
Preservation	53	93
Range finder, self-contained horizontal base	52	91
Observers, general duties	59	106
110° plotting board	30	58
Organization of a position:		
Camouflage	147	311
Low-flying aircraft, protection against	149	315
Raids and sabotage, protection against	148	313
Shelters	150	315
Organization, searchlight section	85	163
Orientation:		
Gun	20	38
Observation instruments	46	82
Searchlight unit	73	146
Painting projectiles	6	16
Panel signals	138	274
Parking motor vehicles	101	219
Percentage corrector	44	78
Plotting-room apparatus:		
Angular-travel computer	42	76
Azimuth adjustment slide rule	43	78
Boards:		
Deflection:		
M1	38	64
M1905 (gun)	39	69
M1906 (mortar)	40	71
Universal	41	73
Plotting:		
General	27	51
110° (M1915, M1918, and M3)	30	58
Whistler-Hearn	31, 32	58, 60
Plotting and relocating	28, 29	52, 57
Range-correction, M1	37	62
Percentage corrector	44	78
Prediction scale	33	60
Set-forward devices:		
Chart	35	62

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

INDEX

	Paragraph	Page
Plotting-room apparatus—Continued.		
Set-forward devices—Continued.		
Rule	34	61
Scale	36	62
Wind-component indicator	45	79
Pointing:		
Adjustment of sights and quadrants	22	39
Boresighting	20	38
Clinometering	20	38
Data transmission	21	39
Methods	19	37
Orienting	20	38
Position-finding apparatus. (*See* Plotting-room apparatus *and* Observation instruments.)		
Position-finding system:		
Calculation of firing data	26	48
Prediction	25	47
Tracking	24	44
Steps in operation	23	44
Position, searchlight	86	163
Power supply unit:		
Fixed searchlights	66	121
Mobile searchlights	72	139
Practice. (*See* Target practice.)		
Precautions, fire, in garages	124	243
Prediction	25	47
Prediction scale	33	60
Preparations, preliminary, target practice	60	109
Preservation, instruments	53	93
Projectiles:		
Painting	6	16
Preparation for firing	5	13
Quadrants, adjustment	22	39
Raids, protection against	148	313
Range-correction board M1	37	62
Range, correction for variations in	15	31
Range finders, self-contained, horizontal base	52	91
Range section, instruction of members	54	95
Records and reports:		
Flash messages	156	331
Motor transport	128	250
Target practice	62	111
Requirements:		
Gun section	12	29
Range section	54	95
Searchlight squad	87	167
Telephone lineman and switchboard operators	140	279
Road inspection, motor transport	102	220
Sabotage, protection against	148	313
Safety precautions:		
Fire, garages	124	243
Target practice	61	110

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

	Paragraph	Page
Safety precautions—Continued.		
Searchlight power plants	72	139
Scales and charts	14, 18	30, 35
Seacoast artillery terms, definitions and elementary principles	141	280
Searchlight apparatus:		
Definitions and elementary principles	143	304
Fixed:		
Description	63	114
Distant electric control	65	120
Lamp mechanism	64	115
Power supply unit	66	121
Mobile:		
Control stations	70, 71	133, 137
Maintenance	74	147
Orientation and synchronization	73	146
Power plants	72	139
Searchlights	68, 69	123, 127
Types and general characteristics	67	122
Sound locators. (*See* Sound-locator apparatus.)		
Trouble shooting:		
Ammeters	78	151
Circuits	75	148
Lamps	76	148
Miscellaneous	79	151
Switches	77	150
Voltmeters	78	151
Searchlight section:		
Organization	85	163
Tactical employment	86	163
Squad instruction	87	167
Service practice. (*See* Target practice.)		
Set-forward devices:		
Charts	35	62
Rules	34	61
Scales	36	62
Shelter construction	150	315
Shipping, local, and water areas	90	194
Ships	88, 89	168
Shop practices, motor mechanics	123	242
Sights, adjustment	22	39
Signals, motor transport rules	96	212
Slide rule, azimuth adjustment	43	78
Sound-locator apparatus:		
Acoustic correctors	83	157
Adjustment of parts	84	162
Care	84	162
Definitions and elementary principles	143	304
Maintenance	84	162
Problem	81	153
Purpose	80	152
Sound locators	82	154
Speed laws and regulations	100	219

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

INDEX

	Paragraph	Page
Sperry equipment:		
Control stations	70	133
Power plants	72	139
Searchlights	68	123
Spotting	55	96
Spotting boards	57, 58	103
Steering gear	113, 121	233, 241
Storage, ammunition	3	6
Storage batteries	108, 118	229, 237
Subcaliber practice. (*See* Target practice.)		
Supervision of mechanics	125	244
Supply, definitions and elementary principles	144	305
Swasey depression position finder	50	89
Switchboards	131	259
Switches, searchlight units	77	150
Synchronization, searchlight unit	73	146
Tables:		
Firing	13	30
Searchlight equipment	67	122
Tactical employment, searchlight section	86	163
Target practice:		
Analysis	62	111
Preliminary preparation	60	109
Records and reports	62	111
Safety precautions	61	110
Targets:		
Tracking	24	44
Prediction	25	47
Telephones:		
Circuits	132	266
Description	130	255
Installation of field system:		
Classes of wire, circuits, and lines	135	269
Procedure	136	270
Protection and concealment	137	274
Instruction, lineman and operators	140	279
Switchboards	131	259
Testing	139	277
Tires, motor vehicle	111	232
Topic assignment	2	3
Tracking	24	44
Traffic rules	97	213
Transmission, data	21	39
Transmission, motor vehicle	110, 119	229, 239
Trouble shooting, searchlight. (*See* Searchlight apparatus.)		
Visual signaling	138	274
Voltmeters	78	151
Water areas	90	194
Warships, identification	89	168
Wheels, motor vehicle	111, 119	232, 239

Digitized by Google

Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

INDEX

	Paragraph	Page
Whistler-Hearn plotting board:		
Guns (M1904)	31	58
Mortars	32	60
Wind-component indicator	45	79

[A. G. 062.11 (6–26–41).]

BY ORDER OF THE SECRETARY OF WAR:

G. C. MARSHALL,
Chief of Staff.

OFFICIAL:

E. S. ADAMS,
Major General,
The Adjutant General.

DISTRIBUTION:

I Bn and H 4 (3); IC 4 (X).
(For explanation of symbols see FM 21–6.)

U. S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1942

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, Washington, D. C.

Digitized by Google Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Digitized by Google
Original from
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Digitized by Google

Original from
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Digitized by Google

Original from
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Digitized by Google

Original from
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

Digitized by Google
Original from UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA